

GUIDE

CONNECT Plus

Parents' Guide

دليل ولى الأمر

By a group of supervisors

معاك
Ma3akApp

تطبيق
التعلم التفاعلى

MINISTRY OF EDUCATION AND TECHNICAL EDUCATION

وزارة التربية والتعليم والتعليم الفنى

DESERT ANIMALS

Check Card

كارت المعاصر لاختبار المفردات اللغوية

4th Primary 2023

FIRST TERM

الصف الرابع الابتدائى

للمدارس الرسمية و الخاصة لغات

الفصل الدراسى الأول

Specifications for Fourth Year Primary Examination For Governmental, Distinguished and Private Language Schools

Time : One Hour and a Half 2022 / 2023 30 Marks



A Listening (8 Marks)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d : *(4 Marks)*

An unseen listening text of about Sixty (60) words at the appropriate difficulty level for primary four followed by Four (4) MCQ questions with FOUR (4) options each is provided. Learners are asked to listen to the text and circle the correct answer from the four options given. *(One mark each)*

2 Listen and complete : *(4 Marks)*

An unseen listening text of about Sixty (60) words at the appropriate difficulty level for primary four followed by Four (4) incomplete sentences is provided. Learners are asked to listen and complete the Four (4) sentences given with one word. *(One mark each)*

B Reading (11 Marks)

3 Read and complete the text / dialogue with the words from the box : *(3 Marks)*

An unseen text from Sixty (60) to Seventy (70) words OR a dialogue of EIGHT (8) exchanges with THREE (3) deletions is provided. A list of FOUR (4) separate words related to vocabulary is also given. Learners are asked to complete each deletion in the text or the dialogue with ONE of the FOUR (4) words given. The first sentence should be written in full.

Reading Comprehension *(4 Marks)*

4 Read the following text and answer the questions below :

An unseen literary or informational text of not less than 80 to 100 words is provided. The text should be at the appropriate difficulty level for primary four. Learners are asked to answer :

A. *TWO (2) MCQ questions with FOUR (4) options each dealing with TWO of the following reading comprehension skills :*

- *Identify the general idea of the text.*
- *Demonstrate understanding of specific details in a text.*
- *Determine the meaning of words and phrases in a text.*

B. *TWO (2) open ended questions dealing with TWO of the following reading comprehension skills :*

- *Describe the relationship between a series of historical events, scientific ideas or concepts, or steps in technical procedures in a text.*

- Make logical inferences from the text.
- Compare and contrast the most important points and key details presented in a text.
- Determine the central message, lesson, or moral and explain how it is conveyed through key details in the text. *(One mark each)*

The Reader *(4 Marks)*



A. Read and write T (True) or F (False) : *(2 Marks)*

TWO (2) sentences related to the Reader are provided. Learners are asked to read the sentences and write (T) True or (F) False in front of each sentence. The sentences should test learners' knowledge of vocabulary, events, characters and setting of the Reader. *(One mark each)*

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d : *(2 Marks)*

TWO (2) sentences with FOUR (4) options each related to the Reader are provided. Learners are asked to choose the correct answer out of the FOUR (4) options given. The sentences should test learners' knowledge of vocabulary, events, characters and setting of the Reader. *(One mark each)*

C Writing (11 Marks)

6 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d : *(4 Marks)*

FOUR (4) MCQs based on structure are provided. Learners are asked to choose the correct answer out of the FOUR (4) options given. *(One mark each)*

7 Order the words to make correct sentences : *(2 Marks)*

Learners are given TWO (2) sentences with SIX (6) words each (affirmative, negative & interrogative). The words of each sentence are scrambled. Learners are asked to put the words in order to make a correct sentence.

8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements : *(5 Marks)*

Learners are asked to write a paragraph or an email of about FIFTY (50) words using the given guiding elements that can be words, questions, fact file (including questions only)... etc.

(TWO marks for relevance of ideas and vocabulary - One mark for spelling - One mark for punctuation - One mark for grammar)

GET READY! استعد لمنهجك





1. Words ١. أنواع الكلمات

تنقسم الكلمات إلى عدة أنواع يتعرف التلميذ فى هذا الجزء على بعض منها.



1 noun الإسم



goat



bag



boy



Salma

2 Verb الفعل



eat



read



play



run

3 adjective الصفة



a small ant



a big camel

4 preposition حرف جر

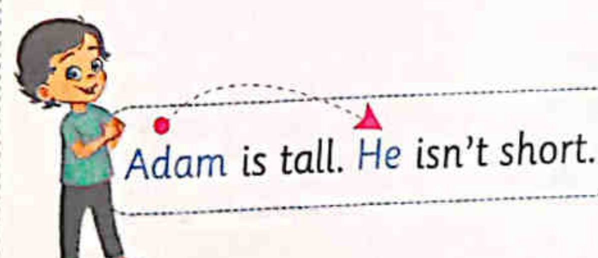


in the morning

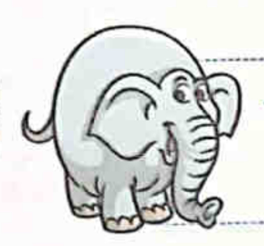


on the table

5 pronoun ضمير



Adam is tall. He isn't short.



The elephant is big. It isn't small.

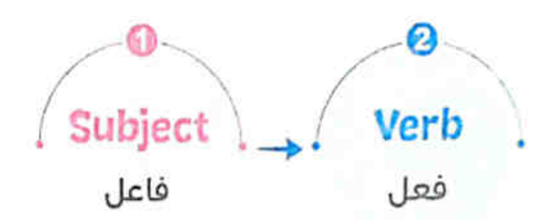
- Help your child identify how to make a sentence.

- ساعد طفلك ان يعرف كيف يكون جملة.

• معرفة التلميذ لنوع الكلمة يساعده على استخدامها بطريقة صحيحة لتكوين جملة.



1 Subject ١. الفاعل



الفاعل Omar

Omar plays tennis.

He plays tennis.

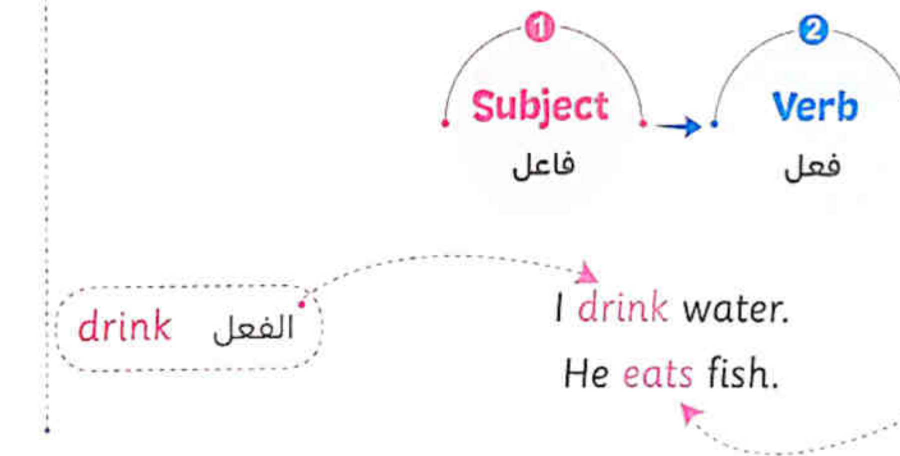
الفاعل He
وهو ضمير فاعل
حل محل الفاعل Omar

الفاعل قد يكون (اسم) أو يكون ضمير من (ضمائر الفاعل) التالية :

Subject pronouns ضمائر الفاعل

I	He	She	It	You	They	We
أنا	هو	هى	هو/ هى (غير عاقل)	أنت / أنتم	هم	نحن





قد يضاف للفعل إضافات
مثل (s) حسب الفاعل
الذى يسبقه فى زمن
المضارع البسيط

Notes for parents

- Help your child identify the parts of a sentence.
- Help your child identify the verb.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على أجزاء الجملة.
تبدأ الجملة البسيطة في اللغة الانجليزية بـ (فاعل) ويأتي بعده (فعل) ثم باقي الجملة. الفاعل هو من يقوم بعمل الفعل ويكون في بداية الجملة
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على الفعل.

• الفعل هو الحدث الذي يقوم به الفاعل



How to arrange sentences

١ عند وجود (full stop) نقطة (.) فى نهاية الجملة يكون نوع الجملة :

1. Statement : ١. جملة خبرية :

البداية	ترتيب الكلمات		
تبدأ الجملة الخبرية بـ (فاعل) والفاعل يكون :	فاعل	فعل	باقى الجملة
ضمير : I / He / She / It / You / They / We	We	live	in Egypt.
اسم : Noha - Wael - Children - The apple - Monkeys ...	Heba	cooks	well.

2. Imperative sentence : ٢. جملة أمرية :

البداية	ترتيب الكلمات		
أمر مثبت : فى هذه الحالة نبدأ بـ (مصدر الفعل .inf)	مصدر الفعل .inf	باقى الجملة	
	Study	English with us and have fun.	
أمر منفى : فى هذه الحالة نبدأ بـ (Don't + inf. مصدر الفعل)	Don't	مصدر الفعل inf.	باقى الجملة
	Don't	shout	in the classroom.

٢ عند وجود (question mark) علامة استفهام (؟) فى نهاية الجملة يكون نوع الجملة :

3. Interrogative sentence : ٣. جملة استفهامية :

البداية	ترتيب الكلمات				
١- السؤال بأداة استفهام : How - What - Where - Who - When - Which ...	كلمة استفهام	فعل مساعد	فاعل	فعل أساسى	باقى السؤال ?
	Where	did	you	go	yesterday ?
٢- السؤال بمعنى "هل ...؟" Do - Does - Did - Is - Are - Was - Were ...	فعل مساعد أو ناقص	فاعل	فعل أساسى	باقى السؤال ?	
	Did	you	watch	the film ?	

• Help your child learn how to arrange sentences.

• ساعد طفلك فى أن يتعلم كيفية ترتيب الجمل.

Punctuation marks

1 Capital letters (A , B , C ....)

- تستخدم فى بداية الجملة.
- تستخدم مع أسماء الأشخاص والجنسيات وأسماء الدول.

I like muffins.

I'm from France.

2 Period (.)

- تستخدم فى نهاية الجملة.

I'm French.

3 Question Mark (?)

- تستخدم فى نهاية السؤال.



Where are you from ?

4 Exclamation Mark (!)

- تستخدم عند التعبير عن شعور قوى.



She's very happy !

5 Comma (,)

- تستخدم الـ (,) عند كتابة قائمة (مجموعة) من الأشياء.

I like chocolate , ice cream , pizza and cola.

Notes for parents

- Help your child know how to use capital letters in a sentence and punctuation marks.
- ساعد طفلك أن يعرف كيف يستخدم الحروف الكبيرة فى الجملة وعلامات الترقيم.

Contents

Theme 1

I discover myself



Theme 2

Myself and others



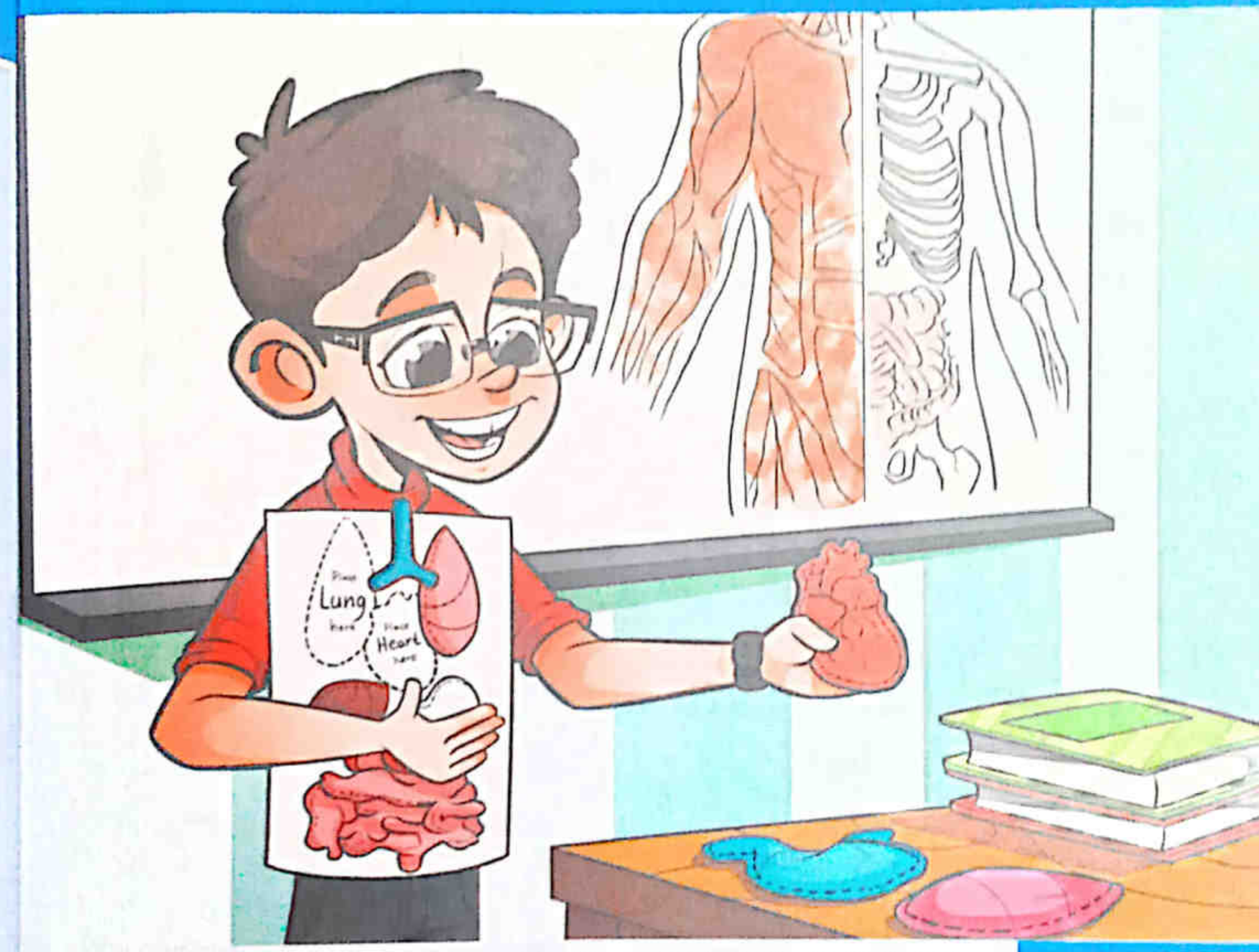
Theme 1

I discover myself



Unit 1 What can I do ?

ماذا يمكننى أن أفعل ؟



لإتقان الوحدة

- استخدام كارت **المعاصر** للقراءة والكتابة.
- Test your skills في نهاية الوحدة.
- كراسة **المعاصر** للمهارات.
- كراسة **المعاصر** التفاعلية.
- التقييمات الشهرية في الكراسة التفاعلية.

Aims of Unit One :

الأهداف العامة للوحدة الأولى :

In this unit I will .....

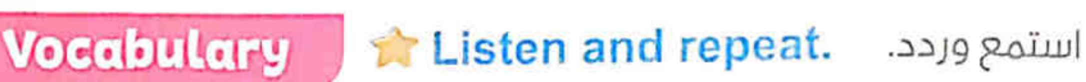
في هذه الوحدة سوف.....

- understand important systems in my body
  - أتعرف على الأجهزة الهامة في جسمي.
- learn about my brain.
  - أتعلم عن مخي.
- form and use regular and irregular present simple verbs.
  - أكون واستخدم الأفعال المنتظمة وغير المنتظمة في زمن المضارع البسيط.
- read about our senses.
  - اقرأ عن حواسنا.
- practice when to use capital letters.
  - أتدرب على متى أستخدم الحروف الكبيرة.
- choose and write a title for a text.
  - أختار وأكتب عنوان للنص.
- plan activities for a summer camp.
  - أخطط أنشطة لمعسكر صيفي.

Lesson 1

• Listening and reading
• My Body





Vocabulary

Listen and repeat. استمع وردد.

Key vocabulary

digestive system	الجهاز الهضمى	skeleton	هيكل عظمى
respiratory system	الجهاز التنفسى	heart	قلب
bones	العظام	stomach	معدة
muscles	عضلات	blood	دم
lungs	الرئتين		

Extra vocabulary

special liquid	سائل خاص	organ	عضو (فى الجسم)
energy	طاقة	nose	أنف
nutrients	عناصر غذائية	oxygen	غاز الأكسجين
mouth	فم	body	جسم

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular

Present		Past
pump	يضخ	pumped
attach	يربط	attached
lift	يرفع	lifted
pass	يمر	passed
protect	يحمى	protected
chew	يمضغ	chewed
swallow	يبتلع	swallowed

Irregular

Present		Past
drink	يشرب	drank
eat	يأكل	ate
make	يصنع/يجعل	made
go	يذهب	went
breathe	يتنفس	breathed

Notes for parents

• Help your child listen to the words and repeat them. ساعد طفلك أن يستمع إلى الكلمات ويرددهم

Do you know ! - To be active in the day, we need a good diet, plenty of water, and enough sleep. Children aged 7-12 need eleven hours of sleep a night.

لكي نكون نشيط خلال اليوم نحتاج إلى نظام غذائي جيد و الكثير من الماء وقسط كاف من النوم. يحتاج الأطفال من سبع سنوات حتى سن الثانية عشر إحدى عشر ساعة من النوم كل ليلة

- There are about five liters of blood in the human body. يحتوى جسم الإنسان على حوالى خمس لترات من الدم

Important expressions and prepositions		تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة	
change the food into	يحول الطعام إلى	pump this blood around our body	يضخ هذا الدم حول جسمنا
(is) made up of	يتكون / يتألف من	through the nose	خلال الأنف
breathe in air	يستنشق الهواء	make us strong	يجعلنا أقوياء
attached to	مرتبط/متصل بـ		

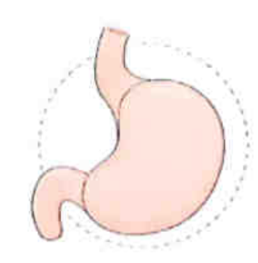


Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

1 Look and write the missing letters. انظر واكتب الحروف الناقصة.

1.


s _ ele _ on

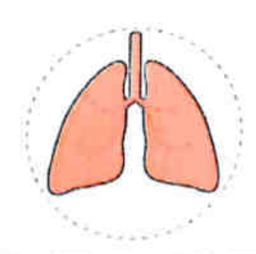
2.


st _ m _ c _

3.

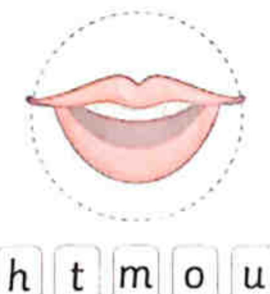

b _ ne _ and m _ scl _ s

2 Look, unscramble and write. انظر، أعد ترتيب الحروف واكتب.

1.


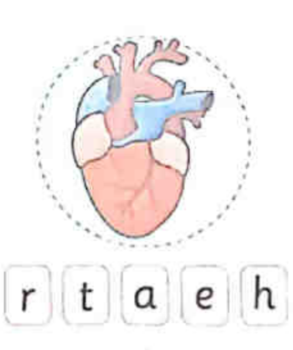
s l u g n

....

2.


h t m o u

....

3.


r t a e h

....

1. Ask your child to look at the pictures and write the missing letters in each word.
- اطلب من طفلك أن ينظر إلى الصور ويكتب الحروف الناقصة في كل كلمة.
2. Ask your child to look at the pictures, unscramble the letters of the words then write them correctly.
- اطلب من طفلك أن ينظر إلى الصور ويعيد ترتيب حروف الكلمات ثم يكتبها بشكل صحيح

1 Digestive System الجهاز الهضمى



The organ العضو	Function الوظيفة
digestive system الجهاز الهضمى	We use it when we eat and drink. نستخدمه عندما نأكل ونشرب.
mouth فم	We chew and swallow food through it. نقوم بمضغ وبلع الطعام من خلاله.
stomach المعدة	The food goes to it. A special liquid in the stomach changes the food into energy and nutrients. يذهب الطعام إليها. يقوم سائل خاص فى المعدة بتحويل الطعام إلى طاقة وعناصر غذائية.

Read and complete. اقرأ وأكمل.

chew - stomach - nutrients - liquid

We use our digestive system when we eat and drink. We (1).................. and swallow food, then it goes to our stomach. In the stomach, a special (2).................. changes the food into energy and (3).................. that we need in our bodies.

Notes for parents

1. Help your child learn about the digestive system and its functions. ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم عن الجهاز الهضمى ووظائفه

- Ask your child to read and complete the text using the given words in the box.

اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويكمل النص مستخدمًا الكلمات المعطاة فى المربع أعلاه

2 Respiratory System الجهاز التنفسى



The organ العضو	Function الوظيفة
respiratory system الجهاز التنفسى	We use it when we breathe. نستخدمه عندما نتنفس.
nose أنف	We breathe in air through it. نستنشق الهواء من خلالها.
lungs الرئتين	The air we breathe in goes to our lungs. In the lungs, the oxygen in the air is passed to the blood. الهواء الذى نستنشقه يذهب إلى الرئتين. فى الرئتين، يمر الأكسچين من الهواء إلى الدم.
heart القلب	It pumps the blood around our body. إنه يضخ الدم حول أجسامنا.



Read and complete. اقرأ وأكمل.

blood - lungs - heart - breathe

We use our respiratory system when we breathe. We (1)...... in air through our nose, and it goes to our lungs. In the lungs, the oxygen in the air is passed to the (2)...... . Our (3)...... pumps this blood around our body.

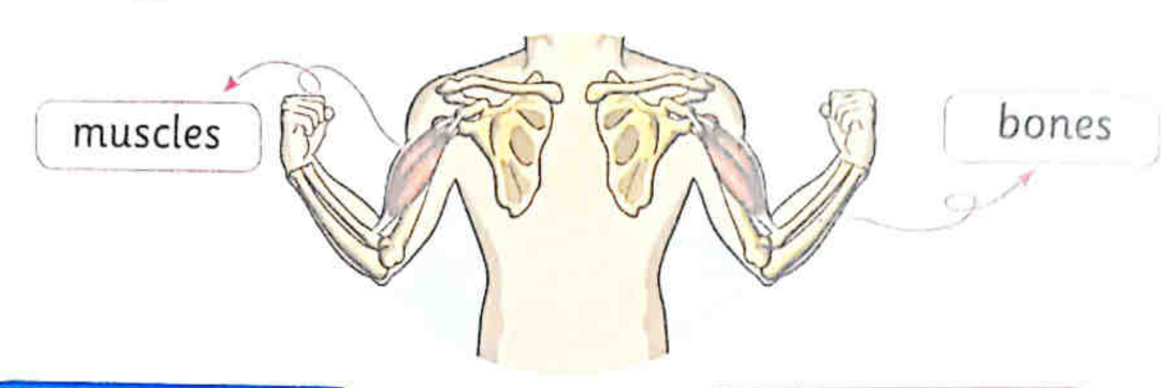
2 Help your child learn about the respiratory system and its functions.

- ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم عن الجهاز التنفسى ووظائفه

• Ask your child to read and complete the text using the given words in the box.

- اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويكمل النص مستخدمًا الكلمات المعطاة فى المربع أعلاه

3 Bones and muscles العظام و العضلات



The organ العضو	Function الوظيفة
skeleton الهيكل العظمى	It is made up of all the bones in our body. يتكون الهيكل العظمى من جميع العظام الموجودة فى جسدنا.
bones العظام	They make us strong and protect our organs. تجعلنا العظام أقوياء وتحمى أعضاءنا.
muscles العضلات	- They are attached to our bones. تتصل العضلات بعظامنا. - They lift and turn bones to make us move. ترفع العظام وتجعلها تستدير لتجعلنا نتحرك.

Read and complete. اقرأ وأكمل.

Muscles - strong - move - organ

Our skeleton is made up of all the bones in our body. These make us (1)........ and protect our organs. (2)........ are attached to our bones, and they lift and turn bones to make us (3)........ .

Notes for parents

3. Help your child learn about bones and muscles and their functions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم عن العظام والعضلات و وظائفهم.

• Ask your child to read and complete the text using the given words in the box.

اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويكمل النص مستخدمًا الكلمات فى المربع

Dictation

• لإتقان مهارة الكتابة استخدم كارت المعاصر من نهاية الكتاب

Read and spell	Complete	Write
digestive system	di _ _ st _ _ e s _ st _ m	
respiratory system	re _ _ i _ atory s _ stem	
bones	b _ _ es	
muscles	m _ _ cl _ s	
swallow	s _ a _ _ ow	
chew	c _ e _	
heart	h _ _ rt	
stomach	s _ o _ ach	
lungs	l _ n _ s	
skeleton	s _ el _ t _ n	
blood	bl _ _ d	
pump	p _ m _	

• Help your child read, spell , complete and write the words.

- ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ، يتهجى، يكمل ويكتب الكلمات

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. We use our digestive system when we ________.
   a. eat b. think c. breathe d. walk
2. We chew food, then it goes to our ________.
   a. heart b. stomach c. teeth d. lungs
3. The food ________ into energy and nutrients.
   a. changes b. mixes c. uses d. moves
4. We need energy and nutrients in our ________.
   a. respiratory b. digestive c. bodies d. home

2 Listen and complete.

استمع وأكمل.

1. Our ________ is made up of all the bones in our body.
2. ________ are attached to our bones.
3. Muscles lift and turn ________ to make us move.
4. Bones make us ________ and protect our organs.

3 Order the words to make correct sentences.

رتب الكلمات لتكوين جمل صحيحة.

1. breathe in – through – air – We – nose – our.
2. passed to – the blood – is – Where – the oxygen ?

Notes for parents

1. Ask your child to listen and circle the correct answer. اطلب من طفلك أن يستمع ويضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة
2. Ask your child to listen to the text and complete the sentences. اطلب من طفلك أن يستمع إلى النص ويكمل الجمل
3. Ask your child to read, order the words and write the sentences correctly. اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويرتب الكلمات ويكتب الجمل بطريقة صحيحة

4 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الصندوق.

oxygen – nose – heart – stomach

When we eat, we chew and swallow our food. A liquid changes the food in our (1) .... into energy and nutrients.
We breathe in air through our (2) .... and it goes to our lungs. The (3) .... in our lungs is passed to the blood.

5 Read the following text and answer the questions below.

اقرأ النص التالى وأجب عن الأسئلة.

Our body has many systems that work at the same time. Our digestive system works when we eat and drink. We chew and swallow food, then it goes to the stomach. A special liquid changes the food into energy and nutrients that we need in our bodies. We use our respiratory system when we breathe in air through our nose and it goes to our lungs.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. When we eat and ...., we use our digestive system.
   a. drink b. breathe c. move d. listen
2. A special liquid .... food into energy.
   a. eats b. works c. goes d. changes

B. Answer the following questions :

3. What system do we use when we breathe in ?
....
4. Where does food go after we swallow it ?
....

6 Punctuate the following sentence. ضع علامات الترقيم للجملة الآتية.

we breathe in air through our nose
....

4 Ask your child to read and complete the text with words from the box. - اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويكمل النص بالكلمات من المربع
5 Ask your child to read the text and answer the given questions. - اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ النص ويجيب عن الأسئلة المعطاة
6 Ask your child to punctuate the given sentences. - اطلب من طفلك أن يضع علامات الترقيم للجملة المعطاة

Lesson 2

• Reading
• Our senses



Vocabulary

★ Listen and repeat. استمع وردد.

Key vocabulary

senses	الحواس	hearing	حاسة السمع
taste	حاسة التذوق	smell	حاسة الشم
touch	حاسة اللمس	sweet	حلو المذاق
sight	حاسة الإبصار	information	معلومات
savory	مالح	combination	مزيج / تركيب

Extra vocabulary

world	عالم	English	لغة انجليزية
tongue	لسان	Arabic	لغة عربية
skin	جلد / بشرة	Spanish	لغة اسبانية
What kind ... ?	ما نوع ... ؟	the USA	الولايات المتحدة الأمريكية
communicate	يتصل / يتواصل	Braille	طريقة برايل للمكفوفين
sign language	لغة الإشارة	code	نظام / رمز
deaf	أصم (لا يسمع)	blind	كفيف / فاقد البصر
difficulty	صعوبة	dots	نقاط
versions	إصدارات	punctuation marks	علامات الترقيم
complete	تام - كامل	letter	حرف
fireworks	ألعاب نارية	Egyptian dish	أكلة مصرية
loud	عالي الصوت	animal's fur	فراء حيوان

Notes for parents

• Help your child listen to the words and repeat them.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع إلى الكلمات ويرددهم

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular			Irregular		
Present		**Past**	**Present**		**Past**
taste	يتذوق	tasted	understand	يفهم	understood
work	يعمل	worked	see	يرى	saw
invent	يخترع	invented	hear	يسمع	heard
enjoy	يستمتع	enjoyed	smell	يشم	smelt
use	يستخدم	used	feel	يشعر	felt
touch	يلمس	touched	mean	يعنى / يقصد	meant
call	يسمى/يدعى	called	speak	يتكلم	spoke

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

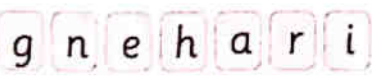
think about	يفكر فى
all the time	طوال الوقت
take in a lot of information	يستوعب الكثير من المعلومات
look at	ينظر إلى
lots of	كثير من
different from	مختلف عن
have difficulty hearing	يعانى من ضعف السمع
find out	يكتشف
(be) called	يسمى / يدعى
the world around us	العالم من حولنا
feel soft	ملمسها ناعم



Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

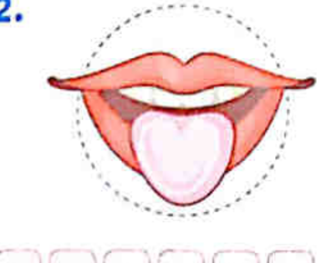
- **Look, unscramble and write.** انظر، أعد ترتيب الحروف واكتب.

1.



g n e h a r i

....

2.


n g t o u e

....

3.


n l b i d

....

• Ask your child to look at the pictures, unscramble the letters of the words then write them correctly.
- اطلب من طفلك أن ينظر إلى الصور ويعيد ترتيب حروف الكلمات ثم يكتبهم بشكل صحيح

★ Look and identify. انظر وتعرف.

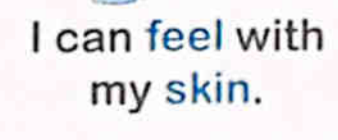
I have five senses. أنا لدي خمس حواس.



I can hear with my ears.



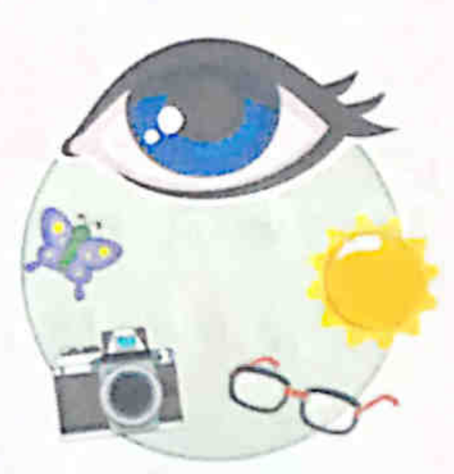
I can smell with my nose.



I can feel with my skin.



I can taste with my tongue.



I can see with my eyes.

Notes for parents

- Help your child look at the pictures and identify the five senses.

ساعد طفلك أن ينظر إلى الصور ويتعرف على الحواس الخمسة

 **Read and identify.** اقرأ وتعرف.

Pop Quiz | تدرب على ٩٩ من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع

We use our senses every day to help us understand the world around us. We use our eyes to see and our ears to hear. We smell with our nose, taste with our tongue, and we can feel with our skin.

Think about where you are now. What can you see ?

What can you hear ? Our senses are working all the time and they take in a lot of information.

Look at the photo. What can the child smell(1) ? What do you think he can feel(2) ? What kind of food do you enjoy ? Some foods are sweet(3), and some are savory(4).

We taste lots of different kinds(5) of food every day.Some people cannot see or hear, so they have different ways to communicate(6).

People who are deaf(7) or have difficulty hearing(8) can learn sign language(9). It is a complete language, like English, Arabic or Spanish, and there are different versions(10) of it around the world - sign language in Egypt is different from sign language in the USA.

Braille(11) is a code(12) which people who are blind(13) or have difficulty seeing(14) can use to read. It has different combinations(15) of dots(16).

Check Vocabulary

يشم (1)
يشعر (2)
حلو المذاق (3)
مالح (4)
أنواع (5)
يتواصل (6)
أصم (7)
ضعف السمع (8)
لغة الإشارة (9)
نسخ/إصدارات (10)
طريقة برايل (11)
رمز (12)
كفيف (13)
ضعف البصر (14)
تركيبات/ مزيج (15)
نقاط (16)





• Help your child read and identify about our different senses.

- ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويتعرف على حواسنا المختلفة

- نحن نستخدم حواسنا كل يوم لتساعدنا على فهم العالم من حولنا. نحن نستخدم أعيننا لنرى وأذننا لنسمع. نحن نشم بأنفنا، نتذوق بلساننا ويمكننا أن نشعر عن طريق بشرتنا (جلدنا) - فكر أين أنت الآن. ماذا ترى ؟ ماذا تسمع ؟ تعمل حواسنا طوال الوقت وتستقبل الكثير من المعلومات
- انظر إلى الصورة. ماذا يستطيع الطفل أن يشم ؟ ماذا تعتقد أنه يشعر ؟ أي نوع من الطعام تستمتع به ؟ بعض الأطعمة حلوة المذاق وبعضها مالح. نحن نتذوق الكثير من أنواع الأطعمة المختلفة كل يوم. بعض الناس لا يستطيعوا أن يروا أو يسمعوا، لذلك يكون لديهم طرق مختلفة للتواصل. الصم أو من يعاني من ضعف السمع يمكنهم تعلم لغة الإشارة إنها لغة كاملة مثل اللغة الإنجليزية، العربية أو الأسبانية، ويوجد منها إصدارات مختلفة حول العالم - لغة الإشارة في مصر مختلفة عن لغة الإشارة في الولايات المتحدة الأمريكية
- طريقة برايل هي نظام يمكن أن يستخدمها الأشخاص المكفوفين أو من لديهم ضعف بصر للقراءة. فهذه اللغة لها تركيبات مختلفة من النقاط

They can be a letter, number, punctuation mark or word. The person reading can touch the dots to find out what they mean. Braille was invented(17) by Louis Braille.

Check Vocabulary
(17) اخترع

Answer the following questions :

Learn **1.** What do we use to smell ?
We use our nose to smell.

Practice **2.** Who invented Braille ?
....

Language

Capital letters الحروف الكبيرة

تستخدم الحروف الكبيرة مع الآتى :

Proper nouns أسماء العَلَم

Names of people and pets أسماء الأشخاص والحيوانات الأليفة


Hany


Amira


Roy


Tamra

Names of places أسماء الأماكن



Giza Zoo

The pronoun I الضمير (I)

I

Holidays العطلات

Eid Al-Fitr Christmas

Notes for parents

يمكن أن تكون حرفًا أو رقمًا أو علامة ترقيم أو كلمة. فيستطيع الشخص الذى يقرأ أن يلمس النقاط ليكتشف معانيها. من قام باختراع طريقة برايل هو «لويس برايل»

• Help your child identify when we write the capital letters in the sentence.

• ساعد طفلك أن يعرف متى نستخدم الحروف الكبيرة فى الجملة

• لاحظ الإختصارات تكتب بحرف كبير (capital) مثل Mr ، Mrs.

Days of the week أيام الأسبوع	Sunday Friday
Months of the year شهور السنة	June October November August
At the beginning of a sentence. فى بداية الجملة	Turn on the fan. It's hot.
Countries and nationalities أسماء البلاد والجنسيات	Egypt / Egyptian



Pop Quiz on Language

1 Punctuate the following sentences. ضع علامات الترقيم للجمل الآتية.

1. i speak english and french

....

2. what can the child smell

....

3. i live in cairo in egypt

....

4. my teacher is called mr hassan

....

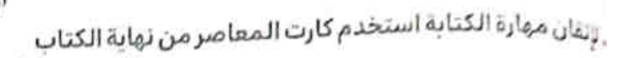
2 Circle the sentences with the correct punctuation.

ضع دائرة حول الجمل بعلامات الترقيم الصحيحة.

1. my name is nada. I live in aswan ?
2. We have fun on weekends.
3. What can you see and hear.
4. Sign language is a complete language.

1. Ask your child to punctuate the given sentences. - اطلب من طفلك أن يضع علامات الترقيم للجمل المعطاه
2. Ask your child to circle the sentences with the correct punctuation. - اطلب من طفلك أن يضع دائرة على الجمل المكتوبة بعلامات ترقيم صحيحة

Dictation



Read and spell	Complete	Write
sight	si _ _ t	
hearing	he _ _ i _ g	
taste	t _ s _ e	
smell	_ m _ ll	
touch	t _ _ ch	
tongue	t _ n _ ue	
skin	s _ i _	
savory	s _ v _ _ y	
sign language	s _ _ n la _ _ uage	
deaf	de _ _	
Braille	B _ ai _ _ e	
code	c _ d _	
blind	b _ i _ d	

Notes for parents

- Help your child read, spell , complete and write.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ، يتهجى، يكمل ويكتب

General Exercises on Lesson 2

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

• Understand • Apply • Create

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

استمع واختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. We use our eyes to ....
   a. taste b. touch c. hear d. see
2. We hear with our ....
   a. ears b. arms c. legs d. brain
3. We can feel with our ....
   a. mouth b. skin c. nose d. stomach

2 Listen and complete.

استمع وأكمل.

1. People who are .... or have difficulty hearing can learn sign language.
2. Sign language is .... in each country.
3. We use our hands, ... and bodies to communicate.
4. People use .... instead of hearing to understand.

3 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل المحادثة من الكلمات من الصندوق.

five – sense – eyes – ears

Mustafa : Hi, Mounir. What do you think of today's lesson ?

Mounir : Hi, Mustafa. It's an easy lesson. As you know we have (1) .... senses.

Mustafa : Sure, but why do we need them ?

Mounir : Each (2) .... has an important job.

Mustafa : Can you give me an example?

Mounir : Yes, we use our (3) .... to see and we use our ears to hear.

Mustafa : That's right. It's an interesting lesson.

1. Ask your child to listen to the text and choose the correct answer.
- اطلب من طفلك أن يستمع إلى النص ويختار الإجابة الصحيحة
2. Ask your child to listen to the text and complete the sentences. - اطلب من طفلك أن يستمع إلى النص ويكمل الجمل
3. Ask your child to read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box.
- اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويكمل المحادثة مستخدمًا كلمات من المربع

4 Read the following text and answer the questions below.

اقرأ النص التالى وأجب عن الأسئلة.

Braille is a code which people who are blind or have difficulty seeing can use to read. It was invented by Louis Braille. It has different combinations of dots. They can be a letter, number, punctuation mark or word. The person reading can touch the dots to find out what they mean. Some people who cannot hear use sign language. It is a complete language, like English, Arabic or Spanish.

A. Choose the correct answer :

1. People who are blind or cannot .... well can learn to read by using Braille.
   a. sing   b. hear   c. touch   d. see
2. Braille is a .... language.
   a. useless   b. bad   c. sad   d. complete

B. Answer the following questions :

3. Who use Braille to communicate ?

   ....

4. What is sign language ?

   ....

5 Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements.

أكتب فقرة إنشائية من حوالى (50) كلمة مستخدمًا العناصر الإرشادية.

Our different senses

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

Guiding words :

• hear   • ears   • smell   • skin

....

....

....

....

....

Notes for parents

4. Ask your child to read the text and answer the questions. اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ النص ويجيب عن الأسئلة

5. Ask your child to write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words using the given guiding words. اطلب من طفلك أن يكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٥٠) كلمة مستخدمًا الكلمات الإرشادية

Lesson 3

• Language



Listen and repeat. استمع وردد.

Key vocabulary

lounge	صالة - غرفة الجلوس	right hemisphere	الشق الأيمن (من المخ)
disappointed	خائب الأمل/محبط	left hemisphere	الشق الأيسر (من المخ)
cookery	فن الطبخ	activity	نشاط
brain	المخ		

Extra vocabulary

creative	مُبدع - مُبتكر	memory	ذاكرة
paper	ورق	choices	اختيارات
math	الرياضيات	main areas	مناطق رئيسية
science	العلوم	cerebrum	منطقة المخ
art	التربية الفنية	cerebellum	منطقة المخيخ
solving problems	حل المشاكل	brain stem	جذع المخ
tired	متعب	movement	حركة
thoughts	أفكار	balance	توازن
artistic	ذو حس فنى	light bulb	مصباح كهربى

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular

Present		Past
tidy	يرتب	tidied
smile	يبتسم	smiled
practice	يمارس/يتدرب	practiced
answer	يجيب	answered
paint	يلون	painted
control	يتحكم	controlled
join	يربط	joined

Irregular

Present		Past
say	يقول	said
know	يعرف	knew
draw	يرسم	drew
run	يجرى	ran
choose	يختار	chose
take	يأخذ	took
think	يفكر	thought

• Help your child listen to the words and repeat them. - ساعد طفلك أن يستمع إلى الكلمات ويرددها

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

at the weekend	فى عطلة نهاية الأسبوع	Let's + inf.	هيا بنا + فعل فى المصدر
What's the matter ?	ما الأمر	do drawing	يقوم بالرسم
paint a picture	تلوّن صورة	do quizzes	يحل اختبارات قصيرة
control the right/left side of	يتحكم فى الجانب الأيمن / الجانب الأيسر من	play tennis	يلعب التنس
		on Mondays	فى أيام الاثنين

Pop Quiz | تدرب على ٩٩ من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع



Read and learn. اقرأ وتعلم .

Fact file

Ten Fun Brain Facts ! عشر حقائق مثيرة عن المخ !

1. The brain is the most important organ(1) of the body.
2. An adult brain weighs(2) about 1400 grams.
3. About 75 % of the brain is made up of water.
4. Your brain continues(3) to grow until you're about 18 years old.
5. Your brain uses about 20 % of the oxygen and blood in your body.
6. Information(4) travels from your body to your brain at 240 - 420 kilometers per hour.
7. Every minute about one liter of blood flows through the brain.
8. While you are sleeping, your brain goes through all the memories(5) of the day.
9. The average brain(6) has 12.000 to 60.000 thoughts a day!
10. When you are awake, your brain makes enough electricity to power a small light bulb.

Check Vocabulary

(1) عضو فى الجسم
(2) يزن
(3) يستمر
(4) معلومات
(5) ذكريات
(6) متوسط المخ

Notes for parents

• Help you child to read and learn about his/her brain.

. ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويتعلم عن المخ

Pop Quiz | تدرب على ٢٩ من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع

Look, listen and read انظر، استمع واقرأ.

What do Adam and Kareema like to do ?

ماذا يحب آدم وكريمة أن يفعلوا ؟



"It is Saturday, so there's no school. What are we doing today, Mom?" asks Kareema.

"We have to tidy(1) the lounge(2). Then you can choose what you want to do", says Mom.

Kareema's brother Adam smiles(3). "I know what I want to do!" he says.

"Let's go to the park. We can run and play. I want to practice(4) football." Kareema looks disappointed(5).

"What's the matter ?" asks Mom.

"I like the park," Kareema answers. "But I want to do something creative(6) this afternoon. I would like to draw(7) or paint(8) a picture. Adam goes to the park every week."

"Kareema always does drawing!" says Adam.

Mom smiles. "I think we can all be happy today. Let's go to the park. We can play there and we can take pencils and paper with us. You can draw in the park, too. But first, let's tidy the lounge."

Check Vocabulary

- ينظم (1)
- غرفة الجلوس (2)
- يبتسم (3)
- يتدرب (4)
- محبط (5)
- إبداعي (6)
- يرسم (7)
- يلون (8)

Read and tick (✓) or (✗): | **Learn** | **Practice**

1. Mom wants to tidy the kitchen. 
2. Adam wants to run in the park. ◯

• Help your child look, listen and read the text.

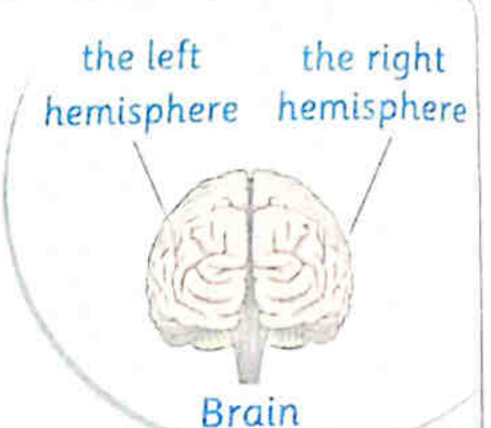
- ساعد طفلك أن ينظر، يستمع ويقرأ النص

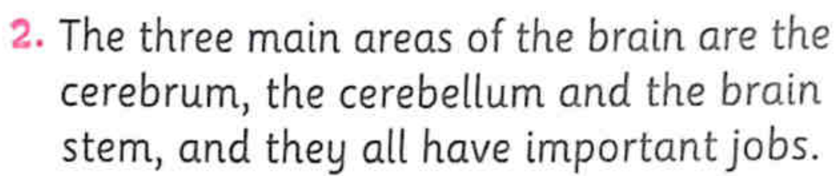
إنه يوم السبت، لذا لا يوجد يوم دراسي تسأل كريمة "ماذا سنفعل اليوم يا أمي ؟" تقول الأم «علينا أن نرتب غرفة الجلوس ثم يمكنكم اختيار ما تريدون القيام به » يبتسم آدم شقيق كريمة ويقول " أعرف ما أريد أن أفعله اليوم! " "هيا بنا نذهب إلى الحديقة يمكننا الجري واللعب أريد أن أتدرب على كرة القدم " تبدو كريمة محبطة تسأل الأم "ما الأمر" ؟ تجيب كريمة "أحب الحديقة، ولكني أريد أن أفعل شئ ما إبداعي وقت الظهيرة هذا اليوم أود أن أرسم أو ألون صورة يذهب آدم إلى الحديقة كل أسبوع يقول آدم "كريمة ترسم دائمًا" تبتسم الأم وتقول "أعتقد أنه يمكننا جميعًا أن نكون سعداء اليوم دعونا نذهب إلى الحديقة يمكننا اللعب هناك ويمكننا إحضار أقلام الرصاص والورق معنا، ويمكنك الرسم في الحديقة أيضًا لكن أولًا دعونا نرتب غرفة الجلوس

Our brain

1. Our brain controls how we move, what we remember, and the choices we make.

١. مخنا يتحكم فى كيفية الحركة لدينا وبماذا نتذكر وبالأختيارات التى تصنعها.





2. The three main areas of the brain are the cerebrum, the cerebellum and the brain stem, and they all have important jobs.

٢. الثلاث مناطق الرئيسية فى المخ هى منطقة المخ ومنطقة المخيخ وجذع الدماغ وكل منطقة منهم لها وظائف هامة.

3. The cerebrum controls our senses, thoughts, how we speak, and our memories. The cerebellum controls movement and balance.

٣. منطقة المخ تتحكم فى مشاعرنا وأفكارنا وكيف نتحدث وذكرياتنا. منطقة المخيخ تتحكم فى الحركة والتوازن.

4. The brain stem joins the two parts of the brain.

٤. جذع المخ يربط جزئين المخ معًا.

5. The left hemisphere of the brain controls the right side of the body.

٥. الشق الأيسر من المخ يتحكم فى الجانب الأيمن من الجسم.

6. The right hemisphere of the brain control the left side of the body.

٦. الشق الايمن من المخ يتحكم فى الجانب الأيسر من الجسم.

7. More people use their right hand to write with.

٧. كثير من الناس يستخدمون يدهم اليمنى فى الكتابة.

8. Some people who are left-handed are very creative and artistic.

٨. بعض الناس عسر الايدى (يستخدمون اليد اليسرى) يكونوا مبدعين وفنانين / لديهم حس فنى.

9. The left hemisphere is important for math, science and solving problems.

٩. الشق الايسر من المخ هام فى العمليات الحسابية والعلوم وحل المشكلات.

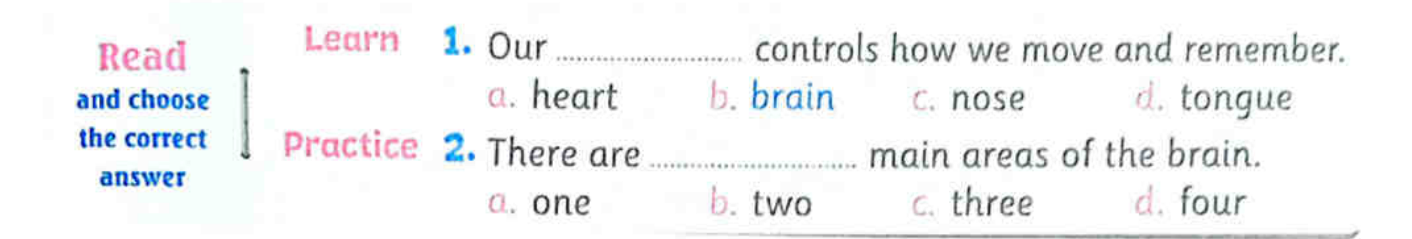
10. We use the right hemisphere in creative activities such as art and music.

١٠. نستخدم الشق الايمن فى الانشطة الابداعية مثل الرسم والموسيقى.

Notes for parents

- Help your child learn about the brain and its importance.

- ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم عن المخ وأهميته



Read and choose the correct answer

Learn | Practice

1. Our .... controls how we move and remember.
   a. heart b. brain c. nose d. tongue
2. There are .... main areas of the brain.
   a. one b. two c. three d. four

Language functions

Talking about your activities at the weekend.

التحدث عن الأنشطة الخاصة بك فى عطلة نهاية الاسبوع.

What do you like to do at the weekend ?
ماذا تحب أن تفعل فى عطلة نهاية الإسبوع ؟

I like to draw or paint a picture.
أحب أن أرسم أو ألون صورة.

Let's + inf. مصدر الفعل.

تستخدم فى تقديم الاقتراحات

Let's go to the zoo.
هيا نذهب لحديقة الحيوان.

That's a good idea !
هذه فكرة جيدة !

• Help your child talk about his/her activities at the weekend.

- ساعد طفلك أن يتحدث عن الأنشطة الخاصة به/بها فى العطلة.

Language

1 The Present Simple Tense ١. زمن المضارع البسيط



I /You / we/ They / اسم جمع + التصريف الأول للفعل

ex. - I know what I want to do.
- We play tennis after school.

He /She / It /(Ali) اسم مفرد + (inf.) مصدر الفعل + s or es

• معظم الأفعال يضاف لها (s) ← s

• أما التى تنتهى بـ (sh, ch, ss, x, o) يضاف لها (es) ← es

ex. - Adam goes to the park every week.
- Karima always does drawing.

Notes :

⭐ الفعل المنتهى بـ (y) قبله حرف ساكن يضاف له (ies) مع حذف (y) :

ex. - She carries a bag.

⭐ الفعل الذى ينتهى بـ (y) قبله حرف متحرك (a - e - i - o - u) يضاف له (s):

ex. - He plays volleyball every Friday.

Usage الاستخدام

⭐ يستخدم زمن المضارع البسيط للتعبير عن عادات أو أحداث متكررة أو حقائق علمية.

ex. - He likes reading books on holidays.
- The sun rises in the east.

Notes for parents

• Help your child identify the present simple tense.

• ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على زمن المضارع البسيط



He /She /It / اسم مفرد + doesn't	+	(inf.) مصدر الفعل
I /You /We /They/ اسم جمع + don't		

ex.
- I don't have sisters.
- He doesn't play tennis.





A Yes / No Question السؤال بمعنى هل ... ؟

Do + I /you /we /they/ اسم جمع	+	inf. مصدر الفعل	+	باقي السؤال	?
Does + he /she /it/ اسم مفرد					

ex. Do you like milk ?
- Yes, I do.
- No, I don't.

ex. Does she like milk ?
- Yes, she does.
- No, she doesn't.

B Wh - question السؤال الذى يبدأ بكلمة استفهام.

Question word	+	do + you /we /they	+	inf. مصدر الفعل	?
		does + he /she /it			

ex. When do you get up every day ?
- I get up at 6 o'clock.

2 Auxiliary verbs ٢. الأفعال المساعدة

⭐ هناك بعض الأفعال لها أشكال خاصة فى زمن المضارع كالآتى :

1 Verb to be فعل "يكون"

He / She / It → is / isn't

I → am / 'm not

We / You / They → are / aren't

– She is hungry.

– They are tired.

2 Verb to have فعل "يملك"

He / She / It → has / doesn't have

I / We / You / They → have / don't have

– Tarek has two sisters.

– I have one brother.

3 Verb to do فعل "يفعل"

He / She / It → does / doesn't

I / We / You / They → do / don't

– Hana does art class.

– We do cookery class.

– I don't do homework late.

Notes for parents

- Help your child identify auxiliary verbs.

- ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على الأفعال المساعدة



Pop Quiz on Language

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة .

1. They .... tired.
   a. be b. is c. are d. can
2. I .... one brother.
   a. has b. have c. do d. am
3. We .... cookery in class.
   a. are b. do c. does d. is
4. Adam .... to the park every week.
   a. go b. goes c. going d. is going
5. .... he usually play at noon ?
   a. Does b. Do c. Is d. Are
6. I .... eat pizza.
   a. doesn't b. isn't c. don't d. aren't
7. Hany .... his bag every day to school.
   a. carries b. carry c. carrying d. is carrying
8. Do you have a jacket ? Yes, I ....
   a. does b. am c. do d. don't

2 Write the verb in brackets in the correct present form.

اكتب الفعل بين الأقواس بالصيغة الصحيحة للمضارع البسيط.

1. She .... (eat) cheese for breakfast.
2. They .... (lives) in a large house.
3. She always .... (listen) to her teacher.
4. She .... (do) her homework every evening.
5. Every morning, we .... (reads) the newspaper.

1. Ask your child to choose the correct answer. - اطلب من طفلك أن يختار الإجابة الصحيحة
2. Ask your child to write the correct form of the verb in brackets. - اطلب من طفلك أن يكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للفعل بين الأقواس

General Exercises on Lesson 3

نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب

• Understand • Apply • Create

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

استمع واختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. Mom wants to tidy the ....
   a. kitchen b. lounge c. bedroom d. balcony
2. My brother wants to .... in the park.
   a. draw b. paint c. move d. run
3. I want to do something ....
   a. creative b. happy c. noisy d. easy

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة .

1. She .... three sisters.
   a. have b. has c. do d. is
2. It .... Friday, so there's no school.
   a. is b. are c. do d. does
3. Our brain .... our body.
   a. control b. controls c. controlling d. controlled
4. Let's .... to the park.
   a. go b. goes c. went d. going

3 Order the words to make correct sentences.

رتب الكلمات لتكوين جمل صحيحة.

1. we – are – What – doing – today ?

   ....

2. like – I – draw – a picture – would – to.

   ....

Notes for parents

1. Ask your child to listen and choose the correct answer.
2. Ask your child to choose the correct answer.
3. Ask your child to reorder the words and write the sentences correctly.

اطلب من طفلك أن يستمع ويختار الإجابة الصحيحة

اطلب من طفلك أن يختار الإجابة الصحيحة

اطلب من طفلك أن يعيد ترتيب الكلمات ويكتب الجمل بشكل صحيح

4 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الصندوق.

art – left – hemispheres – right

The brain is the most important organ of the body. There are two halves, or (1)................ , in our brain. The (2)................ hemisphere is important for math, science, and solving problems. We use the right hemisphere in creative activities such as (3).................. and music.

5 Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements.

أكتب فقرة إنشائية من حوالى (50) كلمة مستخدمًا العناصر الإرشادية المعطاة.

What do you like to do at the weekend ?

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

Guiding words :

- creative
- practice
- paint
- park





....

....

....

....

4. Ask your child to read and complete the text with the words from the box.

- اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويكمل النص من الكلمات فى المربع

5. Ask your child to write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding words.

- اطلب من طفلك أن يكتب فقرة إنشائية من حوالى (٥٠) كلمة مستخدمًا الكلمات الإرشادية المعطاة له

Lesson 4

• Parasports



Vocabulary

★ Listen and repeat. استمع وردد.

Key vocabulary

Paralympic Games = Paralympics	دورة الالعاب البارالمبية (الألعاب الأوليمبية لذوى الاحتياجات الخاصة)	silver medal	ميدالية فضية
		bronze medal	ميدالية برونزية
international	دولى - عالمى	champion	بطل رياضى
competition	مسابقة - منافسة	parasports	الألعاب الرياضية لذوى الاحتياجات الخاصة
athletes	الرياضيين		
gold medal	ميدالية ذهبية	dedication	تفانٍ / إخلاص

Extra vocabulary

disabilities	إعاقات	national team	الفريق القومى
Olympics	الألعاب الأولمبية	hard work	عمل جاد
World Championship	بطولة العالم	level	مستوى
Egypt Cup	كأس مصر	sitting volleyball	كرة الطائرة على الكراسى المتحركة
female	أنثى		
swimmer	سباح	New Zealand	دولة نيوزيلندا
runner	عدَّاء - متسابق	Africa	قارة أفريقيا
race	سباق	Brazil	دولة البرازيل
opportunities	فرص	country	دولة

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular

Present		Past
join	ينضم	joined
include	يشمل/ يتضمن	included
train	يتدرب	trained

Irregular

Present		Past
hold	يعقد - يقيم	held
win	يفوز	won

Notes for parents

• Help your child listen to the words and repeat them.

• ساعد طفلك أن يستمع إلى الكلمات ويرددها

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

take place = happen	يحدث	get to	يصل إلى
take part in	يشارك فى	have fun = enjoy	يستمتع
is held in a different country	تقام فى دولة مختلفة	do a sport	يمارس رياضة
take years of dedication	يستغرق سنوات من التفانى	the 2016 Rio Paralympics	دورة الألعاب البارالمبية ريو ٢٠١٦
400-meter race	سباق ٤٠٠ متر	athletes with disabilities	الرياضيون ذوى الاحتياجات الخاصة

Read and identify. اقرأ وتعرف.

What do three types of medals mean ?


1. a gold medal  1^{st} winner (First place)



2. a silver medal  2^{nd} winner (Second place)




3. a bronze medal 3^{rd} winner (Third place)



Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

- Look and write the missing letters. انظر واكمل الكلمات.

1. 
ath _ _ _ es

2. 
s _ i _ _ er

3. 
r _ nn _ r

4. 
v _ ll _ yb _ ll

- Help your child read the words and identify what the types of medals mean.
. ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ الكلمات ويتعرف على ما تعنيه أنواع الميداليات
- Ask your child to look at the pictures and write the missing letters.
. اطلب من طفلك أن ينظر إلى الصور ويكتب الحروف الناقصة

Reading

Pop Quiz | تدرب على ٩٩ من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع

Read and learn. اقرأ وتعلم.

The Paralympic Games[(1)] is an international[(2)] competition[(3)] for athletes[(4)] with disabilities[(5)]. Like the Olympics[(6)], it takes place every four years, and is held in a different country each time. Parasports is an important area in sports, and Egypt has many athletes who take part in these competitions.



Aya Ayman Abbas

Aya Ayman Abbas is a swimming champion[(7)] who has won the Egypt Cup[(8)] three times. She was the first female[(9)] Egyptian Paralympic swimmer[(10)] in Rio in 2016. She has won lots of gold[(11)], silver[(12)] and bronze[(13)] medals[(14)] in many different countries.

Mostafa Fathalla is a runner[(15)] who takes part in 100-meter, 200-meter and 400-meter races. He joined[(16)] the national team[(17)] in Egypt in 2006, and has taken part in lots of international competitions. He has won many medals, including gold in the World Championship[(18)] in New Zealand.



Mostafa Fathalla

Check Vocabulary

- دورة الألعاب البارالمبية (1)
- دولى (2)
- مسابقة (3)
- لاعبين رياضيين (4)
- ذوى الاحتياجات الخاصة (5)
- الألعاب الأوليمبية (6)
- بطل فى السباحة (7)
- كأس مصر (8)
- أنثى (9)
- سبّاحة (10)
- ذهبى (11)
- فضى (12)
- برونزى (13)
- ميداليات (14)
- عَدّاء (15)
- انضمّ (16)
- الفريق الوطنى (17)
- بطولة العالم (18)

Notes for parents

- Help your child read the text and learn about the athletes.

- ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ النص ويتعلم عن اللاعبين الرياضيين.

- دورة الألعاب البارالمبية هى مسابقة دولية للاعبين الرياضيين من ذوى الاحتياجات الخاصة فهى مثل دورة الألعاب الأولمبية، تحدث كل أربع سنوات، وتقام فى دولة مختلفة كل مرة دورة الألعاب الأولمبية لذوى الاحتياجات الخاصة هى مجال هام من مجالات الرياضة، ومصر لديها العديد من الرياضيين الذين يشاركون فى هذه المسابقات
- آية أيمن عباس هى بطلة فى السباحة فازت بكأس مصر ثلاثة مرات وكانت أول سباحة مصرية فى الألعاب البارالمبية فى ريو عام ٢٠١٦ فازت بالعديد من الميداليات الذهبية والفضية والبرونزية فى العديد من البلدان المختلفة
- مصطفى فتح الله هو عداء يشارك فى سباقات ١٠٠ متر و ٢٠٠ متر و ٤٠٠ متر انضم إلى المنتخب الوطنى فى مصر عام ٢٠٠٦ وشارك فى العديد من المسابقات الدولية وقد فاز بالعديد من الميداليات بما فى ذلك الذهبية فى بطولة العالم فى نيوزيلندا

Ahmed Abdel Fattah plays sitting volleyball[19]. He took part in the 2016 Rio Paralympics, where the team won bronze. He has played with his team in Africa and Brazil and they have won many international competitions for Egypt.

Being a Paralympic or Olympic athlete takes years of dedication[20] and hard work. Not everyone can get to this level, but there are many opportunities[21] for everyone to take part and have fun doing a sport[22] they enjoy.

Check Vocabulary

(19) كرة طائرة على الكراسي المتحركة

(20) تفاني

(21) فرص

(22) رياضة



Ahmed Abdel Fattah

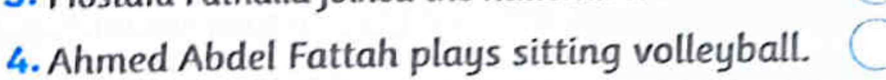
Read and tick (✓) or (✗):

Learn

1. The Paralympic Games is held every three years. 
2. The Olympic Games is held in a different country each time. ◯

Practice

3. Mostafa Fathalla joined the national team in 2005 ◯
4. Ahmed Abdel Fattah plays sitting volleyball. ◯



- أحمد عبد الفتاح يلعب الكرة الطائرة على الكراسي المتحركة. شارك في دورة الألعاب البارالمبية ريو عام ٢٠١٦ حيث فاز الفريق بالميدالية البرونزية. لعب مع فريقه في أفريقيا والبرازيل وفازوا بالعديد من المسابقات الدولية لصالح مصر.
- أن تكون رياضيًا أوليمبيًا لذوي الاحتياجات الخاصة أو رياضيًا أوليمبيًا فذلك يتطلب سنوات من التفاني والعمل الجاد. لا يمكن للجميع الوصول إلى هذا المستوى ولكن هناك العديد من الفرص للجميع للمشاركة والاستمتاع بممارسة الرياضة التي يستمتعون بها.

General Exercises





• Understand • Apply • Create

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

استمع واختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. The Paralympic .... is an international competition.
   a. Plays b. Puzzels c. Games d. Music
2. The Olympics takes place every .... years.
   a. two b. three c. five d. four
3. It is held in a different .... each time.
   a. village b. building c. country d. island
4. Egypt has many .... who take part in these competitions.
   a. teachers b. athletes c. vets d. captains



2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

competitions - team - class - Paralympics

Ahmed Abdel Fattah plays sitting volleyball. He took part in the 2016 Rio (1) .... , where the team won bronze. He has played with his (2) .... in Africa and Brazil. They have won many international (3) .... for Egypt.

3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جمل صحيحة.

1. plays – He – volleyball – sitting.

....

2. won – medals – He – many – has.

....

Notes for parents

1. Ask your child to listen and choose the correct answer اطلب من طفلك أن يستمع ويختار الإجابة الصحيحة
2. Ask your child to read and complete the text with the words from the box اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويكمل النص بالكلمات من المربع
3. Ask your child to read, order, the words and write them correctly اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ، يعيد ترتيب الكلمات ويكتبهم بشكل صحيح

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

إختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

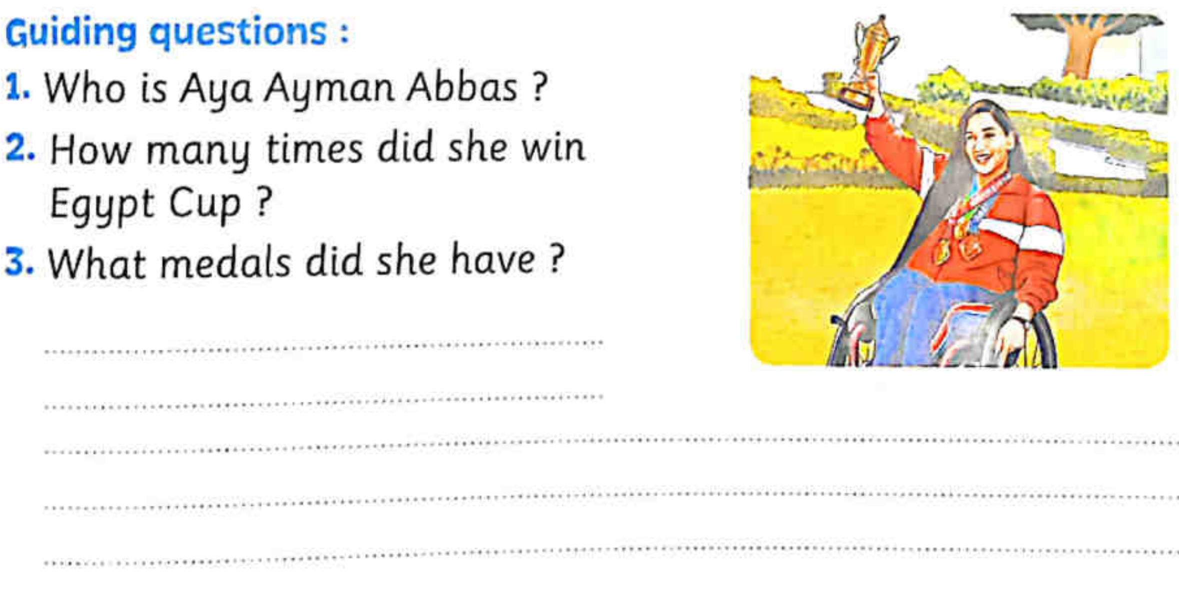
1. Mark .... fruits and vegetables.
   a. like b. likes c. to like d. not like
2. Does she .... hard for the competitions ?
   a. trains b. trained c. training d. train
3. I .... fun doing a sport.
   a. has b. having c. have d. to have
4. Sara .... work on Sundays.
   a. isn't b. don't c. wasn't d. doesn't

5 Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements.

أكتب فقرة إنشائية من حوالى (50) كلمة مستخدمًا العناصر الاسترشادية.

A swimming champion

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب



Guiding questions :

1. Who is Aya Ayman Abbas ?
2. How many times did she win Egypt Cup ?
3. What medals did she have ?

....

....

....

....

....

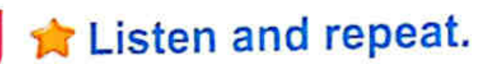
....

4. Ask your child to choose the correct answer. - اطلب من طفلك أن يختار الإجابة الصحيحة
5. Ask your child to write a paragraph of (50) words using the given questions. - اطلب من طفلك أن يكتب فقرة إنشائية مكون من (٥٠) كلمة بإستخدام الأسئلة المعطاه له.

Lessons 5 & 6

• Writing paragraphs
• Project





Vocabulary ★ Listen and repeat. استمع وردد.

Key vocabulary

exercise	يتدرب / تدريب	unhealthy habits	عادات غير صحية
healthy diet	نظام غذائى صحى	summer camp	معسكر صيفى
mental	عقلى	physical	بدنى/ جسدى

Extra vocabulary

routine	نظام يومى	active	نشيط
hard	صعب/ شاق	fat	دهون
range	سلسلة / مجموعة	sugar	سكر
tips	نصائح	clear	واضح
especially	خصوصًا	unimportant information	معلومات غير هامة
video games	ألعاب فيديو		

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular

Present		Past
start	يبدأ	started
organise	ينظم	organised
develop	ينمى	developed
summarize	يلخص	summarized
stay	يبقى	stayed

Irregular

Present		Past
find	يجد	found
drink	يشرب	drank
choose	يختار	chose
write	يكتب	wrote
give	يعطى	gave
learn	يتعلم	learnt / learned

Notes for parents

• Help your child listen to the words and repeat them.

- ساعد طفلك أن يستمع إلى الكلمات ويرددهم

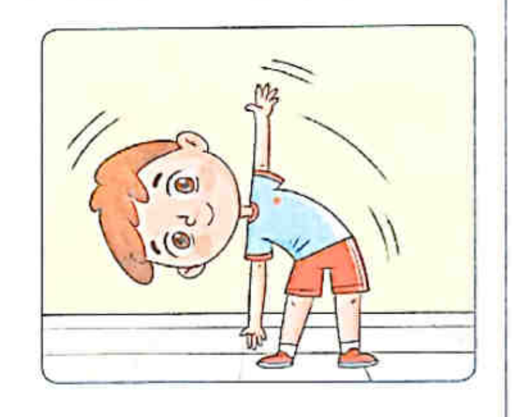
Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

It is a good idea to	إنها لفكرة جيدة أن	as well	أيضًا
try to	يحاول أن	have for lunch	يتناول لوجبة الغداء
do some exercise	يقوم ببعض التدريبات الرياضية	play on	يلعب على
easy for	سهل لـ	a mixture of	خليط من
on hot days	في الأيام الحارة	sitting still for a long time	الجلوس بدون حركة لفترة طويلة
It's fun to	إنه من الممتع أن	choose for	يختار لـ
plan for	يخطط لـ	make friends	يكون صداقات
full of	ملئ بـ	aged	ذو عمر/سن

Pop Quiz | تدرب على ٢٩ من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع

Listen and read. استمع واقرأ.

How to start an exercise routine ? كيف تبدأ التمرين بشكل روتيني



Starting an exercise routine is hard, but it's a good idea to try to do some exercise three to five times a week. It's easier if you find a sport you enjoy doing, perhaps something you can do with friends. Find a time that is easy for everyone in your family.

البدء فى التدريبات بشكل روتينى أمر صعب ولكنها فكرة جيدة أن تحاول القيام ببعض التدريبات من ثلاثة إلى خمس مرات فى الأسبوع. فمن الأسهل أن تجد رياضة تستمتع بالقيام بها. ربما شيئًا يمكنك القيام به مع أصدقائك. قم بإيجاد وقت يكون مناسبًا لكل فرد فى عائلتك.

Read and tick (✓) or (✗): | **Learn** **Practice**

1. Starting an exercise routine is easy. 
2. Try to do some exercise four to six times a week. ( )

• Help your child listen to the text and read it.

- ساعد طفلك أن يستمع إلى النص ويقرأه

Tips for a healthy diet نصائح لنظام غذائى صحى

Eating the right food is very important for our health. We need a range of different kinds of food, with lots of vitamins and minerals. We shouldn't eat too much sugar or fat, and fruit and vegetables are healthy choices. It's important to drink lots of water, too, especially on hot days.

تناول الطعام المناسب هام جدًا لصحتنا. نحن بحاجة إلى قائمة بمجموعة من أنواع مختلفة من الطعام تحتوى على الكثير من الفيتامينات والمعادن. لا ينبغى أن نتناول الكثير من السكر أو الدهون كما أن الفاكهة والخضراوات هى خيارات صحية. أنه من المهم شرب الكثير من الماء أيضًا خاصة فى الأيام الحارة.



Read and choose the correct answer

Learn 1. We shouldn't .... too much sugar.
a. walk b. think c. eat d. find

Practice 2. We drink lots of water on .... days.
a. cold b. hot c. rainy d. foggy

Read and complete. اقرأ وأكمل.

Unhealthy habits عادات غير صحية

computer – watching – video games – snacks

It's fun to play (1).................... sometimes, but it's good to be active as well. Sitting still for a long time isn't good for your health. Sometimes people eat more unhealthy (2).................... when they are (3).................... TV or playing on the (4).................... . Try not to develop unhealthy habits.

إنه من الممتع أن تلعب ألعاب الفيديو بعض الوقت، ولكن من الجيد أن تكون نشيطًا أيضًا. الجلوس ثابت لفترة طويلة ليس جيد لصحتك. فى بعض الأحيان يأكل الناس وجبات خفيفة غير صحية بكميات كبيرة عند مشاهدة التليفزيون أو اللعب على جهاز الكمبيوتر. حاول ألا تنمى عادات غير صحية.

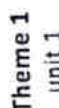
Notes for parents

- Help your child read the text and identify some tips for a healthy diet.

- ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ النص ويتعرف على بعض النصائح لنظام صحى

- Help your child read and complete the text using the words in the box.

- ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويكمل النص مستخدمًا الكلمات فى المربع



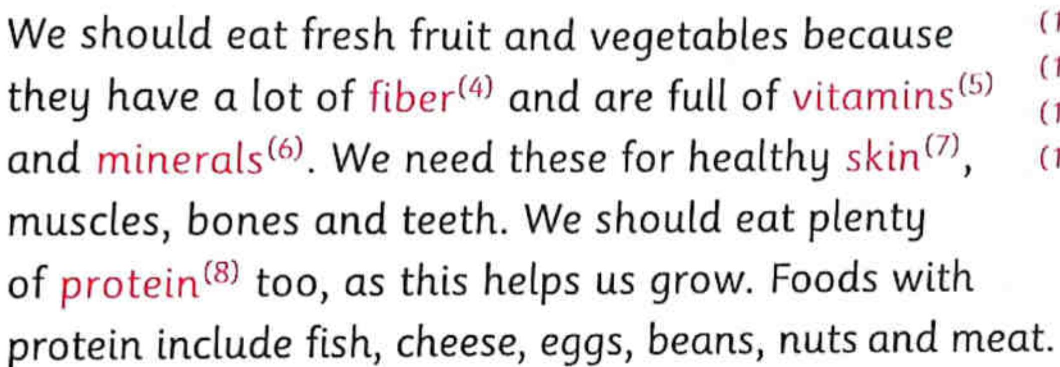
 **Look, read and learn.**

Pop Quiz | تدرب على ٢٩ من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع

We all need to eat a good diet[1] to stay healthy. But what is a good diet ?



A good diet includes[2] lots of fresh food and plenty[3] of water to drink. Our brain is about 75% water and it needs water to work well.



We should eat fresh fruit and vegetables because they have a lot of fiber[4] and are full of vitamins[5] and minerals[6]. We need these for healthy skin[7], muscles, bones and teeth. We should eat plenty of protein[8] too, as this helps us grow. Foods with protein include fish, cheese, eggs, beans, nuts and meat.

We need fats[9] for a healthy nervous system[10] and these include nuts, oily fish[11], oil and butter[12]. Carbohydrates[13] like bread, rice and pasta give us energy. Sugar also gives us energy[14], but too much sugar isn't good for us. Sugar is in cakes, cookies, and candy, so try not to have too much of these. Eat a good diet with lots of different fresh food, and you'll be healthy.

Check Vocabulary

(1) نظام غذائى جيد
(2) يشمل
(3) مقدار وافر
(4) ألياف
(5) فيتامينات
(6) معادن
(7) جلد / بشرة
(8) بروتين
(9) دهون
(10) جهاز عصبى
(11) أسماك بها زيوت
(12) زبدة
(13) كربوهيدرات
(14) طاقة



Answer the following questions :

Learn 1. What foods are higher in fiber ?
Fresh fruit and vegetables.

Practice 2. Is too much sugar good for us ?

....

• Help your child look, read the text and learn.

- ساعد طفلك أن ينظر إلى الصورة، يقرأ النص ويتعلم

نحتاج جميعًا إلى تناول نظام غذائى جيد للبقاء بصحة جيدة. لكن ما هو النظام الغذائى الجيد ؟ يشمل النظام الغذائى الجيد على الكثير من الأطعمة الطازجة والكثير من الماء للشرب. يتكون مُخنا من حوالى ٧٥٪ من الماء ويحتاج الماء ليعمل بشكل جيد. يجب أن نأكل الفاكهة الطازجة والخضراوات لأنها تحتوى على الكثير من الألياف ومليئة بالفيتامينات والمعادن. نحن بحاجة إليها لصحة البشرة والعضلات والعظام والأسنان. يجب أن نأكل الكثير من البروتين أيضًا، لأن هذا يساعدنا على النمو. تشمل الأطعمة التى تحتوى على البروتين مثل الأسماك والجبن والبيض والفول والمكسرات واللحوم. نحن بحاجة إلى الدهون من أجل جهاز عصبى صحى وهذا يشمل المكسرات والأسماك الزيتية والزيت والزبدة. تمدنا الكربوهيدرات مثل الخبز والأرز والمعكرونة بالطاقة. يمنحنا السكر أيضًا الطاقة، لكن الإفراط فى تناول السكر ليس مفيدًا لنا. السكر موجود فى الكيك والبسكويت والحلوى، لذا حاول ألا تفرط فى تناولها. اتبع نظامًا غذائيًا جيدًا يحتوى على الكثير من الأطعمة الطازجة المختلفة، وستكون بصحة جيدة.



1 How to choose a title for a text كيفية اختيار عنوانًا لنص ما

A. You need to summarize what it is about in a quick and clear way.
فأنت تحتاج إلى تلخيص ما يدور حول النص بطريقة سريعة وواضحة.

B. You don't need any extra or unimportant information.
أنت لا تحتاج إلى أى معلومات إضافية أو غير هامة.

C. It's good if you can make the title funny or interesting, too.
من الجيد أن تستطيع جعل العنوان مضحكًا أو ممتعًا أيضًا.



2 How to write a paragraph كيفية كتابة فقرة إنشائية

A paragraph contains :









- **A** a topic (introduction) sentence جملة المقدمة
- **B** main (body) sentences جمل رئيسية
- **C** a conclusion sentence جملة ختامية

- A paragraph is made up of several sentences (3-8 sentences).
  الفقرة تتكون من العديد من الجمل (من ثلاث لثمانى جمل).
- The introduction sentence introduces the topic.
  جملة المقدمة تطرح الموضوع.
- The main sentences are in the middle of the paragraph. They give more information.
  جمل الموضوع تكون فى منتصف الفقرة وتعطى معلومات أكثر عن الموضوع.
- The conclusion sentence is last. It finishes the paragraph.
  جملة الختام تكون فى النهاية وتنهى الفقرة.

Notes for parents

1. Help your child know how to choose a title for a text.
2. Help your child learn how to write a paragraph.

- ساعد طفلك أن يعرف كيف يختار عنوانًا لنص ما
- ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم كيفية كتابة فقرة إنشائية

General Exercises on Lessons 5 & 6

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

• Understand • Apply • Create

1 Listen and complete.

استمع وأكمل.

1. It's fun to play .... games.
2. Sitting still for a long time isn't good for our ....
3. Try not to develop unhealthy ....
4. People eat unhealthy .... when they are watching TV.

2 Order the words to make correct sentences.

رتب الكلمات لتكوين جمل صحيحة.

1. the – camp – long – summer – How – is ?

....

2. hard – Starting – an exercise – is – routine.

....

3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الصندوق.

vitamins - diet - water - eat

Eating the right food is very important for our health. We need a range of different kinds of food with lots of (1).................... and minerals. We shouldn't (2).................... too much sugar or fat. Fruit and vegetables are healthy choices. It's important to drink lots of (3).................... , too, specially on hot days.

1. Ask your child to listen and complete the sentences.
2. Ask your child to read, order and write the sentence correctly.
3. Ask your child to read, and complete the text with words from the box.

- اطلب من طفلك أن يستمع ويكمل الجمل
- اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ، يرتب ويكتب الجملة بشكل صحيح
- اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويكمل النص بالكلمات من الصندوق

4 Read the following text, and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص التالى، وأجب عن الأسئلة.

It's fun to play video games sometimes, but it's good to be active as well. Sitting still for a long time isn't good for your health. Sometimes people eat more unhealthy snacks when they are watching TV or playing on the computer. Try not to develop unhealthy habits. It's important to drink lots of water, especially on hot days.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. You .... sit still for a long time.
   a. should b. shouldn't c. would d. have
2. Try not to develop .... habits.
   a. funny b. healthy c. unhealthy d. good

B. Answer the following questions .

3. What should you do on hot days ?

....

4. Is it good to be active ?

....

5 Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements.

أكتب فقرة إنشائية من (50) كلمة باستخدام العناصر المرشدة المعطاة.

How to be healthy

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

Guiding words :

- the right food
- be active
- fruit and vegetables
- snacks
- much water



....

....

....

....

Notes for parents

4. Ask your child to read the passage and answer the questions.
- اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ القطعة ويجيب عن الأسئلة
5. Ask your child to write a paragraph of (50) words using the guiding words.
- اطلب من طفلك أن يكتب فقرة إنشائية مكونة من (٥٠) كلمة باستخدام الكلمات المساعدة

Test your skills  Unit 1



If you got ● you need to revise the unit again on the next page.
قم بتقييم نفسك بالعلامات الموضحة وإذا حصلت على ● غير جيد قم بمراجعة الوحدة مرة أخرى في الصفحة التالية

My Dictation

1 Read and write the meaning :
اقرأ واكتب المعنى:

A. stomach ....
muscles ....
combination ....
cerebellum ....
disabilities ....

B. .... الجهاز الهضمي
.... مالح
.... غرفة الجلوس
.... الألعاب الأولمبية
.... حاسة البصر

My Language

2 Circle the correct form of the verb in brackets.
ضع دائرة حول الصيغة الصحيحة للفعل بين الأقواس.

1. She (be - is) hungry.
2. We (play - plays) tennis after school.
3. I (has - have) one brother.
4. He (doesn't - don't) live in Egypt.

My Reading

3 Read and put (✓) or (✗).
اقرأ وضع علامة (✓) أو (✗).

1. We breathe in air through our heart. ( )
2. The Paralympic Games is an international competition. ( )
3. We use left hemisphere for math and science. ( )

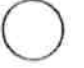
My Writing

4 Read and tick (✓) for the suitable title then write it.
اقرأ وضع علامة (✓) للعنوان المناسب ثم أكتبه.

....

We use our senses every day to help us understand the world around us. We use our eyes to see and our ears to hear. We smell with our nose, taste with our tongue, and we can feel with our skin.

◯ Paralympic athletes
◯ The brain
◯ Different senses
◯ Body parts

 قم بتقييم نفسك بالعلامات الموضحة.

Review on unit 1





digestive system



respiratory system



bones

muscles



skeleton



heart

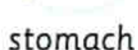


nose



lungs





stomach

Our senses



sight



taste

smell



touch



hearing



Present Simple Tense

Affirmative	- I / You / We / They work - He / She / It works
Negative	- I/You/We/They don't work - He/She/It doesn't work
Interrogative	- Do I/you/we/they work ? - Does he/she/it work ?
Short answers	- Yes, I/you/we/they do. - No, I/you/we/they don't. - Yes, he/she/it does. - No, he/she/it doesn't.

Writing tips!

1. When you choose a title for a text, you need to summarize what it is about in a quick and clear way.
2. You don't need any extra or unimportant information.
3. It's a good idea if you can make it funny or interesting, too.

Notes for parents

- Help your child review unit 1.

ساعد طفلك في مراجعة الوحدة الأولى

Skills

هذا الجزء يمكنك من ربط الكلمات التى درستها بجمل
ليساعدك على التمكن من مهارة القراءة والكتابة

1. Reading & writing skills :

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
Digestive system	Digestive system	We use our digestive system to digest what we eat and drink.
	swallow	We chew and swallow food.
	stomach - liquid	In the stomach, a special liquid changes the food into energy and nutrients.
	bodies - energy	Our bodies need nutrients and energy.
Respiratory system	Respiratory system	We use our respiratory system when we breathe.
	nose	We breathe in air through our nose.
	lungs - oxygen	In the lungs, the oxygen in the air is passed to the blood.
	heart - blood	Our heart pumps blood around our body.
Skeleton	skeleton - bones	Our skeleton is made up of all the bones in our body.
	organs - protect	Bones make us strong and protect our organs.
	muscles	Muscles are attached to our bones. They lift and turn bones to make us move.
Our senses	understand	Our senses help us understand the world around us.
	smell	We smell with our nose.
	eyes - ears	We use our eyes to see. We use our ears to hear.
	tongue - skin	We taste with our tongue. We touch with our skin.
Our brain	control	Our brain controls how we move and what we remember and the choices we make.
	three main areas	The three main areas of the brain are the cerebrum, the cerebellum and the brain stem.
	cerebrum	The cerebrum controls our senses, thoughts, how we speak, and our memories.
	cerebellum	The cerebellum controls movement and balance.
	stem	The brain stem joins the two parts of the brain.
	two halves	There are two halves, or hemispheres.
	left hemisphere	The left hemisphere is important for math, science, and solving problems.
	right hemisphere	We use the right hemisphere in creative activities.
A healthy diet	right food	Eating the right food is very important for our health.
	sugar - fat	We shouldn't eat too much sugar or fat.
	fruit - vegetables	Fruit and vegetables are healthy choices.
	water	It's important to drink lots of water.

2. How to make a sentence:

٢. تعلم كيف تكون وترتب جملة.

١ الجمل الخبرية

1. I - practice - to - want - football.
2. good - is - It - be - to - active.

	فاعل	فعل	. باقى الجملة
1			
2			

٢ الجمل الأمرية

1. to - try - Don't – develop - habits - unhealthy.
2. exercise – every – Do – day.

	Don't	مصدر الفعل	. باقى الجملة
1			
2			

٣ الجمل الأستفهامية

(أ) السؤال بـ (كلمة استفهام .. ؟)

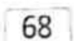
1. can – What – see – you ?
2. do – like – What – you – do – to ?

	كلمة الاستفهام	فعل مساعد	فاعل	فعل أساسى	? باقى الجملة
1					
2					

(ب) السؤال بـ (هل .. ؟)

1. to – Is – passed – oxygen – the – blood ?
2. you – Do – like – vegetables ?

	فعل مساعد	فاعل	فعل أساسى	? باقى الجملة
1			passed	
2				





3. Writing skill :

١- عناصر تساعدك على تنظيم أفكارك للتعامل مع مهارة الكتابة متبوعة بنموذج.

What can I do ?

Our senses

- We use our senses every day to help us understand the world around us.

Number

- We have five senses.

Uses

- We use our eyes to see.
- We use our ears to hear.
- We smell with our nose.
- We taste with our tongue.
- We can feel with our skin.

When

- Our senses are working all the time.

Function

- Our senses take in a lot of information.

Opinion

- Our senses are very important.

Read and learn. اقرأ وتعلم.

We use our senses every day to help us understand the world around us. We have five senses. We use our eyes to see. We use our ears to hear. We smell with our nose. We taste with our tongue. We can feel with our skin. Our senses are working all the time. Our senses take in a lot of information. Our senses are very important.

٢- تعتبر مهارة الكتابة من المهارات الأساسية للتعبير عن فكرة أو موضوع لذا يجب استخدام جمل وأفكار مترابطة. قم بقراءة هذه الجمل لتساعدك على التعامل مع مهارة الكتابة (٢٤ جملة).



Digestive system

We use our digestive system when we eat and drink.[1] We put food in our mouth.[2] We chew and swallow food.[3] We chew food with our teeth.[4] Then, it goes to our stomach.[5] In the stomach, a special liquid changes the food into energy and nutrients that we need in our bodies.[6]



Braille code



People who are blind or cannot see well can learn to read Braille.[7] It has different combinations of dots.[8] They can be a letter, number, punctuation mark or a word.[9] People feel the dots with their fingers.[10] So, they are using the dots to find out what they mean.[11] Braille was invented by Louis Braille.[12]

3 The Paralympic Games

The Paralympic Games is an international competition for athletes with disabilities.[13] It takes place every four years.[14] It is held in a different country each time.[15] Parasports is an important area in sports.[16] Egypt has many athletes who take part in these competitions.[17] Being a Paralympic athlete takes years of dedication and hard work.[18]



A healthy diet

We all need to eat a good diet to stay healthy.[19] A good diet includes lots of fresh food and plenty of water to drink.[20] About 75% of our brain is made up of water and it needs water to work well.[21] We should eat fresh fruit and vegetables because they have a lot of fiber and are full of vitamins and minerals.[22] We need these for healthy skin, muscles, bones, and teeth.[23] We should eat plenty of protein, too, as this helps us grow.[24]

Test 1 on Unit 1

نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب

• Understand • Apply • Create

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.
استمع واختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. Bones .... our organs.
   a. destroy b. protect c. provide d. change
2. Our .... is made up of all the bones.
   a. stomach b. lungs c. skeleton d. heart
3. .... are attached to our bones.
   a. Teeth b. Muscles c. Eyes d. Lips
4. Muscles .... and turn our bones to make us move.
   a. lift b. change c. make d. pump

2 Listen and complete. استمع وأكمل.

1. We need fats for a healthy .... system.
2. Carbohydrates like bread give us ....
3. Eat a good .... with fresh food, and you will be healthy.
4. Sugar isn't .... for us.

B. Reading

3 Read and complete the dialogue from the words in the box.
اقرأ وأكمل المحادثة من الكلمات فى المربع.

system – digestive – lesson – respairatory

Sama : Good morning, Hana. How are you ?
Hana : Good morning, Sama. I'm fine, thanks.
Sama : It's our first school day in grade four.
Hana : Yes, I read the first English (1) ....
Sama : What is it about ?
Hana : It's about our digestive (2) ....
Sama : What does that system do ?
Hana : We use our (3) .... system when we eat and drink.

1. Ask your child to listen and choose the correct answer. - اطلب من طفلك أن يستمع ويختار الإجابة الصحيحة
2. Ask your child to listen and complete the sentences. - اطلب من طفلك أن يستمع ويكمل الجمل
3. Ask your child to read and complete the dialogue with the correct word from the box. - اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويكمل المحادثة بالكلمة الصحيحة من الصندوق أعلاه.

4 Read the text and answer the questions below.

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

Mostafa Fathalla is a runner who takes part in 100-metre, 200-metre and 400-metre races. He joined the national team in Egypt in 2006, and has taken part in lots of international competitions. He has won many medals, including gold in the World Championship in New Zealand.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Mostafa has taken part in lots of .... competitions.
   a. government b. international c. national d. local
2. Mostafa won a gold medal in the World .... in New Zealand.
   a. Championship b. Cup c. Jumping d. Medal

B. Answer the following questions :

3. Who is Mostafa ?

   ....

4. Which races did he take part in ?

   ....

5 The reader

A Read and write T (True) or F (False).

	T	F
1. Zeinab was bored.		
2. Grandpa wanted to be a vet.		

B Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Some .... make tables and chairs from wood.
   a. farmers b. mechanics c. artisans d. teachers
2. Grandpa was one of the .... makers.
   a. button b. train c. chair d. tent



Notes for parents

4. Ask your child to read the text and answer the questions.
5. Ask your child to read and answer the questions according to the events of the story.

- اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ النص ويجيب عن الأسئلة
- اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويجيب عن الأسئلة طبقًا لأحداث القصة

C. Writing

6 **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.** إختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. My teacher always .... us interesting projects to do.
   a. giving   b. give   c. gave   d. gives
2. .... that robot have many uses ?
   a. Do   b. Is   c. Does   d. Are
3. Tom usually .... to bed early on weekends.
   a. goes   b. go   c. going   d. is going
4. I .... watching films on TV.
   a. like   b. am liking   c. likes   d. is liking

7 **Order the words to make correct sentences.**

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جمل صحيحة.

1. do – What – we – to – have – protect – organs – our – to do ?

....

2. Arabic – Youssef – English – and – speaks.

....

8 **Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements.** أكتب نص من (50) كلمة باستخدام العناصر الإرشادية المعطاة.

The Paralympic Games

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

Guiding words :

- international competition
- disabilities
- Parasports
- athletes
- Olympics
- take part in



....

....

....

....

....

6. Ask your child to choose the correct answer. - اطلب من طفلك أن يختار الإجابة الصحيحة
7. Ask your child to read, order the words and write the sentences correctly. - اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ، يرتب الكلمات ويكتب الجمل بطريقة صحيحة
8. Ask your child to write a paragraph of (50) words using the given guiding words. - اطلب من طفلك أن يكتب فقرة إنشائية مكونة من حوالى (٥٠) كلمة مستخدمًا الكلمات الاسترشادية

Test 2 on Unit 1

Collected From Governorates Exams

اختبار مجمع من مختلف المحافظات

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

• Understand • Apply • Create

A. Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. When we eat and ………………… , we use our digestive system.
   a. drink b. breathe c. move d. listen
2. A special liquid ………………… the food into energy.
   a. does b. works c. goes d. changes
3. We use ………………… system when we breathe.
   a. digestive b. muscular c. nervous d. respiratory
4. The food goes to the ………………… after we swallow it.
   a. mouth b. stomach c. lung d. brain

(Beheira - Edku 2022 / Minia - Maghagha 2022)

2 Listen and complete.

1. People who have difficulty hearing can ………………… sign language.
2. Sign language is a/an ………………… language.
3. There are different ………………… of sign language.
4. Some people who cannot see or hear, have different ways to ………………… .

(New Valley - Kharga 2022 / Giza - Bulaq El Dakrur 2022)

B. Reading

3 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box.

breathe - stomach - liquid - digestive

Hana : Sama, do you know that we have digestive system ?
Sama : Yes, I know. But what does that system do ?
Hana : We use our (1) ………… system when we eat and drink.
Sama : Where does food go after we swallow it ?
Hana : It goes to our (2) ………… .
Sama : What changes the food into energy and nutrients ?
Hana : A special (3) ………… changes the food into energy and nutrients.
Sama : Great !

(Alexandria - Abu Qeer 2022 / Cairo - El-Shorouk 2022)

Notes for parents

1. Ask your child to listen and choose the correct answer.
2. Ask your child to listen and complete the sentences.
3. Ask your child to read and complete the dialogue with words from the box.

- اطلب من طفلك أن يستمع ويختار الإجابة الصحيحة
- اطلب من طفلك أن يستمع ويكمل الجمل
- اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويكمل المحادثة بكلمات من المربع

4 Read the following text and answer the questions below.

Yesterday, I watched a program on the TV. It was about how to keep our bodies healthy. Water is very important to our bodies. We should drink plenty of water every day. Exercise keeps you fit and healthy. Eat fresh fruit and vegetables that have a lot of fiber and vitamins. We need these for healthy skin, muscles, bones and teeth. Don't eat too many sweets. It's unhealthy. Eat a good diet with lots of different fresh food, and you'll be healthy.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The main idea of the text is about ....
   a. how to keep our bodies healthy
   b. how to keep our environment clean
   c. unhealthy food   d. exercise
2. We can get vitamins from ....
   a. sweets   b. water   c. vegetables   d. salt

B. Answer the following questions :

3. Is too much sugar good for us ?

   ....

4. Why do we need vitamins ?

   ....

(Suez - North Suez 2022 / Gharbia - Zifta 2022)

5 The reader

A Read and write T (True) or F (False).

	T	F
1. Zeinab was happy on the second week of holiday.		
2. Zeinab wanted to visit her grandparents.		

(Qalyubia - Tukh 2022 / Menofia - Quesna 2022)

B Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Zeinab's grandpa was one of the ....
   a. engineers   b. tent makers   c. doctors   d. writers
2. Grandpa can't .... because his eyes aren't very good.
   a. draw   b. paint   c. drive   d. sew

(Beheira - Hosh Issa 2022 / Giza - Omrania 2022)

4. Ask your child to read the text and answer the questions. - اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ النص ويجيب عن الأسئلة
5. Ask your child to read and answer the questions according to the events of the story. - اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويجيب عن الأسئلة طبقًا لأحداث القصة

C. Writing

6 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Omar and Adam .... play football on Sundays.
   a. didn't b. doesn't c. hasn't d. don't
   (Assuit - Abnub 2022)
2. John .... 10 years old. *(Minia - Matai 2022)*
   a. am b. is c. do d. are
3. .... you go to school on Fridays ? *(Qena - Al Waqf 2022)*
   a. Does b. Have c. Do d. Did
4. He .... two brothers and a sister. *(Cairo - Ain Shams 2022)*
   a. have b. has c. does d. do

7 Order the words to make correct sentences :

1. plays - on - She - volleyball - Mondays. *(Aswan - Kom Ombo 2022)*
   ....
2. heart - blood - pump - Does - our - the ? *(South Sinai - Dahab 2022)*
   ....

8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements.

Respiratory system

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

Guiding questions :

1. What system do we use when we breathe ?
2. What does our heart do ?
3. What do our lungs do ?



....

....

....

....

....

(Luxor - Armant 2022 / Damietta - Faraskour 2022)

Notes for parents

6. Ask your child to choose the correct answer. - اطلب من طفلك أن يختار الإجابة الصحيحة
7. Ask your child to read, order the words and write the sentences correctly. - اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ، يرتب الكلمات ويكتب الجمل بطريقة صحيحة
8. Ask your child to write a text of (50) words using the given guiding questions. - اطلب من طفلك أن يكتب نص مكون من حوالى (٥٠) كلمة مستخدمًا الأسئلة الارشادية

Unit 2

Plants and animals

نباتات وحيوانات



للإتقان الوحدة

- استخدام كارت **المعاصر** للقراءة والكتابة.
- Test your skills في نهاية الوحدة.
- كراسة **المعاصر** للمهارات.
- كراسة **المعاصر** التفاعلية.
- التقييمات الشهرية في الكراسة التفاعلية.

Aims of Unit Two :

الأهداف العامة للوحدة الثانية :

In this unit I will .....

في هذه الوحدة سوف.....

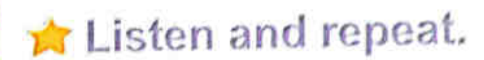
- understand the classification of animals.
  - أفهم تصنيف الحيوانات.
- learn about the importance of size in the animal world.
  - أتعلم عن أهمية الحجم في عالم الحيوان.
- form comparative and superlative adjectives, and adverbs.
  - أكون صيغة صفات المقارنة وصيغة التفضيل والظروف.
- read about invertebrates.
  - أقرأ عن اللافقاريات.
- use contrasting ideas.
  - أستخدم أفكار متناقضة.
- make a habitat report.
  - أقوم بعمل تقرير عن البيئات.

Lesson 1

• Vertebrates



Vocabulary



استمع وردد.



Key vocabulary

vertebrates	الفقاريات	reptiles	الزواحف
mammals	الثدييات	amphibians	البرمائيات
backbone	عمود فقري	cold-blooded	ذوات الدم البارد
warm-blooded	ذوات الدم الحار	scales	قشور - حراشف
seeds	بذور	gills	خياشيم
bat	خفاش	fins	زعانف
beak	منقار	moist	رطب

Extra vocabulary

hair	شعر	turtles	سلاحف
fur	فراء	smooth	ناعم
land	الأرض - اليابسة	wetlands	أراضي رطبة
whales	حيتان	feathers	ريش
seal	فقمة / سبع البحر	saltwater	ماء مالح
ostrich	نعامة	wings	اجنحة
toad	ضفدع الطين (علجوم)	nuts	مكسرات/ سوداني
rivers	أنهار	freshwater	ماء عذب
humans	البشر	habitat	موطن - بيئة
shapes	أشكال	except	ما عدا

Notes for parents

• Help your child listen to the words and repeat them.

- ساعد طفلك أن يستمع إلى الكلمات ورددهم

Do you know ?!

A **species** of animal is a group of animals that are the same or very similar. There are millions of species of animals on Earth - and scientists discover new ones every year!

الفصيلة أو النوع هو مجموعة من الحيوانات التي تكون متماثلة تماماً أو متشابهة جدًا هناك ملايين من فصائل الحيوانات على الأرض والعلماء يكتشفون فصائل جديدة كل عام

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular

Present		Past
survive	ينجو - يبقى حيًا	survived
move	يتحرك	moved
discover	يكتشف	discovered
breathe	يتنفس	breathed

Irregular

Present		Past
feed	يطعم	fed
lay	يبيض	laid
spend	يقضي	spent
give birth	تلد	gave birth

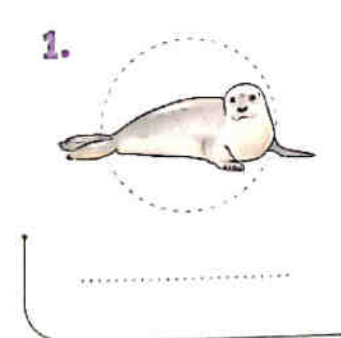
Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

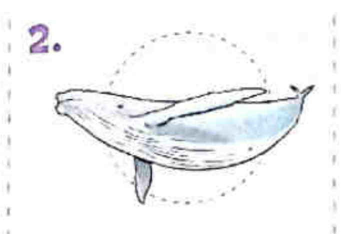
have hair/fur on their bodies	لديهم شعر / فراء على أجسامهم	take in oxygen through their skin	تمتص/تستنشق الأكسجين عبر جلدها
animals with a backbone	حيوانات لديها عمود فقري	feed their babies with milk	تُرضع صغارها اللبن
give birth to	تلد (تضع مولود)	come onto land	تصعد على اليابسة
keep warm	يبقى دافئ	use fins to move	تستخدم الزعانف لتتحرك
in addition	بالإضافة إلى	lay eggs	تضع البيض
made of	مصنوع من	live on land	يعيش على الأرض
such as	مثل		



Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

- **Look and write the words.**

1. 
....

2. 
....

3. 
....

4. 
....

• Ask your child to look and write the words under each picture. - اطلب من طفلك أن ينظر ويكتب الكلمات أسفل كل صورة.

Pop Quiz | تدرب على ٩٩ من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع

Listen and read. استمع واقرأ.

How many types of animals lay eggs ?
كم عدد أنواع الحيوانات التي تضع البيض ؟

Check Vocabulary
- فقاريات (1)
- عمود فقرى (2)
- ثدييات (3)
- ذوات دم حار (4)
- تلد (5)
- زواحف (6)
- قشور - حراشف (7)

Vertebrates

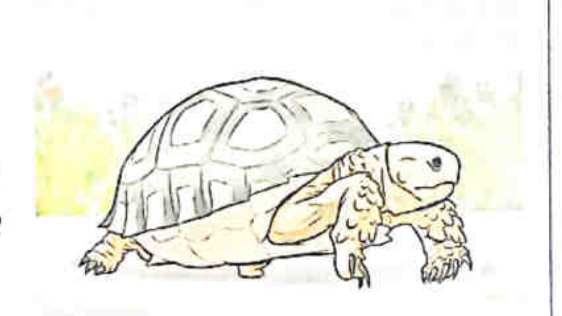
Vertebrates(1) are animals with a backbone(2). There are five different types of vertebrates.

1. Mammals

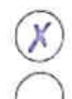
Mammals(3) have hair or fur on their bodies. They are warm-blooded(4). They feed their babies with milk and most of them give birth(5) to their babies. They don't lay eggs. Humans are mammals. Most mammals live on land, but some live in the sea, such as whales and seals. Bats are the only mammals that can fly.

2. Reptiles

Reptiles(6) are cold-blooded. This means that they have to spend time in the sun to keep warm. Most reptiles have four legs, except snakes who don't have any. They don't have hair or fur. They have scales(7). In addition, all reptiles lay eggs. Most reptiles live on land. Some can live in rivers or the sea, such as turtles, but they come onto land to lay their eggs.



Read and tick (✓) or (✗) :

Learn 1. Mammals are cold-blooded. 

Practice 2. Reptiles have scales. ( )

Notes for parents
- Help your child to listen and read the text.

- ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ النص.

الفقاريات: هى الحيوانات التى لها عمود فقرى. هناك خمسة انواع مختلفة من الفقاريات.
الثدييات: لديها شعر أو فراء على أجسامها. وهم من ذوات الدم الحار وترضع الثدييات صغارها اللبن ومعظمهم تلد الصغار. هم لا يضعون البيض. يعتبر البشر من الثدييات. معظم الثدييات تعيش على اليابسة، ولكن بعضها يعيش فى البحر مثل الحيتان والفقمات (عجل البحر). الخفافيش هى الثدييات الوحيدة التى يمكنها الطيران.
الزواحف: من ذوات الدم البارد. هذا يعنى أن عليهم قضاء بعض الوقت فى الشمس للحفاظ على دفئهم. معظم الزواحف لديها أربعة أرجل ماعدا الثعابين ليس لديها أى أرجل. فهى ليس لديها شعر أو فراء. لديهم قشور. بالاضافة إلى أن كل الزواحف تضع البيض. أغلب الزواحف تعيش على اليابسة. بعض الزواحف يمكن أن تعيش فى الأنهار أو البحر مثل السلحفاة المائية ولكنهم يخرجون الى اليابسة ليضعوا البيض.

3. Amphibians

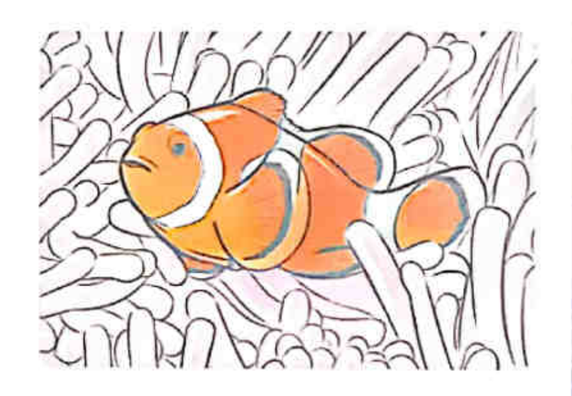
Amphibians[8] can live on land and on water, but they need water or a moist habitat to survive[9]. Like reptiles, they are cold-blooded and they lay eggs. However, amphibians , like frogs and toads,always lay their eggs in water. They have smooth skin, not scales. They can take in oxygen through their skin and their lungs.

Check Vocabulary

- برمائيات (8)
- يبقى على قيد الحياة (9)
- يتنفس (10)
- تضع البيض (11)

4. Fish

Fish live in water and take in oxygen through their gills; they can't breathe[10] air. They are cold-blooded and they lay eggs. They also have scales and they use fins to move. There are thousands of different types of fish in all water habitats - saltwater, freshwater and wetlands.



5. Birds

Birds are warm-blooded, but they don't have fur or hair. All birds have feathers, and they all have wings. Birds lay eggs[11] which are hard. Most birds can fly, but some can't. They have beaks, which are made of bone. Their beaks are different shapes because they eat different food; some birds eat meat, some eat nuts and some eat seeds.



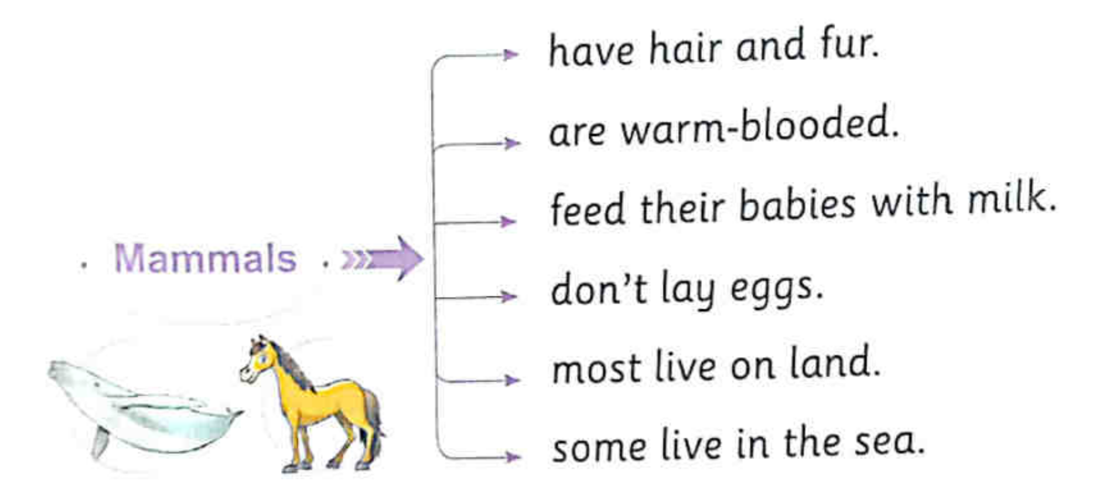
٣ تستطيع البرمائيات العيش على اليابسة وفي الماء لكنها تحتاج إلى الماء أو موطن رطب للبقاء على قيد الحياة. البرمائيات من ذوات الدم البارد مثل الزواحف وهي تضع البيض ومع ذلك، تضع البرمائيات بيضها دائمًا في الماء مثل الضفادع وضفادع الطين. لدى البرمائيات بشرة ناعمة وليس قشور ويمكنها استنشاق الأكسجين من خلال جلدها ورئتيها

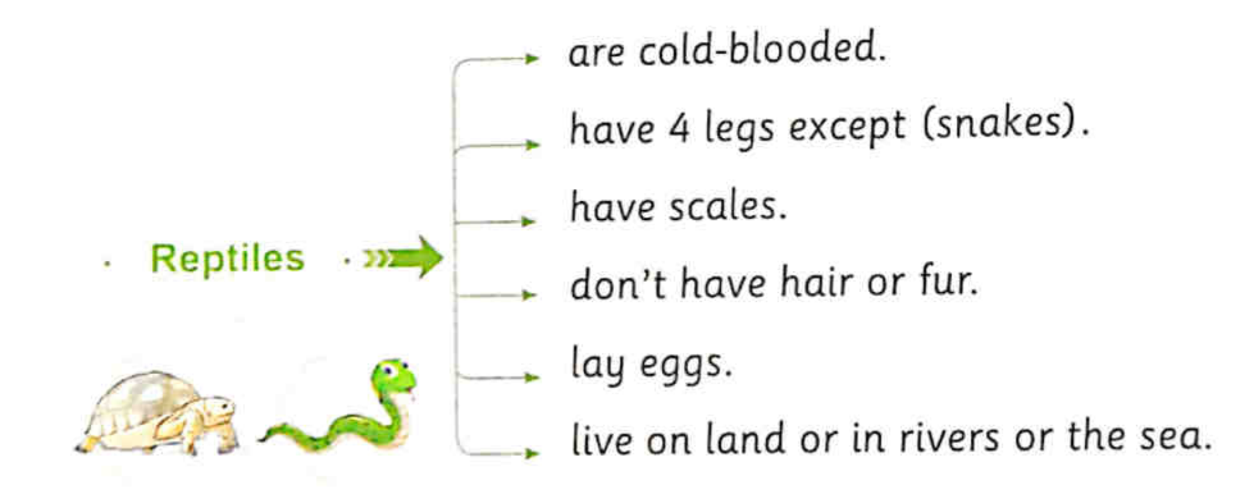
٤ تعيش الأسماك في الماء تستنشق الأكسجين من خلال خياشيمها لا يمكنهم تنفس الهواء. الأسماك من ذوات الدم البارد وتضع البيض. لدى الأسماك قشور ويستخدمون الزعانف في الحركة. يوجد الآلاف من الأنواع المختلفة من الأسماك في كل البيئات المائية: المياه المالحة، المياه العذبة والأراضي الرطبة.

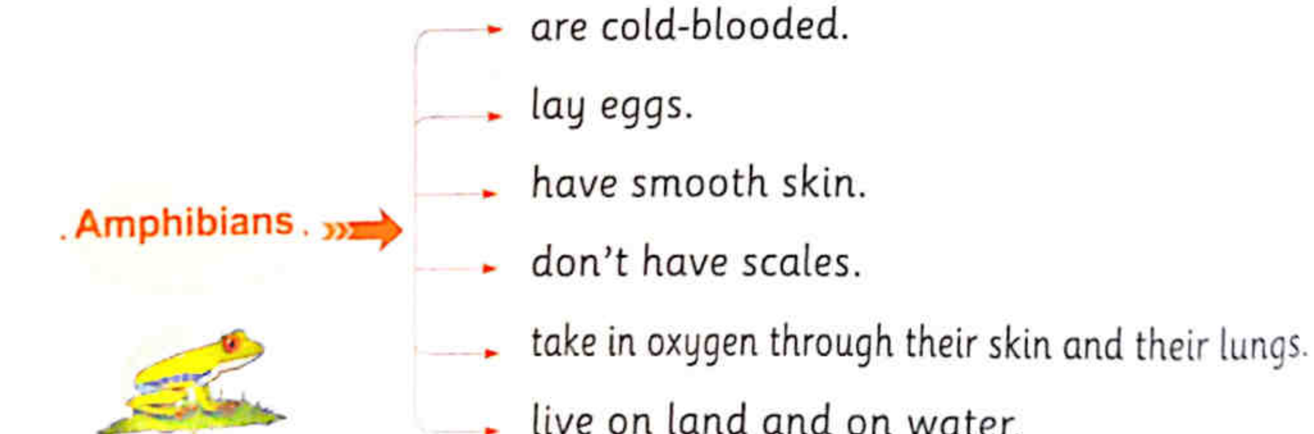
٥ الطيور من ذوات الدم الحار ولكن ليس لديها فراء ولا شعر. فجميع الطيور لديها ريش وجميعهم لديهم أجنحة. الطيور تضع البيض الذي يكون صلبًا. معظم الطيور تستطيع الطيران، لكن بعضها لا يستطيع. لدى الطيور مناقير والتي تتكون من العظام. وتملك الطيور مناقير لها أشكال مختلفة لأنها تأكل أطعمة مختلفة. بعض الطيور تأكل اللحوم وبعضها تأكل المكسرات وبعضها تأكل البذور

⭐ Read and identify.

اقرأ وتعرف.







Notes for parents

- Help your child read and identify the description of the vertebrates. ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويتعرف على وصف الفقاريات

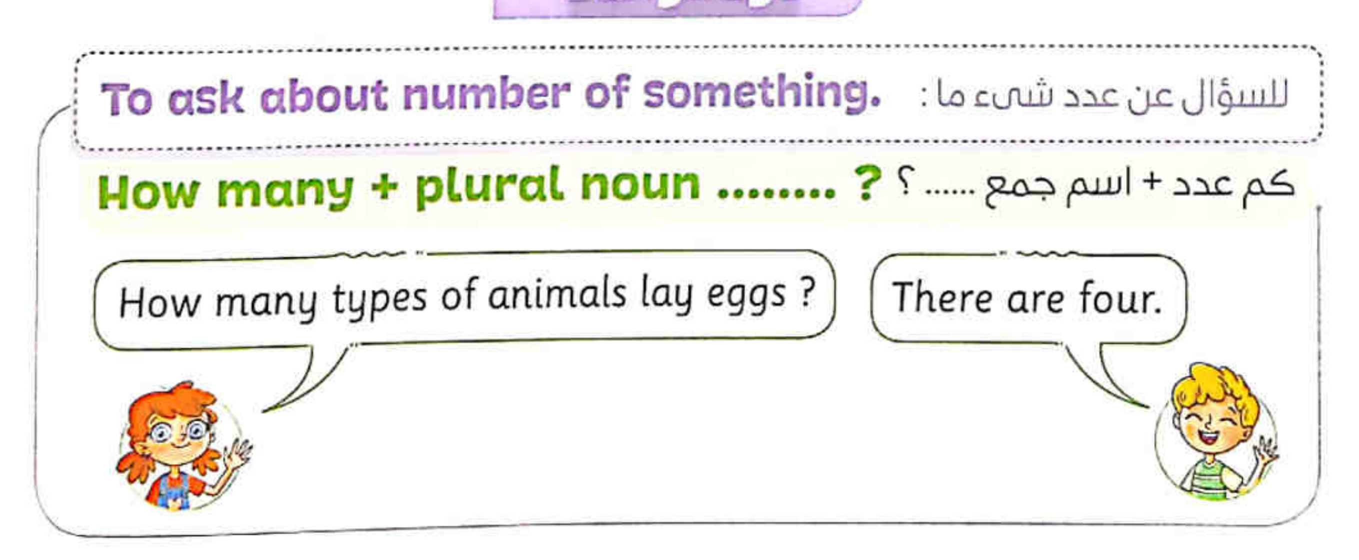
- **Fish** →
  - live in saltwater, freshwater and wetlands.
  - take in oxygen through their gills.
  - are cold-blooded.
  - use fins to move.
  - have scales.
  - lay eggs.
  - can't breathe air.

- **Birds** →
  - are warm-blooded.
  - have feathers.
  - have wings.
  - have beaks.
  - lay eggs.
  - some eat meat, nuts or seeds.

Language

To ask about number of something. للسؤال عن عدد شيء ما :

How many + plural noun .... ? كم عدد + اسم جمع ...... ؟



• Help your child learn about how to ask about number using "How many ..... ?".

- ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم كيف يسأل عن العدد مستخدمًا "How many ...... ?".

Note : Four types of animals lay eggs : reptiles, amphibians, birds and fish.

Dictation

لإتقان مهارة الكتابة استخدم كارت المعاصر من نهاية الكتاب

Read and spell	Complete	Write
vertebrates	ve _ te _ _ ates	
mammals	ma _ _ als	
reptiles	re _ _ i _ es	
amphibians	am _ _ ibi _ _ s	
survive	s _ rv _ v _	
fins	f _ n _	
backbone	ba _ _ b _ n _	
humans	hu _ _ ns	
land	l _ _ d	
whale	w _ a _ e	
seal	s _ _ l	
bat	b _ t	
gills	g _ l _ s	
scales	s _ a _ es	
feathers	f _ at _ ers	

Notes for parents

- Help your child read, spell , complete and write the words.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ، ويتهجى، يكمل ويكتب الكلمات

General Exercises on Lesson 1

• Understand • Apply • Create

1 Read and complete the dialogue from the words in the box.

animals – vertebrates – types – backbone

Hamza : How are you, Nourhan ?
Nourhan : Fine, and you ?
Hamza : Fine. I learned a lot about our lesson today.
Nourhan : What was it about ?
Hamza : It was about (1) ....
Nourhan : What are vertebrates ?
Hamza : They are animals with a (2) ....
Nourhan : How many (3) .... are there of vertebrates ?
Hamza : There are five different types.

2 Read the following text and answer the questions below.

Amphibians can live on land and on water, but they need water or a moist habitat to survive. Like reptiles, amphibians are cold-blooded and they lay eggs. Amphibians can take in oxygen through their skin and their lungs.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Amphibians are cold-blooded like ....
   a. mammals b. birds c. reptiles d. fish
2. Amphibians can take in oxygen through their .... and lungs.
   a. skin b. ears c. eyes d. tongue

B. Answer the following questions :

3. Where can amphibians live ?
....
4. What do amphibians need to survive ?
....

1. Ask your child read and complete the dialogue.
2. Ask your child to read the text and answer the questions.

- اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويكمل المحادثة
- اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ النص ويجيب عن الأسئلة

3 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. a – animals – are – with – Vertebrates – backbone.

....

2. hair – have – Mammals – on – bodies – their.

....

4 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c , or d.

1. How .... types of animals lay eggs ? – There are four.
   a. often b. much c. many d. tall
2. Amphibians can .... on land and on water.
   a. lives b. live c. living d. lived
3. Birds .... have fur or hair.
   a. aren't b. hasn't c. doesn't d. don't
4. Frogs can take .... oxygen through their skin and their lungs.
   a. up b. in c. out d. of

5 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements.

Reptiles

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

Guiding words :

- cold-blooded
- lay eggs
- oxygen
- hair
- frogs and toads
- skin and lungs




....

....

....

....

....

Notes for parents

3. Ask your child to read, order the words and write them correctly.
اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ، يعيد ترتيب الكلمات ويكتبهم بشكل صحيح
4. Ask your child to choose the correct answer.
اطلب من طفلك أن يختار الإجابة الصحيحة
5. Ask your child to write a text of fifty (50) words using the guiding words.
اطلب من طفلك أن يكتب نص مكون من (٥٠) كلمة مستخدمًا الكلمات الإرشادية





استمع وردد.

Key vocabulary

enormous	ضخم	Earth	كوكب الأرض
tiny	ضئيل - قليل الحجم	natural world	الطبيعة
blue whale	الحوت الأزرق	African elephant	الفيل الأفريقي

Extra vocabulary

whale shark	سمكة قرش الحوت	quiet	هادئ
ostrich	نعامة	Madagascar	دولة مدغشقر
leopard	فهد	frog	ضفدع
scientist	عَالِم	Papua New Guinea	مدينة بابوا (غينيا الحديثة)
chameleon	حرباء	size	حجم
bee hummingbird	طائر طنان النحل	strong	قوى
Cuba	دولة كوبا	Asian elephant	الفيل الآسيوى
discover	يكتشف	sloth	حيوان الكسلان
rainforests	غابات استوائية	howler monkey	القرد العاوى
cheetah	الفهد الصياد	narwhal	حريش البحر - كركدن البحر - الحوت ذو الناب
anaconda	ثعبان الأناكوندا		

Important expressions and prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

- It can be up to 30 meters long. قد يصل طوله إلى ٣٠ متر
- at just 30 mm long بطول ٣٠ مليمتر فقط
- on Earth على الأرض
- at about 12 meters long بطول حوالى ١٢ متر
- extremely strong قوى للغاية
- the same size نفس الحجم
- in fact فى الحقيقة / الواقع

• Help your child listen to the words and repeat them.

- ساعد طفلك أن يستمع إلى الكلمات ويرددهم.

Ants are small, but they are extremely strong! For their size, they are much stronger than humans.

النمل صغير الحجم، لكنه قوى للغاية! بالنسبة لحجمها، فهى أقوى بكثير من البشر.



Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

• Look and write the words.

1. 
....

2. 
....

3. 
....

4. 
....

Listen, read and identify. استمع، اقرأ وتعرف

Pop Quiz | تدرب على ٩٩ من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع

Where does the biggest animal in the world live ?

أين يعيش أكبر حيوان في العالم ؟

Big and small

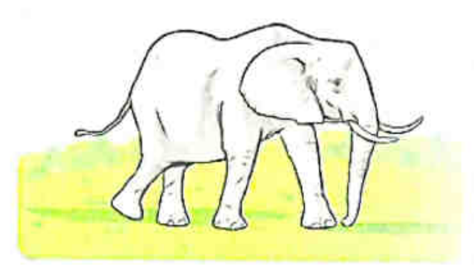
In the natural world, there are some enormous(1) animals, and some tiny(2) ones!

Check Vocabulary

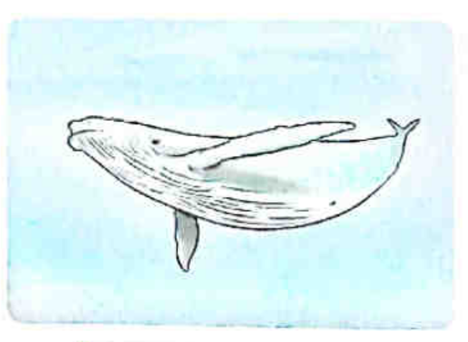
(1) ضخم

(2) ضئيل الحجم

The biggest animal on land is a mammal : the African elephant. The African elephant is bigger than the Asian elephant.



The biggest animal in the world is also a mammal, but it lives in the sea. It's the blue whale, and it can be up to 30 meters long. In fact, they are the biggest animals that have ever lived on Earth!



Answer the following questions :

Learn 1. What is the biggest animal on land ?
- The African elephant.

Practice 2. What is the biggest animal in the world ?
....

Notes for parents

• Ask your child to look and write the words under the pictures. اطلب من طفلك أن ينظر ويكتب الكلمات أسفل الصور

• Help your child listen, read the text and identify the biggest and the smallest animals in the world.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع، يقرأ النص ويتعرف على أكبر وأصغر الحيوانات فى العالم

- فى الطبيعة، يوجد حيوانات ضخمة وأخرى ضئيلة الحجم.
- أكبر حيوان على اليابسة يكون من الثدييات : وهو الفيل الأفريقى - الفيل الأفريقى أكبر من الفيل الآسيوى
- أكبر حيوان فى العالم هو أيضًا من الثدييات ولكن يعيش فى البحر إنه الحوت الأزرق ويمكن أن يصل طوله إلى ٣٠ مترًا فى الحقيقة، هم أكبر الحيوانات التى عاشت على كوكب الأرض

The whale shark[3] is the biggest fish in the world. It's smaller than the blue whale, at about 12 meters long.

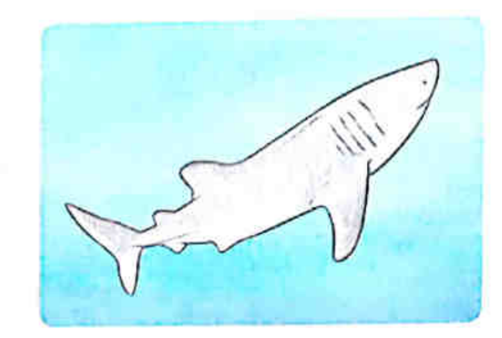
The smallest bird is the bee hummingbird[4], which is about 5.5 centimeters long. It lives in Cuba. The biggest bird is the ostrich[5]. It can be 2.5 meters tall! Ostriches are faster than leopards[6], but they can't fly.

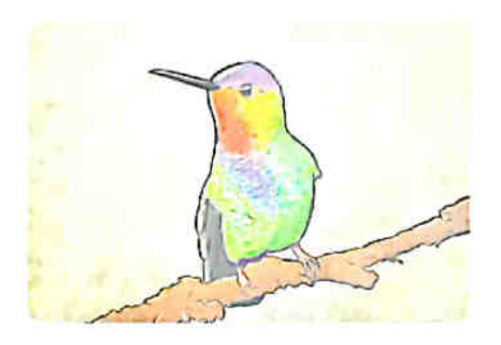
In 2012, scientists[7] discovered a tiny chameleon[8] in Madagascar. People think it is the smallest reptile in the world, at just 30 millimeters long!

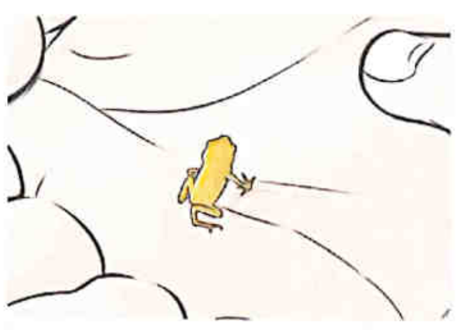
But even that is bigger than a frog in Papua New Guinea. It's 7 millimeters long, so it is the smallest vertebrate that we have discovered.

Check Vocabulary

- قرش الحوت (3)
- طائر طنان النحل (4)
- نعامة (5)
- فهد (6)
- علماء (7)
- حرباء (8)







Answer the following questions :

Learn 1. Can an ostrich fly ?
- No, it can't.

Practice 2. What did scientists discover in 2012 ?

....

- إن سمكة القرش الحوت هو أكبر سمكة فى العالم. إنها أصغر من الحوت الأزرق حيث يصل طوله حوالى ١٢ مترًا.
- إن أصغر طائر هو طنان النحل والذى يبلغ طوله ٥.٥ سم. إنه يعيش فى دولة كوبا. إن أكبر طائر هو النعامة والتى يصل طولها إلى ٢.٥ مترًا. تفوق سرعة النعام الفهود، لكنها لا تستطيع الطيران.
- فى عام ٢٠١٢ ، اكتشف العلماء حرباء ضئيلة الحجم فى دولة مدغشقر. يعتقد الناس أنها أصغر الزواحف فى العالم حيث يبلغ طولها ٣٠ ملليمتر فقط. ولكن حتى ذلك هى أكبر من ضفدع فى مدينة بابوا بغينيا الحديثة حيث يبلغ طوله ٧ ملليمتر لذا هو أصغر حيوان فقارى اكتشفناه.

Language

1 Comparative : المقارنة بين اثنين (شخصين / شيئين)

⭐ عند المقارنة بين اثنين أحدهما يزيد عن الآخر فى نفس الصفة القصيرة ذات المقطع الواحد نستخدم :

(short adj. صفة قصيرة + er) + than

⭐ يضاف للصفات القصيرة (er) وبعدها (than):

- old → older
- fast → faster

⭐ أما الصفات القصيرة المكونة من (مقطع واحد) ومنتهية بحرف (ساكن) مسبوق بحرف (متحرك) يضاعف الحرف الأخير ثم تضاف (er):

- big → bigger
- hot → hotter

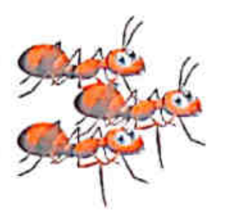
⭐ أما الصفات القصيرة المكونة من (مقطع واحد) ومنتهية بحرف (y–) تحول حرف (y–) إلى (i) ثم نضيف (er–):

- happy → happier
- heavy → heavier

⭐ أما الصفات القصيرة المكونة من (مقطع واحد) ومنتهية بحرف (e–) نضيف (r–) فقط للصفة.

- nice → nicer

Ants are stronger than humans.


The horse is bigger than chameleon.





Notes for parents

1. Help your child learn how to make comparative short adjectives.

- ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم كيف يكون صيغة المقارنة للصفات القصيرة

2 Superlative صيغة التفضيل (المقارنة بين واحد ومجموعة) فى صفة

⭐ عند المقارنة بين أكثر من اثنين (واحد ومجموعة فى صفة ذات مقطع واحد) نضع the قبل الصفة ونضيف للصفة (est):

(the + short adj. صفة قصيرة + est)

The + short adj. صفة قصيرة

- معظم الصفات: fast —يضاف إليها→ + est → fastest
- المنتهية بـ حرف متحرك + حرف ساكن فى الصفات ذات مقطع واحد (big) → يضاعف الحرف الأخير + est → biggest
- صفة ذات مقطع واحد منتهية بـ (– e) مثل (nice) → يضاف المقطع (+st) → nicest
- صفة ذات مقطع واحد منتهية بـ (– y) مثل (heavy) → حول (– y) لـ (– i) وأضف (+est) heaviest

The African elephant is the biggest animal on land.

The smallest bird is the bee hummingbird.

The biggest bird in the world can't fly.



2. Help your child identify how to make a sentence using comparative adjectives.

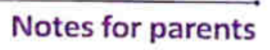
- ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على كيفية تكوين جملة باستخدام صفات المقارنة



Pop Quiz on Language

• **Read and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. The .... vertebrate is a frog in Papua New Guinea.
   a. smaller b. small c. smallest d. smaller than
2. The blue whale is .... than the whale shark.
   a. big b. biggest c. bigger d. the biggest
3. Ahmed is taller .... Ali.
   a. than b. then c. as d. the
4. Ants are small, but they are ....
   a. strongest b. strong c. as strong d. stronger
5. Who is .... person in your family ?
   a. the tallest b. taller c. tallest d. taller than
6. December is .... than June.
   a. colder b. coldest c. the coldest d. cold
7. She bought .... cake in the bakery.
   a. big as b. biggest c. bigger d. the biggest
8. He is .... of four children.
   a. the oldest b. older c. old d. oldest
9. The red bag is the .... one in the box.
   a. heavy b. heavier c. heaviest d. heavier than
10. The plane goes .... the train.
    a. fastest b. faster than c. fast d. the fastest
11. He is .... boy in our class.
    a. thinnest b. thinner c. the thinnest d. thin as
12. Ayman is .... cleverest student.
    a. than b. the c. then d. there
13. The black car is .... than the blue car.
    a. cheaper b. cheap c. cheapest d. cheap as
14. Snakes are .... the turtles.
    a. longest b. longer c. the longest d. longer than


Notes for parents

• Ask your child to read and choose the correct answer.

· اطلب من طفلك يقرأ ويختار الإجابة الصحيحة.

General Exercises on Lesson 2

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

• Understand • Apply • Create

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a , b , c , or d.

1. .... discovered a tiny chameleon in Madagascar.
   a. Doctors b. Engineers c. Scientists d. Vets
2. People think that chameleon is the .... reptile in the world.
   a. tallest b. biggest c. smallest d. highest
3. .... is 30 millimeters long.
   a. Snake b. Chameleon c. Lion d. Elephant
4. Chameleon is bigger than a .... in Guinea.
   a. bird b. cat c. snail d. frog

2 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. fish – The whale shark – is – biggest – the.
   ....
2. an – fly – Can – ostrich ?
   ....

3 Choose the correct answers from a , b, c or d.

1. Ants are stronger .... humans.
   a. than b. then c. that d. there
2. The African elephant is .... than the Asian elephant.
   a. biggest b. big c. bigger d. the biggest
3. The blue whale is the .... animal in the world.
   a. biggest b. bigger c. big d. small
4. Cars are .... than bikes.
   a. fastest b. fast c. faster d. as fast

1. Ask your child to listen and circle the correct answer. - اطلب من طفلك أن يستمع ويضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة
2. Ask your child to read, order the words and write the sentences correctly. - اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ، يرتب الكلمات ويكتب الجمل بطريقة صحيحة.
3. Ask your child to choose the correct word. - اطلب من طفلك أن يختار الإجابة الصحيحة

4 Read the following text and answer the questions below.

In the natural world, there are some enormous animals, and some tiny ones! The biggest animal on land is a mammal : the African elephant. The biggest animal in the world is also a mammal, but it lives in the sea. It's the blue whale, and it can be up to 30 meters long. In fact, they are the biggest animals that have ever lived on Earth!

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The underlined pronoun "it" refers to ....
   a. blue whale　　b. African elephant
   c. Earth　　d. world
2. The blue whale lives in the ....
   a. forest　　b. street　　c. sea　　d. ocean



B. Answer the following questions :

3. What is the biggest animal on land ?

   ....

4. What does the text talk about ?

   ....

5 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements.

Animals in the world

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب



Guiding questions :

1. What is the biggest animal on land ?
2. What are the biggest animals have ever lived on Earth ?
3. What is the biggest fish ?
4. What is the biggest bird ?

....

....

....

....

Notes for parents

4. Ask your child to read the text and answer the given questions.

- اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ النص ثم يجيب عن الاسئلة المعطاة

5. Ask your child to write a text of fifty (50) words using the guiding questions.

- اطلب من طفلك أن يكتب نص مكون من (٥٠) كلمة مستخدماً الأسئلة الإرشادية

Lesson 3

Invertebrates



Vocabulary



Listen and repeat. استمع وردد.

Key vocabulary

invertebrates	اللافقاريات	snail	حيوان القوقع
protection	حماية - وقاية	squid	الحبار
crab	الكابوريا (سلطعون البحر)	jellyfish	قنديل البحر
octopus	الأخطبوط	dragonfly	حشرة اليعسوب
arachnid	فصيلة العناكب	grasshopper	حشرة الجندب النطاط / الجراد

Extra vocabulary

project	مشروع	insects	حشرات
internet	شبكة الانترنت	amazing	رائع
shell	قوقعة	spiders	عناكب
research	بحث	sea star	نجمة البحر
giant	ضخم	Atlas moth	حشرة عثّة الأطْلس
clue	مفتاح الحل	mystery	لغز - غموض

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular

Present		Past
look	ينظر	looked
laugh	يضحك	laughed
move	يحرك / يتحرك	moved
finish	ينهى/ينتهى	finished
protect	يحمى	protected

Irregular

Present		Past
write	يكتب	wrote
say	يقول	said
choose	يختار	chose
find out	يكتشف	found out
fly	يطير	flew
hide	يختبئ - يختفى	hid

- Help your child listen to the words and repeat them.
- **Invertebrates** : are living things with no backbone.

- ساعد طفلك أن يستمع إلى الكلمات ويرددها
- اللافقاريات : كائنات حية ليس لديها عمود فقري في أجسامها

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

- write about invertebrates يكتب عن اللافقاريات
- more than 90% أكثر من ٩٠٪
- find out information يكتشف / يبحث عن معلومات
- Good idea ! فكرة جيدة !
- have a hard shell لها قوقعة / قشرة صلبة
- have soft bodies لها أجسام لينة
- move slowly يتحرك ببطئ
- Well done ! أحسنت !
- have ..... back يستعيد ....
- up to .... يصل إلى .....

Read and identify. اقرأ وتعرف

Pop Quiz | تدرب على ٩٩ من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع

What does Sami find out ? ماذا يكتشف سامي ؟

Check Vocabulary

(1) اللافقاريات
(2) ذوات الدم البارد
(3) حماية



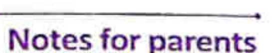
"Dad, I don't know what to write for my project!" said Sami sadly. "I have to find out about some animals, but I don't know which animals to choose."

"Why don't you write about invertebrates[1]?" asked Sami's dad. "More than 90% of all animals are invertebrates."

"Good idea!" said Sami. "Can I look on the internet quickly to find out information, please?"

"Of course," said Dad.

- "Oh wow!" said Sami. "I've found a lot of information! Invertebrates are cold-blooded[2]. They live on land and in water. Some invertebrates, such as crabs, have a hard shell for protection[3]. Others, like jellyfish, have soft bodies. Some invertebrates can swim very well, such as the octopus and the squid."
- "Do you have enough information for your project?" laughed Dad.



Notes for parents

- Help your child read the text and identify invertebrates.
- ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ النص ويتعرف على اللافقاريات.

يقول سامي بحزن "يأبي، أنا لا أعرف ماذا أكتب لإعداد لمشروعي الدراسي! يجب أن أبحث عن بعض الحيوانات، لكن أنا لا أعرف أي الحيوانات أختار" يسأل والد سامي "لماذا لا تكتب عن اللافقاريات ؟ أكثر من ٩٠٪ من الحيوانات هي لافقاريات. يقول سامي "فكرة جيدة!" "هل يمكنني البحث على شبكة الانترنت بسرعة لإيجاد المعلومات من فضلك ؟" يقول الأب "بالطبع". يقول سامي "أوه، واوا" "لقد وجدت الكثير من المعلومات! اللافقاريات من ذوات الدم البارد. يعيشوا على الأرض وفي المياه. بعض اللافقاريات مثل الكابوريا، لديها قشرة صلبة للحماية. أخرون، مثل قنديل البحر، لديها أجسام لينة. بعض اللافقاريات تستطيع السباحة بشكل جيد للغاية مثل الأخطبوط والحبار". يضحك الأب "هل لديك معلومات كافية لمشروعك؟

- "Oh yes!" said Sami. "Wait, I've found more! Some invertebrates, such as snails, have hard shells and move very slowly. Others are faster. Dragonflies can fly very fast. Insects(4) are also invertebrates. They have six legs. I think grasshoppers are the most amazing insects. They can jump more than a meter!" Did you know the spider is not an insect ? It has 8 legs and is called an arachnid. It can move very quickly.
- "Well done!" said Dad. "Have you finished your research? Can I have my cell phone back now, please ?"

Check Vocabulary

(4) حشرات

Answer the following questions :

Learn 1. Are insects vertebrates or invertebrates ?
- They are invertebrates.

Practice 2. Which invertebrate can fly very fast ?

....



Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

- **Read and circle the correct word.**

1. A (squid – crab) has a soft body and lives in the sea.
2. A (crab – snail) lives on land and in the sea. It can walk and it has a hard shell.
3. A (grasshopper – bird) is an insect that can jump one meter.
4. A (dog – frog) is an amphibian that lays its eggs in water.
5. A / An (octopus – dolphin) has eight legs. It lives in the sea and it swims fast.
6. A spider isn't an insect; it is an (arachnid – octopus) .
7. A (fish – jellyfish) has a soft body and it lives in the sea. It doesn't have legs or fins or scales.
8. A (snail – tail) has a shell. It doesn't have legs and it moves very slowly.

• Ask your child to read and circle the correct word.

- اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويضع دائرة حول الكلمة الصحيحة

يقول سامي "أوه، نعم ! أنتظر. لقد وجدت المزيد من المعلومات ! بعض اللافقاريات مثل القواقع لديها قوقعة صلبة. تتحرك ببطئ شديد. الآخرين أسرع منها. يمكن أن يطير اليعسوب بسرعة كبيرة. الحشرات هي أيضًا من اللافقاريات. لديهم ستة أرجل. أعتقد حشرة الجراد أكثر حشرة مدهلة. يمكنهم أن يقفزوا أكثر من مترًا. هل عرفت أن العنكبوت ليس حشرة. له ثمانية أرجل ويسمى حيوان عنكبوتي. يمكنه التحرك سريعًا جدًا. يقول الأب "أحسنت!" "هل أنتهيت من البحث ؟ هل يمكنني استعادة هاتفي المحمول الذي من فضلك ؟!"

Language

Adverbs of manner ظروف الحال (الكيفية)

Usage الاستخدام

To describe how something happens. تصف ظروف الحال كيف يحدث شئ ما.

⭐ الظرف يصف الفعل و يأتى بعده و يتكون من إضافة (ly) إلى الصفة المنتظمة والظروف غير المنتظمة تحفظ كما هى.

adjective الصفة	adverb الظرف
Doctors help sick people. Rodina is happy. الصفة تصف الاسم و تأتى قبله أو بعد (verb to be).	Snails move slowly. الظرف يصف الفعل و يأتى بعده.

Regular المنتظم

Adjective		Adverb	
bad	سيئ	badly	بطريقة سيئة
quiet	هادئ	quietly	بهدوء
loud	عالٍ	loudly	بصوت عالٍ
quick	سريع	quickly	بسرعة
slow	بطئ	slowly	ببطء
happy	سعيد	happily	بسعادة
sad	حزين	sadly	بحزن
soft	هادئ	softly	برفق / بهدوء

Irregular غير المنتظم

Adjective		Adverb	
good	جيد	well	بشكل جيد
fast	سريع	fast	بسرعة
hard	صعب	hard	بصعوبة
right	صحيح	right	بطريقة صحيحة
wrong	خطأ	wrong/wrongly	بطريقة خاطئة

Formation التكوين

⭐ لتكوين الظرف نضيف (ly) للصفة المنتظمة.

slow → slowly quick → quickly

⭐ أما الصفات التى تنتهى بـ (y –) تستبدل (y –) بـ (i) و نضيف (ly).

happy → happily noisy → noisily easy → easily

Notes for parents

• Help your child to identify how to form adverbs.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على كيفية تكوين الظرف (الحال)

هناك صفات غير منتظمة تحفظ كما هي لا يضاف إليها (ly-) عند تحويلها إلى ظرف.

good → well

هناك صفات تبقى كما هى عند تحويلها إلى ظرف (حال).

fast → fast   hard → hard   right → right   late → late



Pop Quiz on Language

- **Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.**

1. Salma walks .... She is tired.
   a. slow   b. slower   c. slowly   d. slowest
2. Rokaya is .... She has a new dress.
   a. happily   b. happy   c. happier   d. happiest
3. I could hear my neighbors shouting .... at each other.
   a. angry   b. angriest   c. angrily   d. anger
4. The teacher spoke ....
   a. quiet   b. quietly   c. quietest   d. as quiet
5. Dragonflies can fly very ....
   a. fast   b. fastly   c. fastest   d. as fast
6. My sister plays the piano ....
   a. good   b. better   c. well   d. best
7. He usually cuts my hair ....
   a. quick   b. quickly   c. quickest   d. quicker
8. The snail is a .... animal.
   a. slowly   b. slower   c. slow   d. as slow
9. Some spiders can hide very ....
   a. easy   b. easier   c. easily   d. as easy

• Ask your child to choose the correct word.

• اطلب من طفلك أن يختار الكلمة الصحيحة.

Dictation

لإتقان مهارة الكتابة استخدم كارت المعاصر من نهاية الكتاب

Read and spell	Complete	Write
invertebrates	inv _ _ tebrates	
crabs	cr _ _ s	
protection	pro _ _ ction	
jellyfish	je _ _ yf _ _h	
octopus	o _ _ opus	
squid	s _ _ id	
snails	s _ _ ils	
dragonflies	dra _ _ nflies	
grasshopper	gr _ _ sho _ _ er	
spider	s _ i _ er	
shell	she _ _	
insect	i _ se _ t	

Notes for parents

- Help your child read, spell , complete and write the words.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ، يتهجى، يكمل ويكتب الكلمات

General Exercises on Lesson 3

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

• Understand • Apply • Create

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. Invertebrates are .... -blooded.
   a. cold b. warm c. tall d. high
2. Invertebrates live on ....
   a. sun b. moon c. sky d. land
3. .... have a hard shell.
   a. Crabs b. Octopuses c. Jellyfish d. Squids
4. Jellyfish have .... bodies.
   a. well b. good c. hard d. soft

2 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. hard – have – Crabs – shells – protection - for.
....
2. fly - can – Dragonflies – fast – very.
....

3 Read and complete the dialogue from the words in the box.

invertebrates – cold-blooded – dragonflies – vertebrates

Mohamed : Hello, Maged.
Maged : Hello, Mohamed.
Mohamed : I don't know what to write for my project.
Maged : Why don't you write about (1) .... ?
Mohamed : Good idea. Do you have some information about them ?
Maged : Yes. Invertebrates are (2) .... and they live on land and in water.
Mohamed : Can you give me some examples of invertebrates ?
Maged : Of course. Snails and (3) .... are invertebrates.

1. Ask your child to listen and circle the correct answer. - اطلب من طفلك أن يستمع ويضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة
2. Ask your child to order the words and write the sentences correctly. - اطلب من طفلك أن يرتب الكلمات ويكتب الجمل بطريقة صحيحة.
3. Ask your child read and complete the dialogue with the correct words from the box. - اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويكمل المحادثة بالكلمات الصحيحة من الصندوق أعلاه

4 Choose the correct answer from a , b, c or d.

1. Insects live in rainforests because they can find food ....
   a. easy b. easily c. easiest d. as easy
2. She plays the drums ....
   a. fast b. sad c. bad d. good
3. I tried ...., but I couldn't win the race.
   a. hard b. as hard c. hardly d. hardest
4. I did .... in the test. I got 20%.
   a. badly b. bad c. good d. well

5 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements.

Insects and snails

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

Guiding words :

invertebrates / backbone / grasshopper / arachnid / hard shells

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Notes for parents

4. Ask your child to choose the correct answer.
اطلب من طفلك أن يختار الإجابة الصحيحة
5. Ask your child to write a text of fifty (50) words using the guiding words.
اطلب من طفلك أن يكتب نص مكون من (٥٠) كلمة مستخدماً الكلمات الإرشادية

Lesson 4

• CLIL : ART



Vocabulary ★ Listen and repeat. استمع وردد .

Key vocabulary

primary colors	ألوان أساسية	secondary colors	ألوان ثانوية
predator	مفترس	prey	فريسة

Extra vocabulary

type	نوع	interesting	ممتع
bright	لامع - زاهي	coral reef	شعاب مرجانية
pollen	حبوب اللقاح	warning	تحذير
shade	ظل	poisonous	مسمم / سام

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular

Present		Past
hunt	يصطاد	hunted
mix	يخلط - يمزج	mixed
attract	يجذب	attracted
reproduce	ينتج - يتكاثر	reproduced
carry	يحمل	carried

Irregular

Present		Past
hide	يختبئ	hid
catch	يصطاد	caught
eat	يأكل	ate
think	يفكر	thought
be	يكون	was / were

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

- an underwater scene — منظر تحت المياه
- come in many different colors — يوجد منها ألوان مختلفة
- all shapes in between — كل درجات اللون التى بينهم
- make green darker — يجعل اللون الأخضر داكن أكثر
- brightly colored — ملونة بألوان زاهية / لامعة
- hide from — يختبئ من
- can be a warning — قد يكون تحذيرًا

• Help your child listen to the words and repeat them. • ساعد طفلك أن يستمع إلى الكلمات ويرددها

Read and identify.

اقرأ وتعرف .

The Primary colors
الألوان الأساسية

- red — لون أحمر
- yellow — لون أصفر
- blue — لون أزرق

Secondary colors
ألوان الثانوية

- green — لون أخضر
- orange — لون برتقالي
- purple — لون أرجواني / بنفسجي

How to mix colors

Red, Yellow → Orange

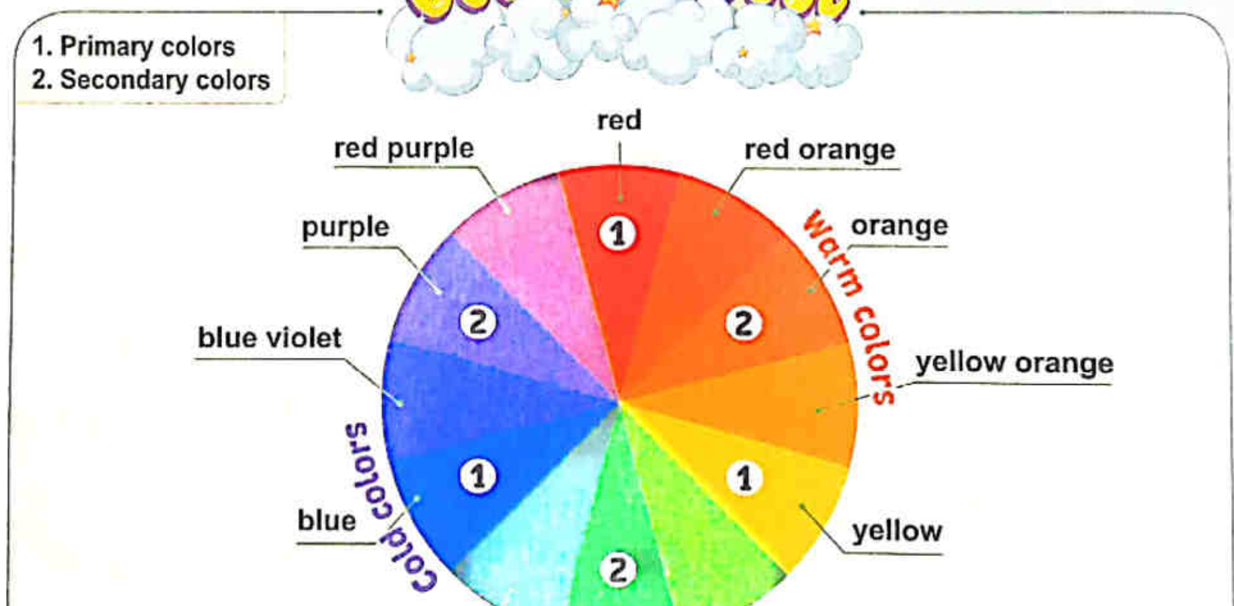
Red + Yellow = Orange

Blue, Red → Purple

Blue + Red = Purple

Blue, Yellow → Green

Blue + Yellow = Green



Notes for parents

• Help your child read and identify warm and cold colors.

• ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويتعرف على الألوان الدافئة والباردة.

Warm colors : الألوان الدافئة are linked to "joy, strength, power, energy and passion"
الألوان الدافئة : مرتبطة بـ "المرح، القوة، الطاقة والحماس"

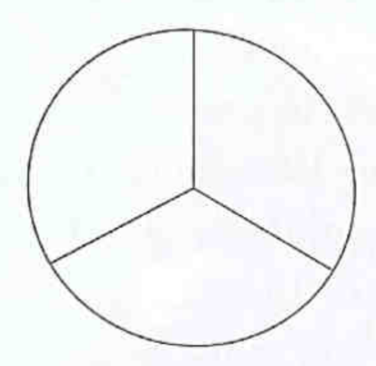
Cold colors : الألوان الباردة are linked to quietness, sweetness, rest and sadness"
الألوان الباردة : مرتبطة بـ "الهدوء، الجمال، الراحة والحزن"



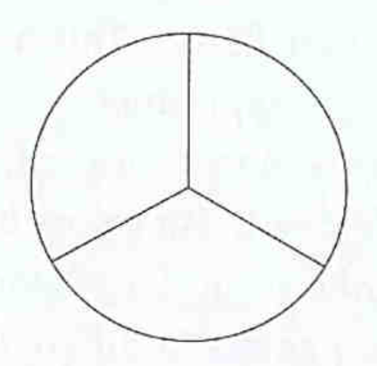
Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

1 Read and Color.

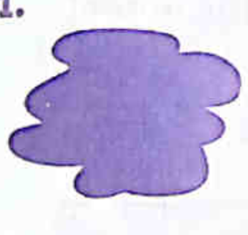
Primary colors



Secondary colors



2 Look and write the words.

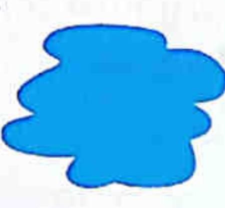
1.

....

2.

....

3.

....

4.

....

1. Ask your child to read and color.
2. Ask your child to look at the colors and write the words.

- اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويلون.
- اطلب من طفلك أن ينظر إلى الألوان ويكتب الكلمات

Look, listen and read. انظر، استمع واقرأ

Pop Quiz | تدرب على ٢٩ من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع

Why do flowers have bright colors ?



Scientists think that there are nearly 400,000 different types of plants. Most of these have flowers, which come in many different colors. The bright flowers[1] attract insects[2], which carry pollen[3] from one flower to another flower. This helps the flowers to reproduce.

Primary colors[4] are red, yellow and blue. We can't make these colors by mixing other colors. We make secondary colors[5] by mixing the three primary colors in different amounts. We can make green, orange, purple, and all the shades[6] in between. For example, we can mix red and yellow to make orange. The secondary colors can be made by mixing primary colors which are nearest to them on the color wheel. Adding black to a color makes it darker[7], and adding white makes it lighter[8].

Check Vocabulary

- زهور زاهية اللون (1)
- حشرات (2)
- حبوب اللقاح (3)
- ألوان أولية (4)
- ألوان ثانوية (5)
- ظلال (6)
- أغمق لوناً (7)
- أفتح لوناً (8)

Answer the following questions :

Learn 1. How do you make green darker ?

- You add a tiny amount of black, or purple if you don't want to use black.

Practice 2. What colors do you need to make purple ?

....

Notes for parents

- Help your child look at the picture, listen and read the text.

- ساعد طفلك أن ينظر إلى الصورة، يستمع ويقرأ النص

لماذا تحتوي الزهور على ألوان زاهية ؟
يعتقد العلماء أن هناك ما يقرب من ٤٠٠ ألف نوع مختلف من النباتات. معظمها يحتوي على أزهار لها ألوان عديدة ومختلفة. تجذب الأزهار زاهية اللون الحشرات التي تقوم بنقل حبوب اللقاح من زهرة إلى أخرى وهذا يساعد الزهور على التكاثر. فالألوان الأساسية هي الأحمر، الأصفر والأزرق. لا يمكننا صنع هذه الألوان بمزج ألوان أخرى. نصنع ألوان ثانوية عن طريق مزج الألوان الأساسية الثلاثة بكميات مختلفة. يمكننا صنع اللون الأخضر والبرتقالي والأرجواني (البنفسجي) وكل الظلال بين درجات الألوان. على سبيل المثال يمكننا أن نخلط الأحمر والأصفر لتكوين البرتقالي. الألوان الثانوية يمكن تكوينها عن طريق خلط الألوان الأساسية القريبة منها على عجلة الألوان. إضافة الأسود إلى أي لون يجعله داكناً وإضافة الأبيض يجعله فاتحاً

⭐ Listen and read. استمع واقرأ.

Pop Quiz تدرب على ٢٩ من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع

There are lots of interesting things to see under the sea ! Some fish are very brightly colored, and so are some plants. In a coral reef[1], having bright colors can help fish to hide[2] from predators[3]. The coral is very bright and has different colors, so the fish can hide from bigger fish.



In addition, many predators don't eat prey[4] that are brightly colored. Bright colors can be a warning that the animal is poisonous[5].

Check Vocabulary

- (1) شعاب مرجانية
- (2) يختبئ
- (3) مفترس
- (4) فريسة
- (5) سام

Answer the following questions :

Learn 1. Where can the fish hide from bigger fish ?
- In a coral reef.

Practice 2. Why do fish have bright colors ?

....

⭐ Read and identify these definitions.

Word	Definition
predator مفترس	is the animal that hunts and eats other animals. هو الحيوان الذى يقوم بإصطياد وأكل الحيوانات الأخرى
prey فريسة	is the animal that is caught and eaten. هو الحيوان الذى يتم صيده وأكله.

- Help your child listen and read the text. ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ النص
- Ask your child to read and identify the definition of each word. اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويتعرف على تعريف كل كلمة

هناك الكثير من الأشياء المثيرة للاهتمام التي يمكنك أن تراها تحت سطح البحر! فبعض الأسماك لها ألوان زاهية جدًا وكذلك بعض النباتات. فالشعاب المرجانية ذات الألوان الزاهية يمكن أن تساعد الأسماك في الاختباء من الحيوانات المفترسة. فالمرجان لامع جدًا وله ألوان مختلفة لذلك يمكن للأسماك الاختباء من الأسماك الأكبر حجمًا. بالإضافة إلى أن العديد من الحيوانات المفترسة لا تأكل الفرائس ذات الألوان الزاهية. فيمكن أن تكون الألوان الزاهية تحذيرًا من أن ذلك الحيوان سام.

General Exercises on Lesson 4

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

• Understand • Apply • Create

1 Listen and circle the correct word from a, b, c or d.

1. Scientists think that there are 400,000 different types of ....
   a. plants b. animals c. jobs d. places
2. The bright flowers .... insects.
   a. repel b. attract c. warn d. describe
3. .... carry pollen from one flower to another flower.
   a. Trees b. Colors c. Plants d. Insects
4. Plants have .... , which come in many different colors.
   a. birds b. animals c. flowers d. trees



2 Listen and complete.

1. There are interesting things to see .... the sea.
2. Bright colors can help fish to hide from ....
3. The coral is very .... and has different colors.
4. Many predators don't eat .... that are brightly colored.

3 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. Red – yellow – make – and – orange.

....

2. flowers – attract – The – insects – bright.

....

Notes for parents

1. Ask your child to listen and circle the correct answer.
2. Ask your child to listen and complete the sentences.
3. Ask your child order the words and write the sentence correctly.

- اطلب من طفلك أن يستمع ويضع دائرة حول الاجابة الصحيحة
- اطلب من طفلك أن يستمع ويكمل الجملة
- اطلب من طفلك أن يرتب الكلمات ويكتب الجملة بشكل صحيح

4 Read and complete the following dialogue from the words in the box.

pollen – attract – repel – reproduce

Rehab : Hi, Doaa. How many types of plants are there ?
Doaa : Hi, Rehab. There are nearly 400,000 different types of plants.
Rehab : Why do flowers have bright colors ?
Doaa : Because bright colors (1)................ insects.
Rehab : What do insects carry from one flower to another ?
Doaa : They carry (2)................ from one flower to another.
Rehab : How does the insect help the flowers ?
Doaa : It helps flowers to (3)................ .

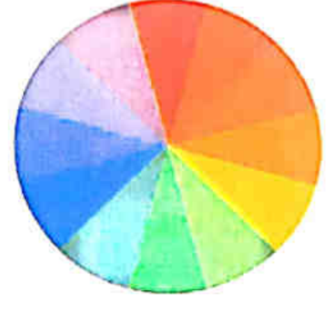
5 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements.

The color wheel

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

Guiding words :

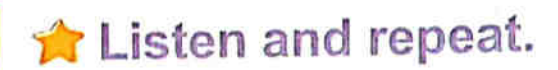
- primary colors
- mix
- secondary colors
- lighter



....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....

4. Ask your child to read and complete the given dialogue from the words in the box.
- اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويكمل المحادثة بالكلمة الصحيحة من الصندوق أعلاه.
5. Ask your child to write a text of fifty (50) words using the guiding words.
- اطلب من طفلك أن يكتب نص مكون من (٥٠) كلمة مستخدمًا الكلمات الإرشادية.





Vocabulary

★ Listen and repeat. استمع وردد.

Key vocabulary

water lily	الزنبق المائي	disadvantages	عيوب
echolocation	تحديد الموقع بالصدى	macro-habitat	بيئة / موطن كبير
advantages	مميزات	micro-habitat	بيئة / موطن صغير

Extra vocabulary

soil	تربة زراعية	lake	بحيرة
flat leaf	ورقة شجر مسطحة	roots	جذور
surface	سطح	area	مساحة
stem	ساق نبات	bottom	قاع

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular

Present		Past
reach	يصل إلى	reached
cover	يغطي	covered
pollinate	يلقح	pollinated

Irregular

Present		Past
grow	ينمو	grew
spread	ينتشر	spread
make	يصنع - يجعل	made

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

• on the surface of the water	- على سطح المياه
• reaches down to	- يصل لأسفل إلى
• make it difficult for	- يجعلها صعبة لـ ...
• look pretty	- يبدو جميلًا
• the bottom of	- قاع
• on the top of	- على القمة

Notes for parents

• Help your child listen to the words and repeat them.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع إلى الكلمات ويرددهم



Learn and identify.

تعلم وتعرف.

How to link ideas in your paragraph

- **In addition** بالإضافة

To add more information to the same idea.

لإضافة معلومات أكثر إلى نفس الفكرة :

Ex. Water lily have brightly colored flowers. In addition, their roots spread under water.

How to contrast ideas

1 However ومع ذلك

To show a change in topic. لعرض موضوع مختلف.

Ex. Most plants grow in soil. However, some plants grow in water.

2 On one hand ... on the other hand من ناحية ... ومن ناحية أخرى

To show two different points of view on the same topic.

لتوضيح وجهتين نظر مختلفتين فى نفس الموضوع.

Ex. On one hand, water lily looks pretty, but on the other hand, it can make it difficult for other animals and plants to live under the water.

• Help your child learn and identify some writing tips. • ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم ويتعرف على بعض إرشادات الكتابة



⭐ Look, read and complete.

ظر، اقرأ وأكمل.

on the other hand - In addition - However - On one hand

Most plants grow in soil. (1) .... , some plants grow in water, such as the water lily. They have a large, flat leaf on the surface of the water, and a long stem that reaches down to the bottom of the lake. They have brightly colored flowers and they make seeds which float on water.
(2) .... , their roots spread under the water, and they can cover a very large area. (3) .... , this can look pretty, but (4) .... , it can make it difficult for other animals and plants to live under the water.





⭐ Read and identify.

اقرأ وتعرف.

Water lily plants

Advantages	Disadvantages
– They have brightly colored flowers. – They can look pretty.	– They make seeds which float on water. – Their roots spread under the water and they can cover a very large area of water. – Their roots can make it difficult for other animals and plants to live under the water.

Notes for parents

- Help your child look, read and complete the text using the words in the box.

ساعد طفلك أن ينظر إلى الصورة ويقرأ ويكمل النص مستخدمًا الكلمات في المربع

- Help your child read and identify the advantages and disadvantages of the water lily plant.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويتعرف على مميزات وعيوب نبات زنبق الماء

تنمو أغلب النباتات في التربة. ومع ذلك بعض النباتات تنمو في الماء مثل زنبق الماء. فهو لديه ورقة شجر عريضة مسطحة على سطح الماء وساق طويلة والتي تصل إلى قاع البحيرة. فهذه النباتات لها زهور ألوانها زاهية والتي تنتج بذور تطفو على سطح الماء. بالإضافة إلى أن الجذور تنتشر تحت الماء ويمكنها أن تغطي مساحة كبيرة من الماء. فمن ناحية، إنها تبدو جميلة المظهر ولكن من ناحية أخرى، إنها يمكن أن تسبب صعوبة للحيوانات الأخرى والنباتات التي تعيش تحت الماء

Look, listen and read.

Pop Quiz | تدرب على ٩٠٪ من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع

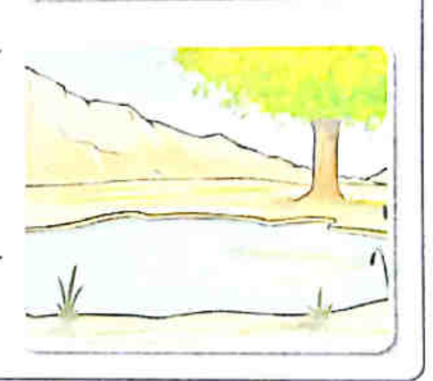
- When we study the natural world, we find animals and plants living together in a habitat. Vertebrates, invertebrates and plants all need each other and they work together to survive.



- عندما ندرس العالم الطبيعى، نجد الحيوانات والنباتات تعيش سويًا فى الموطن. الفقاريات، اللافقاريات والنباتات جميعهم يحتاجون بعضهم البعض ويعملون سويًا للبقاء على قيد الحياة.

- Large habitats, or macro-habitats, are forests, deserts, and grasslands.

- البيئات الكبيرة هى الغابات، الصحارى، والمناطق الخضراء.



- A micro-habitat is a small area such as a pond or a tree.

- البيئة الصغيرة هى التى تكون على منطقة صغيرة مثل بركة أو شجرة.

Read and learn.

اقرأ وتعلم.

Animals and plants that live in the micro-habitats.

pond بركة		cave كهف		tree شجرة	
dragonfly	حشرة اليعسوب	bat	خفاش	butterfly	فراشة
fish	سمك	snake	ثعبان	monkey	قرد
frog	ضفدع	lizard	سحلية	bird	طائر
snail	حلزون	spider	عنكبوت	squirrel	سنجاب
water lily	زنبق الماء				
crab	كابوريا				

- Help your child look at the pictures, listen and read the sentences. - ساعد طفلك أن ينظر إلى الصور، يستمع ويقرأ الجمل.
- Help your child to read and learn. - ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويتعلم.

General Exercises on Lessons 5 & 6

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

• Understand • Apply • Create

1 Listen and circle the correct word from a, b, c or d.

1. Most mammals live on ....
   a. desert b. sky c. sea d. land
2. Dolphins live in the ....
   a. sea b. desert c. land d. forest
3. Bats live in trees or ....
   a. caves b. houses c. temples d. nests
4. Bats fly very fast ....
   a. at midday b. at night
   c. in the morning d. in the afternoon

2 Listen and complete.

1. Zoos are places of .... research.
2. People can learn about .... animals in zoos.
3. Animals are kept in the .... habitats.
4. Animals aren't free to live a natural ....

3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

flowers – difficult – roots – flat

Water lily grows in water. It has a large, (1)............ leaf on the surface of the water. It has a long stem that reaches down to the bottom of the lake. It has brightly colored (2)............ . Its (3)............ spread under the water. They can cover a very long area. This can look pretty.

Notes for parents

1. Ask your child to listen and circle the correct answer. اطلب من طفلك أن يستمع ويضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة
2. Ask your child to listen and complete the sentences. اطلب من طفلك أن يستمع ويكمل الجملة
3. Ask your child to read and complete the given text from the words in the box. اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويكمل النص المعطى من الكلمات في المربع

4 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. in – grow – Some – water – plants.

....

2. bats – are – unusual – Why ?

....

3. soil – plants – in – Most – grow.

....

5 Read the following text and answer the questions below.

Water lily grows in water and has a long stem that reaches down to the bottom of the lake. It has brightly colored flowers and it makes seeds which float on water. It has roots that spread under the water, and it can cover a very large area.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The roots of water lily plants .... under the water.
   a. float b. play c. spread d. swim
2. Water lily has a .... stem.
   a. big b. long c. small d. hard

B. Answer the following questions :

3. Where does the stem reach ?

....

4. Where does the water lily grow ?

....

4 Ask your child to read, order the words and write the sentence correctly. - اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ، يرتب الكلمات ويكتب الجملة بطريقة صحيحة

5 Ask your child to read the passage and answer the questions. - اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ القطعة ويجيب على الأسئلة

Test your skills Unit 2



If you got 🔴 you need to revise the unit again on the next page.

قم بتقييم نفسك بالعلامات الموضحة وإذا حصلت على 🔴 غير جيد قم بمراجعة الوحدة مرة أخرى في الصفحة التالية.

My Dictation

1 Read and write the meaning.

اقرأ وأكتب المعنى.

A. reptiles ....

amphibians ....

blue whale ....

invertebrates ....

coral reef ....

B. .... الفقاريات

.... الثدييات

.... الزنبق المائي

.... ذوات الدم الحار

.... قشور



My Language

2 Choose the correct answer.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. She is the (taller - tallest) girl in class.
2. Horses are (faster - fast) than elephants.

My Reading

3 Read and tick (✓) or (✗).

اقرأ وضع علامة (✓) أو (✗).

Fish live in water and take in oxygen through their gills; they can't breathe air. They are cold-blooded and they lay eggs. They also have scales and they use fins to move. There are thousands of different types of fish in all water habitats- saltwater, freshwater and wetland

1. Fish take in oxygen through their scales. ( )
2. Fish are warm-blooded. ( )
3. Fish use fins to move. ( )

My Writing

4 Read and write. اقرأ وأكتب.

When - However - On one hand - On the other hand

Bats live in groups in trees or caves. They can fly very fast at night because they can "see" using a special skill called echolocation تحديد الموقع عن طريق الصدى.

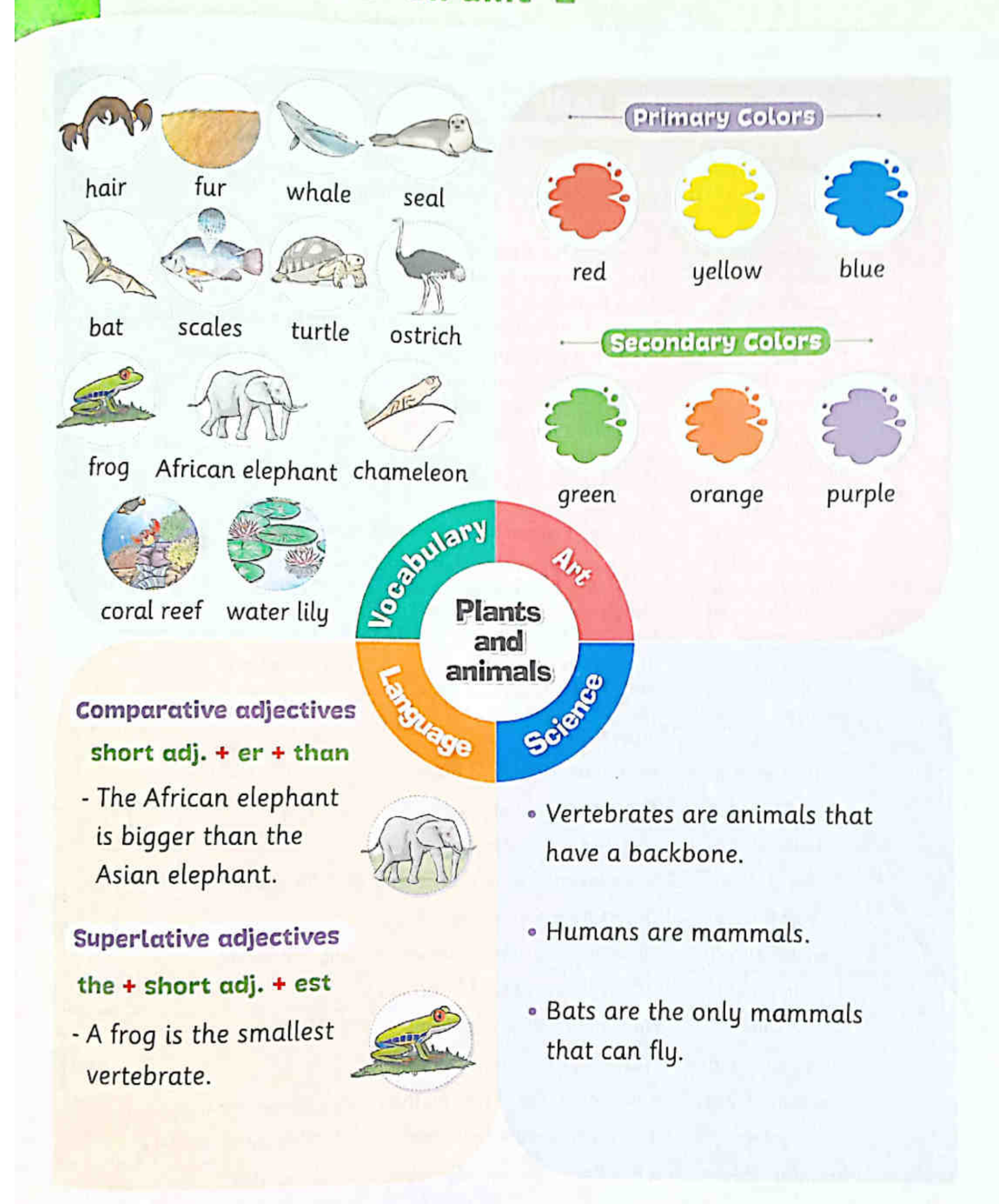
(1).........., bats are helpful to humans and the environment.

(2).........., large numbers of bats can be noisy and messy.

(3).......... they are helpful to farmers.

 قم بتقييم نفسك بالعلامات الموضحة.

Review on unit 2



• Help your child review unit 2.

- ساعد طفلك فى مراجعة الوحدة الثانية

Skills



هذا الجزء يمكنك من ربط الكلمات التى درستها بجمل
ليساعدك على التمكن من مهارة القراءة والكتابة

1. Reading & writing skills :

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
Vertebrates	vertebrates	Vertebrates are animals with a backbone. There are five types of vertebrates.
	mammals warm-blooded milk – egg humans – bats	Mammals have hair or fur on their bodies. They are warm-blooded. They feed their babies with milk. They don't lay eggs. Humans are mammals. Bats are the only mammals that can fly
	reptiles cold-blooded legs eggs	Most reptiles don't have hair or fur. They have scales. They are cold-blooded. Most reptiles have four legs except snakes. All reptiles lay eggs.
	amphibians cold-blooded eggs habitat	Amphibians have smooth skin. They are cold-blooded. They lay eggs in water. They need water or a moist habitat to survive.
	fish - scales breathe - gills cold-blooded eggs	Fish have scales. They use fins to move. They can't breathe air. They take in oxygen through their gills. They are cold-blooded. Fish lay eggs.
	birds wings - beaks warm - blooded eggs	Birds don't have hair or fur. They have feathers. Birds have wings and beaks. They are warm-blooded. Birds lay eggs.
Invertebrates	invertebrates	More than 90% of all animals are invertebrates.
	cold-blooded	They are cold-blooded.
	land - water	They live on land and on water.
	hard shell	Some invertebrates have a hard shell for protection, like crabs.
	soft bodies	Others have soft bodies, like jellyfish.
	move - slowly	Some invertebrates move very slowly, like snails.
	fly - fast	Others fly very fast, like dragonflies.
Water lily	soil	Most plants grow in the soil.
	water lily - water	Water lily grows in water.
	flat leaf - leaves	It has large, flat leaves on the surface of the water.
	stem	It has a long stem that reaches to the bottom of the lake.
	brightly - flowers	It has brightly colored flowers.
	roots - spread	Their roots spread under the water and cover a very large area
	pretty - difficult	On one hand, it can look pretty, but on the other hand, it can make it difficult for other animals and plants to live under the water



2. How to make a sentence :

٢.تعلم كيف تكون وترتب جملة

١ الجمل الخبرية

1. some – There – animals – are – enormous.
2. animals – a backbone – are – Vertebrates – with.

	فاعل	فعل	باقى الجملة .
1			
2			

٢ الجمل الأمرية

1. black – a color – Add – to.
2. look – the internet – Don't – on – long – for.

	Don't	مصدر الفعل	باقى الجملة .
1			
2			

٣ الجمل الأستفهامية

(أ) السؤال بـ (كلمة استفهام .. ؟)

1. lay – vertebrates – Which – eggs ?
2. animal – biggest – is – in the world – What – the ?

	كلمة الاستفهام	فعل مساعد	فاعل	فعل أساسى	باقى السؤال ?
1					
2					

(ب) السؤال بـ (هل .. ؟)

1. have – Do – a pet - you ?
2. fly – ostrich – Can – an ?

	فعل مساعد	فاعل	فعل أساسى	باقى السؤال ?
1				
2				



١- عناصر تساعدك على تنظيم أفكارك للتعامل مع مهارة الكتابة متبوعة بنموذج.

Plants and animals

Plants

Most plants grow in soil.
Some plants grow in water.

Example

Water lily grows in water.

Details

They have a large, flat leaf.
They have a long stem.
They have brightly colored flowers.

More details

They make seeds which float on water.
Their roots spread under the water.
They can cover a very large area.

Appearance

They look pretty.

Opinion

I like water lily.

Read and learn. اقرأ وتعلم.

Most plants grow in soil. Some plants grow in water. Water lily grows in water. It has a large, flat leaf. It has a long stem. They have brightly colored flowers. It makes seeds which float on water. Their roots spread under the water. They can cover a very large area. It looks pretty. I like water lily.

٢- تعتبر مهارة الكتابة من المهارات الأساسية للتعبير عن فكرة أو موضوع لذا يجب استخدام جمل وأفكار مترابطة. قم بقراءة هذه الجمل لتساعدك على التعامل مع مهارة الكتابة (٢٤ جملة).



Invertebrates

Invertebrates don't have backbones.[1] They are cold-blooded.[2] They live in the sea but some live on land.[3] Some have soft bodies and some have hard shells.[4] Some invertebrates can swim and some can walk.[5] Arachnids are not insects.[6]



Mammals

Most mammals live on land, but some mammals such as whales and dolphins live in the sea.[7] However, bats are the only mammals that can fly.[8] Bats live in groups in trees or caves.[9] They sleep during the day and hunt for food at night.[10] They can fly very fast at night because they can 'see' using a special skill called echolocation.[11] In addition bats are helpful to humans and the environment.[12]

(3) What animals do to protect themselves

There are many animals that can protect themselves.[13] Some invertebrates have a hard shell for protection.[14] Some animals such as bears have big teeth and claws to protect themselves.[15] Some have poisonous bites, such as snakes and some spiders.[16] Birds can fly away to protect themselves.[17] Other animals can run fast.[18]



Having a pet

It's fun to watch pets.[19] It's good to learn about how to look after them.[20] You can learn about their species.[21] Some animals such as dogs need to walk which is good exercise.[22] They need a lot of care and attention.[23] It can be expensive to have a pet.[24]

Test 3 on Unit 2

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

• Understand • Apply • Create

A. Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct word from a, b, c or d.

1. Reptiles are .... - blooded.
   a. hot   b. warm   c. cold   d. cool
2. Reptiles have to spend time in the ....
   a. sun   b. water   c. sea   d. lake
3. Reptiles come to land to .... their eggs.
   a. drink   b. lay   c. eat   d. have
4. Reptiles have ....
   a. hair   b. scales   c. fur   d. fins

2 Listen and complete.

1. Mammals are .... - blooded.
2. Mammals give .... to their babies.
3. Mammals don't .... eggs .
4. Mammals have .... or fur on their bodies.

B. Reading

3 Read and complete the dialogue from the words in the box.

colors - animals - doing - What

Israa : What are you doing, Nada ?
Nada : I'm (1).................... a research.
Israa : What is it about ?
Nada : It is about (2) .... and birds.
Israa : (3) .... is the fastest animal ?
Nada : It is the cheetah.
Israa : That is great !
Nada : Of course.

Notes for parents

1. Ask your child to listen and circle the correct answer. اطلب من طفلك أن يستمع ويضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة
2. Ask your child to listen and complete the sentences. اطلب من طفلك أن يستمع ويكمل الجمل
3. Ask your child to read and complete the given dialogue with the correct words from the box. اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويكمل المحادثة بالكلمات الصحيحة من الصندوق

4 Read the following text and answer the questions below.

There are lots of interesting things to see under the sea ! Some fish are very brightly colored, and so some plants. In a coral reef, having bright colors can help fish to hide from predators. The coral is very bright and has different colors, so the fish can hide from bigger fish. In addition, many predators don't eat prey that are brightly colored. Bright colors can be a warning that the animal is poisonous.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Coral reefs help fish to ....
   a. hide b. sleep c. stay d. lay
2. The coral is very ....
   a. light b. slight c. bright d. sunlight

B. Answer the following questions :

3. Why are fish brightly colored ?

   ....

4. Why don't predators eat prey that are brightly colored ?

   ....

5 The reader

A Read and write T (True) or F (False).

	T	F
1. Grandpa is an engineer.	☐	☐
2. Zeinab's friends is very clever.	☐	☐

B Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Zeinab and her .... visited the shop.
   a. father b. mother
   c. grandmother d. grandfather
2. Grandpa likes sewing .... and geometric patterns.
   a. sun flower b. lotus flower c. rose d. daisy

4 Ask your child to read the text and answer the given questions.
- اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ النص ويجيب عن الأسئلة المعطاه له

5 Ask your child to read and answer the questions according to the events of the story.
- اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويجيب عن الأسئلة طبقًا لأحداث القصة

C. Writing

6 Choose the correct word from a, b, c or d.

1. Ahmed is .... than Waleed.
   a. strong   b. strongest   c. stronger   d. as strong
2. The snake is .... than the ant.
   a. longer   b. longest   c. long   d. the longest
3. Summer is the .... season of the year.
   a. hot   b. hotter   c. hottest   d. hotter than
4. My father is the .... person in my family.
   a. tall as   b. taller   c. tall   d. tallest

7 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. lay – in water – Amphibians – their – always – eggs.

....

2. make – How – you – darker – do – green ?

....

8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements.

أكتب نص من (50) كلمة باستخدام العناصر الإرشادية المعطاة.

Birds

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

Guiding words :

warm-blooded / fur / hair /
feathers / wings / fly / can't /
beaks / bones



....

....

....

....

Notes for parents

6. Ask your child to choose the correct answer. اطلب من طفلك أن يختار الإجابة الصحيحة
7. Ask your child to order the words and write the sentences correctly. اطلب من طفلك أن يرتب الكلمات ويكتب الجمل بشكل صحيح
8. Ask your child to write a text of fifty (50) words using the guiding words. اطلب من طفلك أن يكتب نص مكون من (٥٠) كلمة مستخدمًا الكلمات الارشادية

Test 4 on Unit 2

Collected From Governorates Exams

اختبـار مجمـع مـن مختلف المحافظات

نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب

• Understand • Apply • Create

A. Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Fish take in oxygen through their ....
   a. lungs b. fins c. stems d. gills
2. Fish have .... on their bodies.
   a. fur b. scales c. feather d. hair
3. Fresh water and saltwater are ....
   a. holes b. habits c. habitats d. hobbies
4. Fish use .... to move.
   a. gills b. fins c. tails d. scales

(Cairo - Hadaiq Ol-Qubbah 2022 / Luxor - Esna 2022)

2 Listen and complete.

1. The biggest animal on .... is a mammal.
2. The biggest animal in the world is the .... whale.
3. The whale shark is the biggest .... in the world.
4. The whale shark is about .... meters long.

(Assiut - Abu Tig 2022 / Dakahlia - Belqas 2022)

B. Reading

3 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box.

land - writing - hummingbird - ostrich

Hala : What are you doing, Mona ?
Mona : I'm (1) .... an English paragraph.
Hala : What is it about ?
Mona : It is about animals and birds.
Hala : What is the biggest animal on (2) .... ?
Mona : The biggest animal on land is the African elephant.
Hala : What is the smallest bird ?
Mona : It's the bee (3) ....

(Beheira - Abu Hummus 2022 / Qalyubia - Benha 2022)

1. Ask your child to listen and circle the correct answer. - اطلب من طفلك أن يستمع ويضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة
2. Ask your child to listen and complete the sentences. - اطلب من طفلك أن يستمع ويكمل الجمل
3. Ask your child to read and complete the dialogue with words from the box. - اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويكمل المحادثة بكلمات من المربع

4 Read the following text and answer the questions below :

Amphibians can live on land and on water, but they need water or a moist habitat to survive. Like reptiles, amphibians are cold-blooded and they lay eggs. However, amphibians, like frogs and toads, always lay their eggs in water. They have smooth skin, not scales. They amphibians can take in oxygen through their skin and their lungs. They also absorb water through their skin.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The main idea of the text is about ....
   a. mammals b. birds c. reptiles d. amphibians
2. Amphibians can take in oxygen through their ....
   a. skin b. lungs c. eyes d. skin and lungs

B. Answer the following questions :

3. What do amphibians need to stay alive ?

   ....

4. Can amphibians drink water by using their mouth ?

   ....

(Minia - Dir Mawas 2022 / Menofia - Sadat 2022)

5 The reader

A Read and write T (True) or F (False).

	T	F
1. Zeinab and her grandfather visited the park.	☐	☐
2. Zeinab loved the Khayameya design with flowers at her grandfather's shop.	☐	☐

(Qena - Dishna 2022 / Fayoum - Youssef El-Sedeek 2022)

B Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The Khayameya design of flower takes .... to be done.
   a. two weeks b. four months c. one year d. four days
2. Grandfather's design is made of thousands and thousands of small ....
   a. stitches b. stickers c. photos d. machines

(Damietta - Rawda 2022 - Sharqia - Faqous 2022)

Notes for parents

4. Ask your child to read the text and answer the given questions.
اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ النص ويجيب عن الأسئلة المعطاه له
5. Ask your child to read and answer the questions according to the events of the story.
اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويجيب عن الأسئلة طبقًا لأحداث القصة

C. Writing

6 Choose the correct word from a, b, c or d.

1. The whale shark is the .... fish. *(Assuit - El Badari 2022)*
   a. bigger b. big c. biggest d. bigger than
2. Speak .... The baby is sleeping. *(Giza - Agouza 2022)*
   a. quiet b. quietly c. soft d. good
3. The camel is taller .... the horse. *(Gharbia - Kotoor 2022)*
   a. there b. then c. than d. their
4. Why are you running .... , Ehab ? *(Menofia - Tala 2022)*
   a. quick b. fast c. slow d. noisy

7 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. mammals - Bats - the only - fly - are - that. *(Aswan - Darwa 2022)*

   ....

2. lay - vertebrates - Which - eggs ? *(Qena - Nag Hammadi 2022)*

   ....

8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements.

Having a pet

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

Guiding elements :

species / look after / attention / care / expensive

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

(Damietta - El Zaraa / Cairo - El Matareya 2022)

6. Ask your child to choose the correct answer. - اطلب من طفلك أن يختار الإجابة الصحيحة
7. Ask your child to order the words and write the sentences correctly. - اطلب من طفلك أن يرتب الكلمات ويكتب الجمل بشكل صحيح
8. Ask your child to write a text of fifty (50) words using the guiding words. - اطلب من طفلك أن يكتب نص مكون من (٥٠) كلمة مستخدمًا الكلمات الارشادية

Unit 3 My world

عالمى



لإتقان الوحدة

- استخدام كارت **المعاصر** للقراءة والكتابة.
- Test your skills في نهاية الوحدة.
- كراسة **المعاصر** للمهارات.
- كراسة **المعاصر** التفاعلية.
- التقييمات الشهرية فى الكراسة التفاعلية.

Aims of Unit Three :

ـداف العامة للوحدة الثالثة :

In this unit I will .....

ي هذه الوحدة سوف.....

- understand what makes a community.
  - افهم ما يُكَوِّن المجتمع.
- understand and use possessive forms.
  - افهم واستخدم صيغ الملكية.
- learn about the history of Egypt.
  - اتعلم عن تاريخ مصر.
- form and use regular and irregular past simple verbs.
  - اكون واستخدم زمن الماضى البسيط مع الأفعال المنتظمة والغير منتظمة.
- read about the governorates of Lower and Upper Egypt.
  - ر عن محافظات الوجه البحرى والقبلى من مصر.
- learn about Egyptian folk music.
  - لم عن الموسيقى الشعبية المصرية.
- make a tourist information guide.
  - ـد دليل معلومات سياحية.

Lesson 1

• My Community



Vocabulary

★ Listen and repeat. استمع وردد.

Key vocabulary

community	مجتمع	sports club	نادي رياضي
neighborhood	حي (مكان الإقامة)	citizenship	المواطنة
neighbors	جيران	mixture	مزيج / خليط

Extra vocabulary

group	مجموعة	street	شارع
activities	أنشطة	shop	محل (متجر صغير)
ideas	أفكار	society	مجتمع
probably	من المحتمل	weather	الطقس
city	مدينة كبيرة	games	ألعاب
village	قرية	cousin	ابن / ابنة (العم/الخال)
kind	عطوف / طيب	clothes	ملابس
fair way	طريقة عادلة	house	منزل
polite	مهذب	civilization	حضارة
helpful	متعاون	tourists	سائحون

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular

Present		Past
believe	يؤمن/يصدِّق	believed
share	يشارك	shared
act	يؤدي/يفعل	acted
include	يشمل/يتضمن	included
behave	يتصرف	behaved

Irregular

Present		Past
think	يعتقد/يفكر	thought

• Help your child listen to the words and repeat them. - ساعد طفلك أن يستمع إلى الكلمات ويرددهم

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

in the same area	فى نفس المنطقة	close to	بالقرب من
more than	أكثر من	What is special about ... ?	ما المميز عن ... ؟
for me	بالنسبة لى	look after	يعتنى بـ
part of	جزء من	from different parts of	من أجزاء مختلفة من
act in a way ...	يتصرف بطريقة ...	drop trash	يلقى القمامة
good for	جيد بالنسبة لـ		
work hard	يعمل بجد		



Pop Quiz on Vocabulary



- **Look and write the missing letters.**

1. 

sp _ _ t _ c _ _ b

2. 

s _ _ _ et

3. 

ne _ _ hb _ _ _

4. 

vi _ _ ag _

Read and identify these definitions. اقرأ وتعرف.

Word	Definition
community مجتمع	a group of people who live together in the same area and share activities and ideas مجموعة من الناس يعيشون معًا فى نفس المنطقة ويتشاركون فى الأنشطة والأفكار
neighborhood حى	the streets, houses, shops and schools close to where you live الشوارع والمنازل والمحلات والمدارس القريبة من المكان الذى تعيش فيه
citizenship المواطنة	behaving in a way that helps your society أن تتصرف بطريقة ما لتساعد مجتمعك

Notes for parents

- Ask your child to look at the pictures and write the missing letters. اطلب من طفلك أن ينظر إلى الصور ويكتب الحروف الناقصة
- Help your child read and identify the definitions. ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويتعرف على التعريفات

Egypt is one of the oldest civilizations on Earth. It became powerful over 5,000 years ago.
مصر واحدة من أقدم الحضارات على الأرض. أصبحت قوية منذ أكثر من ٥٠٠٠ عام

⭐ Look, listen and read. انظر، استمع واقرأ.

My community





A community(1) is a group of people who live and work together in the same area. A community is more than your house, family, or your neighborhood(2). It is a mixture(3) of people, places, activities, and ideas. My community includes my family, my friends, and my school. There are probably important places in your city or village that you often visit. You can also have a community there. For me, I am part of the community at my sports club too. When you act in a way that is good for your community, this is good citizenship(4). This means that you work hard to help other people, and behave(5) in a kind and fair(6) way. Good citizenship is a good part of being in a community. I am always polite(7) and helpful(8) at school, and at my sports club.

Check Vocabulary

(1) مجتمع
(2) حى
(3) خليط
(4) مواطنة
(5) يتصرف
(6) عادل
(7) مهذب
(8) متعاون

Language

1 Demonstrative pronouns ضمائر الاشارة

Singular المفرد

We use "This" to talk about something near. تستخدم (This) للحديث عن شىء مفرد قريب	→	This	is	a red T-shirt.
We use "That" to talk about something far. تستخدم (That) للحديث عن شىء مفرد بعيد	→	That		a camera.

ex. - This is a book. →  - That is a book. → 

• Help your child look at the pictures, listen to the text and read it. - ساعد طفلك أن ينظر إلى الصور، يستمع إلى النص ويقرأه

مجتمعى ! المجتمع هو مجموعة من الأشخاص يعيشون ويعملون سويًا فى نفس المنطقة. المجتمع هو أكثر من منزلك، عائلتك أو الحى الخاص بك. هو مزيج من الأشخاص والأماكن والأنشطة والأفكار. يشمل مجتمعى عائلتى، أصدقائى ومدرستى. وهناك على الأرجح أماكن مهمة فى مدينتك أو قريتك غالبًا ما تزورها. يمكنك أيضًا أن يكون لديك مجتمع هناك. بالنسبة لى، أنا جزء من المجتمع فى النادى الرياضى الخاص بى أيضًا. فعندما تتصرف بطريقة جيدة تجاه مجتمعك فهذه مواطنة جيدة. وهذا يعنى أن عليك أن تعمل بجد لتساعد الأشخاص الآخرين وتتصرف بطريقة لطيفة وعادلة. إن المواطنة الصالحة جزء جيد من كونك فى مجتمع. أنا دائمًا مهذبة ومتعاونة فى المدرسة وفى النادى الرياضى الخاص بى.

Plural الجمع

We use "These" to talk about things that are near. تستخدم (These) للحديث عن اسم جمع قريب	→	These	are	nice sunglasses.
We use "Those" to talk about things that are far. تستخدم (Those) للحديث عن اسم جمع بعيد	→	Those		brown jackets.

ex. - These are books. → - Those are books. →



Pop Quiz on Language

- **Read and choose.**

1. That (is - are) a beautiful flower.
2. (That - Those) are my favorite dresses.
3. (This - Those) is my school.
4. (These - That) are my crayons.
5. That (is - are) an octopus.
6. Those (are - is) apples.
7. (This - Those) is my brother.
8. (That - Those) is our house.
9. (These - This) is my neighborhood.
10. These (is - are) my friends.

Notes for parents

- Help your child to identify and use the demonstrative pronouns.
- Ask your child to read and choose the correct answer.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على ويستخدم ضمائر الإشارة

اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويختار الإجابة الصحيحة

2 Possessive Pronouns ضمائر الملكية

Subject pronouns ضمائر الفاعل		Possessive adjectives صفات الملكية		Possessive pronouns ضمائر الملكية	
تستخدم قبل الفعل		تستخدم قبل الاسم المملوك		تستخدم بدلًا من صفات الملكية والمملوك معًا ولا يأتي بعدها اسم	
I	أنا	my	ملكي	mine	ملكي
You	أنتَ/أنتم/أنتن	your	ملكك/ملككم	yours	ملكك / ملككم
He	هو	his	ملكه	his	ملكه
She	هي	her	+ noun ملكها	hers	ملكها
We	نحن	our	ملكنا	ours	ملكنا
They	هم	their	ملكهم	theirs	ملكهم
It	هو/هي لغير العاقل	its	ملكه/ملكها (لغير العاقل)	—	—

 تستخدم ضمائر الملكية للتعبير عن ملكية شخص أو أشخاص لشئ معين.

ex. - This book is mine. هذا الكتاب ملكي.



- This umbrella is hers. هذه الشمسية ملكها.



 ضمائر الملكية غالبًا ما تأتي في نهاية الجملة.

ex. That ice cream is mine! It isn't yours.

ذلك الآيس كريم ملكي! إنه ليس ملكك.



 لا نستخدم اسم (noun) بعد ضمائر الملكية.

ex. - This is my bag. It's mine. هذه حقيبتي. إنها ملكي.



- That is his shirt. It's his. ذلك قميصه. إنه ملكه.



• Help your child to identify and use the possessive forms. ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على ويستخدم صيغ الملكية



Pop Quiz on Language

1 Read and circle the correct answer.

1. Omnia left her / their school book on the bus.
2. Is this pencil hers / her ?
3. That cat is mine / my .
4. Are these beautiful paintings your / yours ?
5. The dog eats it / its food.
6. The red truck is his / my .



2 Choose the correct possessive pronoun to replace the underlined noun.

1. We watched <u>the cat's</u> babies as they were playing.
   a. their b. our c. its
2. The pencil is <u>Hamza's</u>.
   a. its b. his c. her
3. <u>The sister's</u> dream was to become a doctor.
   a. Our b. His c. Her
4. <u>Omar and Yassin's</u> parrot can say "Hello".
   a. Our b. Their c. Its

3 Read and choose the correct pronoun.

1. I wrote .... (my - mine) name on the paper.
2. I think that this skateboard is .... (its - his).
3. Have you seen .... (ours - our) dog ?

Notes for parents

1. Ask your child to read the sentences and circle the correct answer.
اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ الجمل ويضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة
2. Ask your child to choose the correct pronouns to replace the underlined nouns.
اطلب من طفلك أن يختار الضمائر ويستبدلها بالأسماء التي تحتها خط
3. Ask your child to read and choose the correct pronoun.
اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويختار الضمير الصحيح

Dictation

- لإتقان مهارة الكتابة استخدم كارت المعاصر من نهاية الكتاب

Read and spell	Complete	Write
community	co _ _ _ nity	
neighborhood	ne _ _ _ borh _ _ d	
sports club	sp _ _ ts c _ _ _	
citizenship	ci _ _ _ ens _ ip	
mixture	mi _ _ ure	
share	s _ ar _	
neighbors	n _ _ g _ b _ rs	
polite	p _ l _ te	
society	s _ c _ et _	
street	str _ _ t	
kind	k _ n _	
city	c _ t _	
village	v _ _ lag _	

• Help your child read, spell , complete and write the words.

• ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ، يتهجى، يكمل ويكتب الكلمات

General Exercises on Lesson 1

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

• Understand • Apply • Create

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. A .... is a group of people who live together in the same area.
   a. citizenship b. community c. neighborhood d. city
2. My community includes my family, my .... , and my school.
   a. friends b. sisters c. brothers d. cousins
3. A good .... is acting in a way that helps your society.
   a. neighbor b. village c. citizenship d. community
4. I am always .... and helpful at school.
   a. polite b. happy c. good d. angry



2 Read and complete the dialogue from the words in the box.

sports club - live - city - work

Nabil : Good morning, Mourad. Where do you (1) .... ?
Mourad : Good morning, Nabil. I live in a (2) ....
Nabil : Who do you live with ?
Mourad : I live with my family.
Nabil : What are the things you can do at the city ?
Mourad : I can go to the (3) ....
Nabil : That's great !
Mourad : Yes,of course.

Notes for parents
1. Ask your child to listen and circle the correct answer. · اطلب من طفلك أن يستمع ويضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة
2. Ask your child to read and complete the dialogue from the given words. · اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويكمل المحادثة من الكلمات المعطاة

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. That is my cat. The cat is ....
   a. his b. hers c. yours d. mine
2. I didn't believe .... story.
   a. her b. yours c. ours d. hers
3. .... boots look very expensive.
   a. They b. These c. That d. This
4. These .... fun games.
   a. do b. have c. are d. is

4 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. is - a mixture - A community - people - of.

....

2. club - sports - my - I am - part of - at - the community.

....

5 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements.

Your community

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

Guiding questions :

- Where do you live ?
- Who do you live with ?
- What is special about your community ?
- What things can you do ?



3. Ask your child to choose the correct answer. - اطلب من طفلك أن يختار الإجابة الصحيحة
4. Ask your child to reorder the words to make correct sentences. - اطلب من طفلك أن يعيد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جمل صحيحة
5. Ask your child to write a text of fifty (50) words using the guiding questions. - اطلب من طفلك أن يكتب نص مكون من (٥٠) كلمة مستخدمًا الأسئلة الإرشادية

Lesson 2

• The History of Egypt





استمع وردد.

Key vocabulary

history	تاريخ	scribe	كاتب - ناسخ
Ancient Egypt	مصر القديمة	hieroglyphs	اللغة الهيروغليفية
tombs	مقابر/ مدافن	pharaoh	فرعون
Lower Egypt	الوجه البحرى	hieroglyphic	هيروغليفى
Upper Egypt	الوجه القبلى	Ptolemy dynasty	سلالة البطالمة
unite	يوحد		

Extra vocabulary

interesting	ممتع / شيق	special	مميز / خاص
BCE "Before the Common Era"	قبل الميلاد	powerful	قوى - ذو نفوذ
		Old Kingdom	المملكة القديمة
separate	منفصل	Middle Kingdom	المملكة الوسطى
area	مساحة / منطقة	New Kingdom	المملكة الجديدة
north	الشمال	ruling dynasties	السلالات الحاكمة
south	الجنوب	pyramid	هرم
desert	صحراء	stone	حجر
boat	قارب	symbols	رموز
papyrus reeds	عيدان نبات البردى	the Nile	نهر النيل
main	أساسى - رئيسى	signs	علامات
ink	حبر	museum	متحف

Notes for parents

- Help your child listen to the words and repeat them.

- ساعد طفلك أن يستمع إلى الكلمات ويردده

The Pyramid of Djoser is the oldest pyramid in the world. People started building it in about 2648 - 2627 BCE.
There are over 700 hieroglyphic symbols.

- هرم زوسر (الهرم المدرج) هو أقدم هرم فى العالم بدأ الناس بناؤه فى حوالى ٢٦٤٨ - ٢٦٢٧ قبل الميلاد
- هناك أكثر من ٧٠٠ رمزًا هيروغليفى

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular

Present		Past
start	يبدأ	started
flow	يتدفق	flowed
rule	يحكم	ruled
control	يتحكم	controlled
sail	يبحر	sailed
join	ينظم/يتصل	joined
die	يموت	died

Irregular

Present		Past
become	يصبح	became
build	يبنى	built
be (am/is/are)	يكون	was/were
mean	يعنى	meant
read	يقرأ	read
make	يصنع	made
spend	يقضى	spent
write	يكتب	wrote

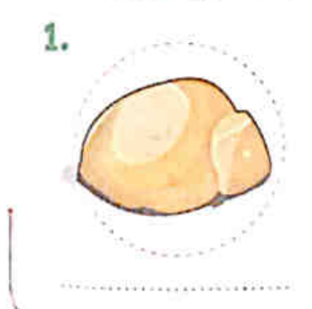
Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

At first	فى البداية
flow through	يمر/ يتدفق من خلال
in about	فى حوالى
as far as	حتى - لكى
rule for many years	يحكم لعدة سنوات
the Pyramid of Djoser	الهرم المدرج للملك زوسر
know so much about	يعرف الكثير عن
at the time	فى عصر/وقت
write down	يدون - يسجل
work for the ruling dynasties	يعمل لدى السلالات الحاكمة
write on stone	ينقش على الحجر
made from	مصنوع من
live near the Nile	يعيش بالقرب من النيل
become powerful	يصبح ذو نفوذ/سلطة
flow out to sea	تنساب/تتدفق إلى مياه البحر



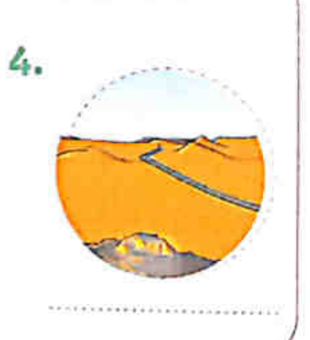
Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

• Look and write the words.

1. 
....

2. 
....

3. 
....

4. 
....

• Ask your child to look at the pictures and write the words. - اطلب من طفلك أن ينظر إلى الصور ويكتب الكلمات

Pop Quiz تدرب على ٩٩ من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع

Look and read. انظر واقرأ.

What are the three main parts of the history of ancient Egypt ?

Egypt is a country(1) with a very long and interesting history(2). People started to live near the Nile about 9,000 years ago, in 7000 BCE. At first, there were two separate areas. Lower Egypt was in the north, where the Nile joins the sea. Upper Egypt was in the south, where the Nile flows(3) through the deserts of Africa. In about 3200 BCE, one pharaoh(4), Mena joined these two parts to unite the country of Egypt. Egypt controlled the Nile as far as boats could sail on it, so it became very powerful. There are three main parts to the history of ancient Egypt :



Check Vocabulary
(1) دولة
(2) تاريخ
(3) يتدفق
(4) فرعون
(5) سلالات حاكمة

the Old Kingdom	the Middle Kingdom	the New Kingdom
[2800 - 2200 BCE]	[2065 - 1775 BCE]	[1570 - 1098 BCE]

Important dynasties(5) controlled Egypt for many years. These were important families who ruled the country.

Choose the correct answer :

Learn 1. Mena joined the north and south to .... Egypt.
a. start b. divide c. unite d. mix

Practice 2. A dynasty was an important .... that ruled for many years.
a. person b. family c. pharaoh d. kingdom

Notes for parents
• Help your child look at the picture and read the text.

ساعد طفلك أن ينظر إلى الصورة ويقرأ النص.

مصر هى دولة ذات تاريخ طويل جدًا وممتع بدأ الناس العيش بالقرب من النيل منذ حوالى ٩,٠٠٠ عام، فى عام ٧,٠٠٠ قبل الميلاد فى البداية، كان هناك منطقتان منفصلتان هى مصر السفلى وكانت فى الشمال حيث يتقابل النيل مع البحر وصعيد مصر فى الجنوب، حيث يتدفق النيل عبر صحارى أفريقيا فى حوالى ٣٢٠٠ قبل الميلاد، ضم أحد الفراعنة ويدعى مينا الجزئين لتوحيد دولة مصر كانت مصر تتحكم فى نهر النيل حتى تستطيع القوارب أن تبحر فيه، لذلك أصبحت ذات نفوذ قوى

توجد ثلاثة أجزاء رئيسية لتاريخ مصر القديمة :
١- المملكة القديمة من عام ٢٨٠٠ إلى ٢٢٠٠ قبل الميلاد ٢- المملكة الوسطى من عام ٢٠٦٥ إلى ١٧٧٥ قبل الميلاد ٣- المملكة الحديثة من عام ١٥٧٠ إلى ١٠٩٨ قبل الميلاد
سيطرت سلالات حاكمة هامة على مصر لسنوات عديدة هذه العائلات الهامة هم من حكموا البلاد

Listen, look and read. استمع، انظر واقرأ.

Pop Quiz | تدرب على ٢٩ من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع



How do we know so much about the history of Egypt ? Egyptians(1) at that time used scribes to write down everything that happened. Scribes(2) were very important people. They worked for the ruling dynasties(3).

They wrote in hieroglyphs(4), which are pictures or symbols that can mean one word or many ideas. We can see these hieroglyphs today in tombs and museums. Children learnt to become a scribe at school. Scribes wrote on stone, or on paper made from papyrus reeds(5).

Check Vocabulary

- (1) المصريين
- (2) الكتبة
- (3) الأسر الحاكمة
- (4) اللغة الهيروغليفية
- (5) أعواد نبات البردى

Answer the following questions :

Learn 1. Why did the ancient Egyptians use scribes ?
- To write down everything that happened.

Practice 2. Where can we see hieroglyphs today ?

....

Language

The past simple tense زمن الماضى البسيط

A Verb to (Be) in the Past Simple Tense

الفعل "يكون" فى زمن الماضى البسيط



I / He / she / It / اسم مفرد + was
They / you / we/ اسم جمع + were

Rami was at the Pyramids yesterday.
She was at home two hours ago.
They were at the zoo last week.

- Help your child to listen, look at the picture and read the text. ساعد طفلك أن يستمع، ينظر إلى الصورة ويقرأ النص
- Help your child learn about verb to "be" in the past simple tense. ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم عن فعل "يكون" فى زمن الماضى البسيط

كيف لنا أن نعرف الكثير عن تاريخ مصر ؟ استخدم المصريون الكتبة فى عصرهم ليدونوا كل شيء حدث. كان الكتبة أشخاص مهمين للغاية. لقد كانوا يعملون لدى الأسر الحاكمة. كانوا يكتبون بالهيروغليفية والتى كانت عبارة عن صور أو رموز التى كانت تعنى كلمة واحدة أو عدة أفكار. يمكننا أن نرى الكتابة الهيروغليفية اليوم فى المقابر والمتاحف. لقد تعلم الأطفال ليصبحوا كتبة فى المدارس. فالكتبة كانوا يكتبون على الأحجار وعلى الورق المصنوع من أعواد نبات البردى.



I / He / She / It / اسم مفرد + was not = wasn't

They / you / we/ اسم جمع + were not = weren't





They weren't at the hospital.

She wasn't at home.

وتستخدم هذه الكلمات "... ago / yesterday / last ..." للدلالة على زمن الماضى البسيط.



B The Past Simple Tense with "Regular verbs"

زمن الماضى البسيط مع الأفعال المنتظمة.

Usage الاستخدام

⭐ يستخدم زمن الماضى البسيط للتعبير عن حدث تم وإنتهى فى الماضى.

Subject الفاعل + **inf.** مصدر الفعل + (ed / d / ied)

Affirmative Statements
الجمل الخبرية المثبتة

- They listened to stories.



- My mother cooked breakfast.



Notes for parents

- Help your child learn about the past simple tense with regular verbs and irregular verbs.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم عن زمن الماضى البسيط مع الأفعال المنتظمة والغير منتظمة

Rule	Examples	Arabic
Most verbs Add - ed	watch → watched look → looked	• معظم الأفعال المنتظمة يضاف إليها (ed).
Verbs that ending in vowel + consonant Double consonant + ed	drop → dropped	• الأفعال التى تنتهى بحرف ساكن مسبوق بحرف متحرك يضاعف الحرف الساكن الأخير ثم يضاف إلى الفعل (ed).
Verbs that ending in e Add - d	bake → baked close → closed	• الأفعال التى تنتهى بـ (e) يضاف إليها (d) فقط.
Verbs that ending in consonant + y Change (y) to (i) and add - ed	study → studied	• الأفعال التى تنتهى بـ(y) قبلها حرف ساكن نحذف الـ (y) ويضاف إلى الفعل(ied).
Verbs that ending in vowel + y Add - ed	play → played	• الأفعال التى تنتهى بـ(y)قبلها حرف متحرك (a - e - i - o - u) يضاف إليها (ed).

C The Past Simple Tense with "Irregular verbs"

زمن الماضى البسيط مع الأفعال غير المنتظمة.

Formation التكوين

 يتكون من التصريف الثانى للفعل غير المنتظم (يحفظ كما هو).

Meaning	Present	Past
يشرب	drink	drank
يرى	see	saw
يأكل	eat	ate
يملك/ يتناول	have	had

Meaning	Present	Past
يفوز	win	won
يشترى	buy	bought
يذهب	go	went
يأخذ	take	took

• Help your child learn about the past simple tense with regular verbs and irregular verbs.

- ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم عن زمن الماضى البسيط مع الأفعال المنتظمة والغير منتظمة



Subject الفاعل **+** التصريف الثانى للفعل **+** تكملة الجملة.



They saw a show.
التصريف الثانى للفعل



She took pictures.
التصريف الثانى للفعل



I / He / She / It / They / You / we/ + **did not (didn't)** + مصدر الفعل (inf.)

ex. - She didn't watch the sunrise.
- She didn't clean the tent.
- She didn't see the show.





Did **I / he / she / it / you / we / they** + مصدر الفعل (inf.) + باقي السؤال **?**

Short answers الإجابات المختصرة

Yes, +	**I / he / she / it / you / we / they** +	**did.**	عند الإثبات
No,		**didn't.**	عند النفى

ex. - Did you listen to stories ? - Yes, I did.
- Did she clean the tent ? - No, she didn't.

لاحظ أن عند السؤال بـ "هل ... ؟" باستخدام (Did) يكون الفعل فى المصدر (inf.).

Key words :

من الكلمات الدالة على زمن الماضى البسيط

in the past في الماضي
(فترة زمنية) + ago منذ
yesterday أمس



عند تكوين السؤال المبدوء بكلمة استفهام فى زمن الماضى البسيط نستخدم :

question word + did + he / she / it / we / you / they + مصدر الفعل (inf.) + باقى السؤال ?

- Where did you go yesterday ?
- I went to the museum yesterday.

Pop Quiz on Language

- **Choose the correct answer from a ,b, c or d**

1. Not everyone in ancient Egypt .... to read and write.
   a. learns b. learned c. learn d. learning
2. Scribes .... with reed brushes and ink in the past.
   a. writing b. writes c. write d. wrote
3. .... she play the piano ? - Yes, she did.
   a. Has b. Does c. Did d. Do
4. She .... to the zoo yesterday.
   a. go b. went c. goes d. going
5. They .... hieroglyphs and hieratic scripts in the past.
   a. studied b. study c. studies d. to study
6. People .... to live near the Nile in 7000 BCE.
   a. starting b. started c. start d. starts
7. He .... in the school yesterday.
   a. is b. was c. did d. were
8. You .... happy yesterday.
   a. were b. was c. is d. are

* Ask your child to choose the correct answer. . اطلب من طفلك أن يختار الإجابة الصحيحة

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Egyptians at that time used .... to write down everything that happened.
   a. vets b. scribes c. engineers d. doctors
2. Scribes worked for the ruling ....
   a. dynasties b. symbols c. stones d. signs
3. Scribes wrote in ....
   a. Arabic b. English c. hieroglyphs d. French
4. Children learnt to become a scribe at ....
   a. home b. office c. hotel d. school



2 Listen and complete.

1. Egypt is a country with a very long ....
2. People started to live near the .... about nine thousand years ago.
3. Lower Egypt was in the ....
4. Upper Egypt was in the ....

3 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. was – Egypt – Where – Lower ?

   ....

2. very – people – Scribes – important – were.

   ....

Notes for parents

1. Ask your child to listen and circle the correct answer. اطلب من طفلك أن يستمع ويضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة
2. Ask your child listen and complete the sentences with the correct words. اطلب من طفلك أن يستمع ويكمل الجمل بالكلمات الصحيحة.
3. Ask your child to reorder the words to make correct sentences. اطلب من طفلك أن يعيد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جمل صحيحة

4 Read the following text and answer the questions below.

Lower Egypt was in the north, where the Nile joins the sea. Upper Egypt was in the south, where the Nile flows through the deserts of Africa. In about 3200 BCE, one pharaoh, Mena joined these two parts to unite the country of Egypt. Egypt controlled the Nile as far as boats could sail on it, so it became very powerful.

A. Choose the correct answer.

1. Upper Egypt was in the ....
   a. north   b. south   c. east   d. west
2. Boats could .... on the Nile of Egypt.
   a. unite   b. miss   c. control   d. sail

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Where was Lower Egypt ?

....

4. Who united the two parts of Egypt ?

....

5 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements.

Scribes

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

Guiding words :

write down – in hieroglyphs – symbols – tombs – paper – papyrus reeds

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

4. Ask your child to read the text and answer the given questions.

. اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ النص ويجيب عن الأسئلة المعطاة له

5. Ask your child to write a text of fifty (50) words using the given guiding words.

. اطلب من طفلك أن يكتب نص مكون من حوالي (٥٠) كلمة مستخدمًا الكلمات الارشادية

Lesson 3

• The Governorates of Egypt



Vocabulary



★ Listen and repeat. استمع وردد.

Key vocabulary

The governorates of Egypt محافظات مصر

governorate	محافظة	Damietta	محافظة دمياط
capital city	عاصمة	Ismailia	محافظة الإسماعيلية
Cairo	محافظة القاهرة	Aswan	محافظة أسوان
Giza	محافظة الجيزة	New Valley	محافظة الوادى الجديد
Alexandria	محافظة الإسكندرية	Red Sea	محافظة البحر الأحمر
Qalyubia	محافظة القليوبية	Aswan	محافظة أسوان
Suez	محافظة السويس	Asyut	محافظة أسيوط
Port Said	محافظة بورسعيد	Beni Suef	محافظة بنى سويف
Beheira	محافظة البحيرة	Minya	محافظة المنيا
Monufia	محافظة المنوفية	Luxor	محافظة الأقصر
Sharqia	محافظة الشرقية	Matruh	محافظة مطروح
Gharbia	محافظة الغربية	North Sinai	محافظة شمال سيناء
Dakahlia	محافظة الدقهلية	South Sinai	محافظة جنوب سيناء
Kafr El Sheikh	محافظة كفر الشيخ	Sohag	محافظة سوهاج
Faiyum	محافظة الفيوم	Qena	محافظة قنا

Extra vocabulary

map	خريطة	region	منطقة
large cities	مدن كبرى	the countryside	الريف
How many ... ?	كم العدد .... ؟	popular	محبوب / مشهور
Which ... ?	أيهما ... ؟ (للتخيير)	scuba diving	الغطس تحت الماء (باستخدام أنبوب التنفس)
How big .... ?	كم الحجم .... ؟		
farthest	الأبعد	water sports	رياضات مائية
Upper Egypt	صعيد مصر	the High Dam	السد العالى
natural features	السمات الطبيعية	port	ميناء
population	عدد السكان	oasis	واحة

Notes for parents

• Help your child listen to the words and repeat them. ساعد طفلك أن يستمع إلى الكلمات ويرددهم

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular

Present		Past
visit	يزور	visited
finish	ينهي	finished
sail	يبحر	sailed

Irregular

Present		Past
are	يكون	were
is	يكون	was
have / has	يملك	had

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

look at	ينظر إلى	find places on the map يجد أماكن على الخريطة
next to the sea	بجانب / بجوار البحر	lots of = a lot of الكثير من
sail in ...	يبحر داخل	
sail out of ...	يبحر خارج	



Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

- **Look and write.**

1. 
....

2. 

....

3. 
....

4. 
....

- Ask your child to look at the pictures and write the correct word under each picture.

- اطلب من طفلك أن ينظر إلى الصور ويكتب الكلمة الصحيحة أسفل كل صورة.

 Look, listen and read.

Pop Quiz | تدرب على ٢٩ من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع

The governorates of Egypt

There are 27 governorates(1) in Egypt today. Look at the map(2). Where do you live ?



Check Vocabulary

(1) محافظات
(2) خريطة
(3) الغوص تحت الماء (باستخدام أنبوب التنفس)
(4) عاصمة



I'm Fares, and I live in the Red Sea Governorate. It has a beach which is over 1,000 km. It's a very popular place to visit for scuba diving(3) and water sports.





I'm Nadia, and I live in Aswan Governorate. It's the farthest south in Upper Egypt. Its capital(4) is Aswan. In 1970, engineers finished the Aswan High Dam.





I'm Ibrahim, and I live in Alexandria Governorate. It's important because lots of ships sail in and out of the port. The city of Alexandria used to be the capital city of Egypt.



Notes for parents

- Help your child to look, listen and read the text.

ساعد طفلك أن ينظر، يستمع ويقرأ النص

محافظات مصر . يوجد سبعة وعشرون محافظة فى مصر اليوم. انظر إلى الخريطة. أين تعيش ؟
أنا فارس، وأعيش فى محافظة البحر الأحمر. إن بها شاطىء يبلغ طوله ١,٠٠٠ كم. إنه مكان مشهور جدا للزيارة من أجل رياضة الغوص تحت الماء والرياضات المائية
أنا نادية، وأعيش فى محافظة أسوان. إنها الأبعد فى جنوب صعيد مصر وعاصمتها هى مدينة أسوان. فى عام ١٩٧٠ ، أنهى المهندسون بناء السد العالى فى أسوان.
أنا ابراهيم، وأعيش فى محافظة الإسكندرية. إنها محافظة هامة لأن الكثير من السفن تبحر إلى داخل وخارج الميناء. كانت مدينة الإسكندرية عاصمة لمصر فى الماضى

General Exercises on Lesson 3

نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب

• Understand • Apply • Create

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Nadia lives in .... Governorate.
   a. Red Sea b. Aswan c. Luxor d. Alexandria
2. It's the farthest south in .... Egypt.
   a. Lower b. Upper c. up d. down
3. .... finished the High Dam in 1970.
   a. Vets b. Doctors c. Engineers d. Nurses
4. The capital of Upper Egypt is ....
   a. Aswan b. Luxor c. Cairo d. Alexandria

2 Listen and complete.

1. New Valley doesn't have a big ....
2. The .... of New Valley Governorate is Kharga.
3. Kharga is a / an .... town.
4. New Valley .... is 440,098 km² in size.

3 Read and complete the dialogue from the words in the box.

Aswan – important – Where – Cairo

Walaa : Welcome to Cairo. Is it your first visit to (1).................... ?

Basma : Yes, it is.

Walaa : (2).................... do you live ?

Basma : I live in Alexandria.

Walaa : Why is Alexandria (3).................... ?

Basma : Because lots of ships sail in and out of the port.

Walaa : Great ! I wish you would enjoy your visit in Cairo.

Basma : Thank you.

1. Ask your child to listen and circle the correct answer. - اطلب من طفلك أن يستمع ويضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.
2. Ask your child to listen and complete the sentences with the correct answer. - اطلب من طفلك أن يستمع ويكمل الجمل بالإجابة الصحيحة.
3. Ask your child to read and complete the given dialogue. - اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويكمل المحادثة المعطاة له.

4 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. Aswan - live - Governorate - I - in.

....

2. live - in - people - Egypt - How - many ?

....

3. do- live - Where - you ?

....

5 Read the following text and answer the questions below.

I'm Amr, and I live in the Red Sea Governorate. It has a beach which is over 1.000 km. It's a very popular place to visit for scuba diving and water sports.

I'm Ali, and I live in the Alexandria Governorate. It's important because lots of ships sail in and out of the port. The city of Alexandria used to be the capital city of Egypt.

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c & d :

1. The Red Sea Governorate has a/an .... which is over 1,000 km.
   a. oasis b. beach c. desert d. village
2. In Alexandria, ... sail in and out of the port.
   a. ships b. boats c. buses d. trains

B. Answer the following questions :

3. What is Red Sea Governorate famous for ?

....

4. Why is Alexandria important ?

....

Notes for parents

4. Ask your child to read and order the words then write the sentences correctly.
اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويرتب الكلمات ثم يكتب الجمل بطريقة صحيحة

5. Ask your child to read the text, then answer the given questions.
اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ النص ثم يجيب عن الأسئلة المعطاة



Lessons
4 & 5

- CLIL : Music
- Writing
- Folk dancing in Egypt



Vocabulary



Listen and repeat. استمع وردد.

Key vocabulary

folk dancing	الرقص الشعبي	costumes	أزياء خاصة
Nubian dancing	الرقص النوبي	culture	ثقافة
Raqs Assaya	الرقص بالعصا	wind instrument	آلة نفخ موسيقية
tradition	تقليد - عُرف	string instrument	آلة موسيقية وترية

Extra vocabulary

folk music	موسيقى شعبية	Nubian music	موسيقى نوبية
style	أسلوب	singing	الغناء
musician	موسيقار	drumming	قرع الطبول
Saidi music	الموسيقى الصعيدي	shaabi music	موسيقى شعبية
ney	الناي	simsimeya	آلة السمسمية
qanun	القانون	Bedouin music	الموسيقى البدوية
rebaba	الربابة	Tahtib	التحطيب
oud	العود	drum	الطبلة
shabbaba	الشبابة (آلة موسيقية بدوية)	oboe	أوبوا (آلة موسيقية تشبه المزمار)
clapping	التصفيق	violin	آلة الكمان
lively	مفعم بالحيوية والنشاط	key	أساسي / جوهري
rhythm	إيقاع - تناغم	fighting	قتال
occasion	مناسبة	tent maker	صانع الخيم
dancer	راقص	bright-colored	ذات ألوان زاهية
stick (Assaya)	عصا	poetry	الشعر
special	خاص	the Suez Canal	قناة السويس
patterns	أنماط	international	عالمي
Bedouin	بدوي	type	نوع

• Help your child listen to the words and repeat them.

• ساعد طفلك أن يستمع إلى الكلمات ويرددها.

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular

Present		Past
link	يربط	linked
include	يشمل	included
step	يخطو	stepped
perform	يؤدي	performed

Irregular

Present		Past
know	يعرف	knew
make	يصنع	made
wear	يرتدي	wore

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

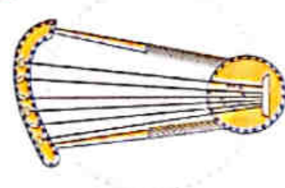
such as	مثل	all over Egypt	في جميع أنحاء مصر
farther south	أقصى الجنوب	put ...... into	يضع بداخل
the home of	موطن لـ	It is linked to	إنه مرتبط بـ
look like	يشبه		





Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

- Look and write the words.

1. 
....

2. 
....

3. 
....

Notes for parents

- Ask your child to look at the pictures and write the correct word under each picture.
اطلب من طفلك أن ينظر إلى الصور ويكتب الكلمة الصحيحة أسفل كل صورة

- Music was important in ancient Egypt, too. We know this because scribes made pictures of musicians playing instruments, and ancient Egyptians put instruments into pyramids.
كانت الموسيقى شيء هام في مصر القديمة أيضًا نعرف ذلك لأن الكتبة رسموا صور لموسيقيين يعزفون على الآلات ووضع المصريون القدماء الآلات داخل الأهرامات

⭐ Look and read. انظر واقرأ.

Pop Quiz | تدرب على ٢٩ من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع

What kind of music do you like ?

Egypt has lots of traditional folk music.
There are different styles from different parts of the country.
Folk musicians from Upper Egypt play Saidi music. This type of music uses string instruments(1) such as violins, and wind instruments such as the oboe.
Singing and drumming is also a key part.
Farther south is the home of Nubian music. Clapping(2) and drumming(3) is an important part of this type of music.
Nubian music is now popular all over Egypt.
Sometimes it is mixed(4) with other modern styles of music.
The most popular instruments in Bedouin music are the shabbaba and the rebaba. Bedouin music also often includes singing. Songs are usually about special events.

Check Vocabulary
- (1) الآلات الوترية
- (2) التصفيق
- (3) قرع الطبول
- (4) تدمج

Choose the correct answer :

Learn 1. The oboe is a .... instrument.
a. modern b. string c. key d. wind

Practice 2. Folk musicians from .... Egypt play Saidi music.
a. Lower b. Upper c. Up d. Down

- ساعد طفلك أن ينظر إلى الصورة ويقرأ النص.
• Help your child to look at the picture and read the text.

- إن مصر لديها الكثير من الموسيقى الشعبية التقليدية. هناك أنماط مختلفة من أجزاء مختلفة من البلاد. فالموسيقيون الشعبيون من صعيد مصر يعرفون الموسيقى الصعيدية فيستخدم هذا النوع من الموسيقى الآلات الوترية مثل الكمان وآلة النفخ مثل أوبوا. الغناء وقرع الطبول هو أيضًا جزء أساسي. يوجد في أقصى الجنوب موطن الموسيقى النوبية ويعد التصفيق وقرع الطبول جزء هامًا من هذا النوع من الموسيقى. ان الموسيقى النوبية معروفة حاليًا على مستوى مصر. أحيانًا تُدمج مع أنواع حديثة أخرى من الموسيقى أشهر الآلات الموسيقية البدوية هي الشبابة والربابة. تشمل الموسيقى البدوية الغناء. غالبًا تكون الأغاني حول المناسبات الخاصة.

 **Look, listen and read.** انظر، استمع واقرأ.

Folk dancing in Egypt



Folk dancing[1] has a long history in Egypt. It is linked to[2] the folk music of different areas. Nubian dancing is lively and colorful. People move their arms and feet to the rhythm[3] of the music. Raqs Assaya is probably the most famous dance from the Saidi musical tradition. The dancers use sticks (Assaya) and step quickly in special patterns. The Tahtib is also from the tradition[4] of Saidi music. The dancers carefully perform a dance with sticks[5] in a way that looks like fighting. Dancers wear special costumes. These can be dark and plain, or bright-colored and patterned.

In the cities alongside the Suez Canal, there are international types of music and dance. Musicians play the simsimeya, a Bedouin instrument, as well as drums.



Check Vocabulary

- الرقص الشعبي (1)
- ارتبط بـ (2)
- إيقاع (3)
- تقليد (4)
- عِصِيّ (5)

Answer the following questions :

Learn 1. Does folk dancing have a long history ?
- Yes, it does.

Practice 2. What do the dancers use in Saidi music ?

....

Notes for parents

- Help your child look, listen and read the text.

ساعد طفلك أن ينظر، يستمع ويقرأ النص
أن الرقص الشعبي له تاريخ طويل في مصر وهو مرتبط بالموسيقى الشعبية في مناطق مختلفة. فالرقص النوبي ذو حيوية وبهجة. الناس يحركون أذرعهم وأقدامهم
على إيقاع الموسيقى. إن الرقص بالعصا على الأرجح هو الرقص الأكثر شهرة في الموسيقى الصعيدية التقليدية. يستخدم الراقصون العصا (العصايا) ويخطون بسرعة
في أنماط خاصة. أيضًا التحطيب من تقاليد الموسيقى الصعيدية حيث يقوم الراقصون بالرقص بعناية بالعصا بطريقة تشبه القتال. يرتدي الراقصون أزياء خاصة
ويمكن أن تكون الملابس داكنة وسادة (ذات لون واحد) أو زاهية اللون بها نقوشات. في المدن المجاورة لقناة السويس هناك أنواع عالمية من الموسيقى والرقص.
يعزف العازفون على آلة السمسمية وهي آلة بدوية بجانب الطبول



Writing skill

Description وصف

★ When you write a description, use a mixture of adjectives and adverbs to make your writing more interesting.

★ عندما تكتب وصفًا ما، استخدم مزيج من الصفات والظروف لجعل كتابتك ممتعة أكثر.

Language

Remember تذكر

1 What's an adjective ? ما هى الصفة ؟

★ An adjective is a word that describes a noun and precedes it or it follows verb to be.

★ الصفة هى كلمة تصف الإسم وتسبقه أو تاتى بعد (verb to be).

ex. - It is a small cat. - This bag is big.

2 Adverbs of manner ظروف الحال (الكيفية)

Usage الاستخدام

★ We use adverbs of manner to describe how we do the action of a verb.

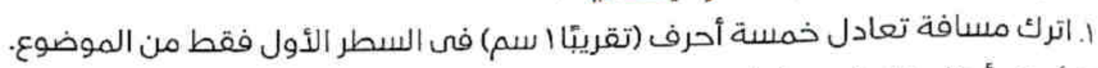
★ تستخدم ظروف الكيفية لوصف حدث / فعل (الطريقة التى يؤدى بها شخص ما شئ ما).

- الظرف يصف الفعل و يأتى بعده و يتكون من إضافة (ly) إلى الصفة المنتظمة. والظروف غير المنتظمة تحفظ كما هى.

adverb الظرف	adjective الصفة
Our team are playing badly.	They are quiet people.
	Our team are bad.
الظرف يصف الفعل و يأتى بعده.	الصفة تصف الاسم و تأتى قبله أو بعد (verb to be).

• Help your child to know how to make his writing interesting using adjectives and adverbs.

- ساعد طفلك أن يعرف كيف يجعل كتابته شيقة بإستخدام الصفات والأحوال



How to write a paragraph كيفية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية

⭐ القواعد العامة لكتابة فقرة إنشائية :

١. اترك مسافة تعادل خمسة أحرف (تقريبًا ١ سم) فى السطر الأول فقط من الموضوع.

٢. أن تبدأ كل كلمة بحرف Capital.

٣. أن تضع (.) واضحة فى نهاية كل جملة.

٤. إتبع كل علامات الترقيم.

٥. إبدأ جملتك بالفاعل ثم الفعل ونوع بدايات الجمل.

٦. إستخدم الزمن الصحيح والمناسب للموضوع الذى تكتبه.

٧. عليك باستخدام الجمل البسيطة وأن يكون لكل جملة معنى واضح.

٨. إجتهد فى تحسين خطك وذلك بترك مسافة بين كل كلمة وأخرى.

٩. استخدم القواعد بالشكل الصحيح.

The main parts of a paragraph الأجزاء الرئيسية للفقرة الإنشائية



1. The first sentence

- It is a topic or introduction sentence.
  - إنها جملة الموضوع أو المقدمة.
- It explains the main idea of the paragraph.
  - تشرح الفكرة الرئيسية للفقرة.

2. The last sentence

- It presents a summary of the topic in other words.
  - تقدم ملخصًا للموضوع بعبارات أخرى.

Note : Topic sentences in paragraphs should be developed with facts, definitions, and details.

يجب توضيح جمل الموضوع فى الفقرات الإنشائية بالحقائق والتعريفات والتفاصيل.

Notes for parents

- Help your child identify how to write a paragraph.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على كيفية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية

General Exercises on Lessons 4 & 5

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

• Understand • Apply • Create

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. .... made pictures of musicians playing instruments.
   a. Teachers b. Artists c. Scribes d. Engineers
2. Ancient Egyptians put instruments into ....
   a. homes b. pyramids c. schools d. museums
3. Music was important in .... Egypt.
   a. Ancient b. Upper c. Lower d. Modern
4. .... were playing instruments in Ancient Egypt.
   a. Players b. Doctors c. Vets d. Musicians

2 Listen and complete.

استمع واقرأ.

1. There is a long history of .... crafts in Egypt.
2. .... created khayameya to decorate huge tents for occasions.
3. Khayameya .... are beautifully designed using different colors.
4. You can buy .... in many traditional stores and markets.

3 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

wool – patterns – makers – quickly

Carpet making is an Egyptian craft. A skilled person can work (1) .... , but it takes many years to learn how to make an Egyptian carpet. The (2) .... are bright and colorful. Each carpet is made carefully, using Egyptian (3) .... Qashqai and Shirazi carpets are famous for the complicated patterns in red and blue.

1. Ask your child to listen and circle correct answer.
2. Ask your child to listen and complete the sentences.
3. Ask your child to read and complete the text with the words from the box.

- اطلب من طفلك أن يستمع ويضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة
- اطلب من طفلك أن يستمع ويكمل الجمل
- اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويكمل النص بكلمات من المربع

4 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. is - lively - and - Nubian - colorful - dancing.

   ....

2. has - history - a long - dancing - in Egypt - Folk.

   ....

3. music - do - like - What kind - you - of ?

   ....

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Marina is playing with the teddy bear ....
   a. happiest   b. happier   c. happy   d. happily
2. Amal was nervous and couldn't talk ....
   a. clear   b. clearly   c. clearest   c. clearer
3. Mohammed is a .... driver.
   a. careful   b. carefully   c. care   c. caring
4. Walk .... or you may miss the bus.
   a. quickest   b. quicker   c. quickly   c. quick

6 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements.

Music in Upper Egypt

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

Guiding words :

- instruments
- musicians
- folk music
- singing



....
....
....
....
....

Notes for parents

4. Ask your child to read, order the words and write the sentences correctly

اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويرتب الكلمات ويكتب الجمل بطريقة صحيحة

5. Ask your child to choose the correct answer

اطلب من طفلك أن يختار الإجابة الصحيحة

6. Ask your child to write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding words

اطلب من طفلك أن يكتب فقرة إنشائية من حوالي (٥٠) كلمة مستخدمًا الكلمات الإرشادية

Lesson 6

• Project



Vocabulary

⭐ Listen and repeat. استمع وردد.

Key vocabulary

location	موقع	history	التاريخ
geography	الجغرافيا	culture	ثقافة

Extra vocabulary

entertainment	تسلية	Montazah Palace	قصر المنتزه
section	جزء - فقرة	Maamoura Beach	شاطئ المعمورة
brochure	كتيب / نشرة	concert	حفل موسيقى
headings	عناصر رئيسية	Mediterranean Sea	البحر المتوسط
Alexander the Great	الإسكندر الأكبر	coastline	خط ساحلى
facts	حقائق	art exhibition	معرض فنى
tourist information guide	دليل استعلامات سياحى	attractions	عناصر الجذب
		features	سمات

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular

Present		Past
happen	يحدث	happened
illustrate	يوضح	illustrated

Irregular

Present		Past
make	يصنع	made

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

- in the past في الماضى
- play traditional music on يعزف موسيقى تقليدية على
- in the north of في شمال
- make paper from يصنع ورق من

• Help your child listen to the words and repeat them.

- ساعد طفلك أن يستمع إلى الكلمات ويرددهم

Read and identify these definitions. اقرأ وتعرف على هذه التعريفات.

Word	Definitions
① Location المكان / الموقع	where a place is in the country مكان في الدولة
② Geography الجغرافيا	the environment and any natural features البيئة وأي سمات طبيعية
③ Attractions عناصر الجذب	what you can do and see in a place ما تستطيع أن تفعله أو تراه في المكان
④ History التاريخ	information about what happened here in the past معلومات عن ما حدث هنا في الماضي
⑤ Culture الثقافة	traditional art, entertainment, food, and music الفن التقليدي ، الترفية ، الطعام والموسيقى



Listen, read and learn. استمع، اقرأ وتعلم.

Section	Tourist Information Guide
Geography	There are high mountains next to a river. هناك جبال عالية بجانب النهر.
Attractions	There's an art exhibition at the museum and a market every Tuesday. هناك معرض فني في المتحف وسوق كل ثلاثاء.
Culture	People play traditional music on string instruments. يعزف الناس الموسيقى التقليدية على الآلات الوترية.
Location	It's in the north of the country. إنها في شمال البلاد.
History	People used to make paper from papyrus reeds. أعتاد الناس صنع الورق من عيدان نبات البردي.

Notes for parents

- Help your child read and identify the definition of each word. ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويتعرف على تعريف كل كلمة
- Help your child listen, read and learn about sections of the tourist information guide. ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ، يقرأ ويتعلم عن أقسام دليل المعلومات السياحية

Test your skills  Unit 3

Excellent
Very good
Good
Not good

If you got 🔴 you need to revise the unit again on the next page.

قم بتقييم نفسك بالعلامات الموضحة وإذا حصلت على 🔴 عد من جديد قم بمراجعة الوحدة مرة أخرى في الصفحة التالية

My Dictation

1 Read and write the meaning.

اقرأ وأكتب المعنى.

A. community ....

neighborhood ....

map ....

costumes ....

location ....

B. .... كاتب - ناسخ

.... مقابر

.... فرعون

.... سلالات حاكمة

.... محافظة

My Language

2 Circle the correct answer.

ضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. Those (is – are) pens.
2. This is my book. It is (mine – his).
3. They (go – went) to the club last week.
4. Drive (slowly – slow) here. The road is wet.
5. My parents were very (happy – happily) at the party.

My Reading

3 Read and tick (✓). اقرأ وضع علامة (✓).

1. What is in a governorate ?
   - ◯ Large cities or cities and countryside.
   - ◯ Towns.
2. .... is a group of people who live and work together in the same area.
   - ◯ Citizenship ◯ Community

My Writing

4 Punctuate the following sentence.

ضع علامات الترقيم للجمل الآتية :

scribes were very important

....

قم بتقييم نفسك بالعلامات الموضحة. ◯

Review on unit 3


community


neighborhood


colorful


hieroglyphs


the Red Sea Governorate


drumming


Raqs Assaya

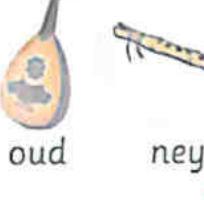

pharaoh


scuba diving


scribe



oud


ney

- There are three main parts to the history of ancient Egypt :

the Old Kingdom
[2800 - 2200 BCE]

the Middle Kingdom
[2065 - 1775 BCE]

the New Kingdom
[1570 - 1098 BCE]



- This is our school.
  It's ours.



- Those are her books.
  They're hers.

- Ancient Egyptians wrote in hieroglyphs.



- Egypt has lots of traditional folk music.
- Folk dancing has a long history in Egypt.
- Nubian music is popular all over Egypt.

Notes for parents

- Help your child review unit 3.

ساعد طفلك فى مراجعة الوحدة الثالثة



هذا الجزء يمكنك من ربط الكلمات التى درستها بجمل
ليساعدك على التمكن من مهارة القراءة والكتابة

1. Reading & writing skills :

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
The history of Egypt	history	Egypt has a very long and interesting history.
	Nile - live	People started to live near the Nile 9.000 years ago.
	area	There were two separate areas.
	Lower Egypt	Lower Egypt was in the north.
	Upper Egypt	Upper Egypt was in the south.
	Mena - joined	Mena joined these two parts to unite the country of Egypt.
	three main parts	There are three main parts of the history of ancient Egypt : the Old, Middle and the New Kingdom.
The governorates of Egypt	The Red Sea beach water sports	I live in the Red Sea Governorate. It has a beach. It's a very popular place to visit for scuba diving and water sports.
	Aswan Upper Egypt High Dam	I live in Aswan Governorate. It's in Upper Egypt. In 1970, engineers finished the Aswan High Dam.
	Alexandria ships capital	I live in Alexandria Governornate. Lots of ships sail in and out of the port. The city of Alexandria used to be the capital city of Egypt.
Folk music / dance	traditional	Egypt has lots of traditional folk music.
	folk - Saidi	Folk musicians from Upper Egypt play Saidi music.
	instruments	Saidi music uses string instruments such as violins, and wind instruments such as oboe.
	Raqs Assaya	Raqs Assaya is the most famous dance. The dancers use sticks.
	Nubian	Nubian music is popular all over Egypt.
	clapping	Clapping and drumming are important parts of this type of music.
	dancing	Nubian dancing is lively and colorful. The dancers move their arms and feet to the rhythm of the music.
	Bedouin	Bedouin music includes singing.
	instruments	The most popular instruments in Bedouin music are the shabbaba and rebaba.



2. How to make a sentence:

٢. تعلم كيف تكون وترتب جملة.

١ الجمل الخبرية

1. Alexandria – I – live – in – Governorate.
2. music – has – of – lots – Egypt – folk – traditional.

	فاعل	فعل	باقى الجملة .
1			
2			

٢ الجمل الامرية

1. in – fair – way – a kind – Behave.
2. play – in – Don't – classroom.

	Don't	مصدر الفعل	باقى الجملة .
1			
2			

٣ الجمل الأستفهامية

(أ) السؤال بـ (كلمة استفهام .. ؟)

1. live – many – How – people – in – Cairo ?
2. live – you – do – Where ?

	كلمة الاستفهام	فعل مساعد	فاعل	فعل أساسى	باقى الجملة ?
1					
2					

(ب) السؤال بـ (هل .. ؟)

1. any – you – Do – know – of this – music ?
2. music – Was – ancient – important – Egypt – in ?

	فعل مساعد	فاعل	فعل أساسى	باقى الجملة ?
1				
2				



١- عناصر تساعدك على تنظيم أفكارك للتعامل مع مهارة الكتابة متبوعة بنموذج.

My world

Folk dancing

Folk dancing has a long history in Egypt.
It is linked to the folk music of different areas.

Nubian dancing

Nubian dancing is lively and colorful. People move their arms and feet to the rhythm of the music.

Raqs Assaya

It is a famous dance from the Saidi musical tradition.
Dancers use sticks and step quickly in special patterns.

The Tahtib

The dancers carefully perform a dance with sticks in a way that looks like fighting.

Simsimeya

Musicians play the simsimeya, a Bedouin instrument, as well as drums.

Opinion

I like folk dancing so much.
My favorite folk dance is ....

Read and learn. اقرأ وتعلم.

Folk dancing has a long history in Egypt. It is linked to the folk music of different areas. Nubian dancing is lively and colorful. People move their arms and feet to the rhythm of the music. Raqs Assaya is a famous dance from the Saidi musical tradition. Dancers use sticks and step quickly in special patterns. The Tahtib is also from the tradition of Saidi music. The dancers carefully perform a dance with sticks. In Suez Canal cities, they like the simsimeya. I like folk dancing so much.

٢- تعتبر مهارة الكتابة من المهارات الأساسية للتعبير عن فكرة أو موضوع لذا يجب استخدام جمل وأفكار مترابطة. قم بقراءة هذه الجمل لتساعدك على التعامل مع مهارة الكتابة (٢٤ جملة).

1 Scribes in Ancient Egypt

Not everyone in Ancient Egypt learned to read and write.(1) This was a job for scribes.(2) Scribes were very important people in society(3). To become a scribe, children went to a special school.(4) In the school, they studied hieroglyphs and hieratic scripts.(5) The children had to learn lots of different signs and symbols.(6)

2 My Community

The girls at my running club are my community.(7) We are all from different parts of town and we go to different schools, but that doesn't matter.(8) We have lots of friends and families who live in our neighborhood.(9) We are always visiting each other's houses.(10) Our favorite time is the summer when everyone has fun together in the park.(11) I think good citizenship is about looking after where you live and being kind to people.(12)



3 New Valley Governorate

New Valley Governorate is the biggest governorate in Egypt.(13) It's a very large area but New Valley doesn't have a big population.(14) The population is about 245,000.(15) The capital of New Valley Governorate is Kharga.(16) Kharga is a famous place.(17) Kharga is an oasis town in the south of this region.(18)

4 An Egyptian craft

There is a long history of traditional crafts in Egypt.(19) The most popular crafts are Khayameya and carpet making.(20) Carpet making is an Egyptian craft.(21) A skilled person can work quickly, but it takes many years to learn how to make an Egyptian carpet.(22) The patterns are bright and colorful.(23) Each carpet is made carefully using Egyptian wool.(24)

Test 5 on Unit 3

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

• Understand • Apply • Create

A. Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Carpet making is another Egyptian ....
   a. sports b. craft c. dance d. music
2. The carpet is made carefully, using Egyptian ....
   a. metal b. wool c. plastic d. wood
3. It takes many .... to learn how to make an Egyptian carpet.
   a. weeks b. days c. years d. months
4. A skilled person can work ....
   a. quickly b. slowly c. quietly d. badly

2 Listen and complete. استمع واقرأ.

1. Omar lives in ....
2. Alexandria is in the .... of Egypt.
3. Lots of .... sail in and out of the port.
4. Alexandria used to be the .... city of Egypt.

B. Reading

3 Read and complete the dialogue from the words in the box.

governorate – arms – Where – which

Adel : Hello, Maged ! Where do you live ?
Maged : Hi, Adel! I live in Upper Egypt.
Adel : (1) .... is Upper Egypt ?
Maged : It is in the south.
Adel : What (2) .... do you live in ?
Maged : I live in Aswan.
Adel : Great ! What is it famous for ?
Maged : Nubian dancing. It's lively and colorful. We move our (3) .... and feet to the rhythm of the music.

1. Ask your child to listen and circle the correct answer. - اطلب من طفلك أن يستمع ويضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة
2. Ask your child to listen and complete the sentences. - اطلب من طفلك أن يستمع ويكمل الجمل
3. Ask your child to read and complete the dialogue with the correct word from the box. - اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويكمل المحادثة بالكلمة الصحيحة من الصندوق أعلاه

4 Read the following text and answer the questions below.

Ancient Egyptians used scribes to write down everything that happened. Scribes were very important people. They worked for ruling dynasties. Important dynasties controlled Egypt for many years. These were important families who ruled the country.

Ancient Egyptians wrote in hieroglyphs, which are pictures or symbols that can mean one word or many ideas. We can see these hieroglyphs today in tombs and museums.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c.

1. There are pictures and symbols in ………… and museums.
   a. streets b. clubs c. schools d. tombs
2. Ancient Egyptians ………… everything that happened.
   a. worked b. learnt c. wrote down d. used

B. Answer the following questions :

3. What are dynasties ?

…………………………………………

4. Why was a scribe important in Ancient Egypt ?

…………………………………………

5 The reader

A Read and write T (True) or F (False).

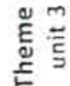


1. Grandpa's favorite design is lotus flowers.
2. Zeinab doesn't like sewing.

B Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Grandpa liked sewing ………… best.
   a. birds and animals b. trees
   c. geometric patterns d. sunflower patterns
2. When Grandpa was young, he wanted to be a/an ………… .
   a. singer b. engineer c. doctor d. pilot

Notes for parents



4. Ask your child to read the text and answer the given questions. اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ النص و يجيب عن الاسئلة المعطاه
5. Ask your child to read and answer the questions according to the events of the story.
اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويجيب عن الأسئلة طبقًا لأحداث القصة

C. Writing

6 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. This is Aliaa's bag. It is ....
   a. his b. hers c. her d. mine
2. These shoes belong to Mazen. They are ....
   a. his b. theirs c. him d. hers
3. This carpet is made ...., using Egyptian wool.
   a. care b. caring c. careful d. carefully
4. It's your house. It's ....
   a. their b. yours c. ours d. mine

7 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. in – is – a governorate – What ?
....
2. area – large – It – a very – is.
....

8 Write a text of FIFTY (50)words using the following guiding elements.

Folk dancing in Egypt

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

Guiding questions :

1. What is the most famous dance from the Saidi musical tradition ?
2. How do dancers perform it ?



....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....

6 Ask your child to choose the correct answer. - اطلب من طفلك أن يختار الإجابة الصحيحة
7 Ask your child to read, order the words and write the sentences correctly. - اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ، يرتب الكلمات ويكتب الجمل بطريقة صحيحة
8 Ask your child to write a text of (50) words using the given guiding questions. - اطلب من طفلك أن يكتب نص مكون من حوالي (٥٠) كلمة مستخدمًا الأسئلة الارشادية

Test 6 on Unit 3

Collected From Governorates Exams

اختبـار مجمـع من مختلف المحافظات

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

• Understand • Apply • Create

A. Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Braille is a code which uses combinations of ....
   a. patterns b. shapes c. dots d. marks
2. Braille system represents ....
   a. letters and numbers b. shapes and numbers
   c. letters and dots d. numbers and sums
3. People who are .... can use Braille.
   a. deaf b. blind c. strong d. weak
4. People have difficulty seeing use .... instead of sight.
   a. touch b. hearing c. smell d. taste

(Cairo – Nozha 2022 / Qena – Elwaqf 2022)

2 Listen and complete.

1. Folk musicians from .... Egypt play Saidi music.
2. Saidi music uses string instruments such as ....
3. Farther .... is the home of Nubian music.
4. The most popular instruments in .... music are the shabbaba and the rebaba.

(Luxor – Esna 2022 / Gharbia – Elsanta 2022)

B. Reading

3 Read and complete the dialogue from the words in the box.

eat – fish – Coffee – Where

Waiter : Welcome, sir ? What would you like to (1) .... ?
Eyad : Thank you. I'd like (2) .... and rice.
Waiter : What would you like to drink ?
Eyad : (3) .... , please.
Waiter : What about desserts ?
Eyad : Do you have cheese cake ?
Waiter : Yes. Anything else ?
Eyad : No, thank you.

(Suez 2022)

Notes for parents

1. Ask your child to listen and circle the correct answer. اطلب من طفلك أن يستمع ويضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة
2. Ask your child to listen and complete with the correct answer. اطلب من طفلك أن يستمع ويكمل بالإجابة الصحيحة
3. Ask your child to read and complete the dialogue with words from the box. اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويكمل المحادثة بكلمات من المربع

4 Read the following text and answer the questions below.

There is a long history of traditional crafts in Egypt. Two of the most popular crafts are khayameya and carpet making. In the past, tent makers created khayameya to decorate huge tents for weddings and other family occasions. Khayameya patterns are beautifully designed using different colors. Carpet making is another Egyptian craft. A skilled person can work quickly, but it takes many years to learn how to make an Egyptian carpet. The patterns are bright and colorful and each carpet is made carefully, using Egyptian wool.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The main idea of the text is about ....
   a. Egyptian wool   b. Egyptian occasions
   c. Egyptian crafts   d. skilled people
2. Khayameya is a/an ....
   a. tool   b. pattern   c. occasion   d. craft

B. Answer the following questions :

3. What was khayameya made for ?

   ....

4. Why is it not easy to make many Egyptian carpets ?

   ....

(Port Said – East Port Said 2022 / Cairo – Ain Shams 2022)

5 The reader

A Read and write T (True) or F (False).

	T	F
1. Grandpa was one of the best artisans in Khayameya Street.	☐	☐
2. Zeinab doesn't want to visit her grandparents.	☐	☐

B Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Grandpa likes sewing Khayameya design with ....
   a. clothes   b. lotus flowers   c. socks   d. grass
2. .... wanted to be an engineer in the past .
   a. Grandpa   b. Zeinab   c. Rasha   d. Lobna

4. Ask your child to read the text and answer the questions. - اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ النص ويجيب عن الأسئلة
5. Ask your child to read and answer the questions according to the events of the story. - اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويجيب عن الأسئلة طبقًا لأحداث القصة

C. Writing

6 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Is this cup .... ? (Cairo - Maadi 2022)
   a. your b. yours c. my d. their
2. Hazem lives in .... grandpa's house. (Aswan - Edfu 2022)
   a. him b. her c. his d. hers
3. John .... a bear in the garden an hour ago. (Fayoum - Etsa 2022)
   a. seen b. sees c. see d. saw
4. We .... excited after the show yesterday. (Damietta 2022)
   a. did b. were c. was d. have

7 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. belong - to - These - Mazen - shoes. (Ismailia - Kasaseen 2022)

   ....

2. make - How - you - darker - do - green ? (Sharkia - Belbeis 2022)

   ....

8 Write a text of FIFTY (50)words using the following guiding elements.

Ancient Egypt

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

Guiding words :

long history / pharaoh / unite / Upper Egypt

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

(Kafr El Sheikh - Bella 2022 / Menofia - Sadat 2022)

Notes for parents

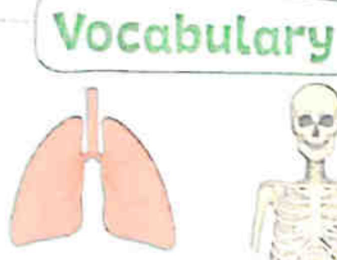
6. Ask your child to choose the correct answer.
اطلب من طفلك أن يختار الإجابة الصحيحة
7. Ask your child to read, order the words and write the sentences correctly
اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويرتب الكلمات ويكتب الجمل بطريقة صحيحة
8. Ask your child to write a text of (50) words using the given guiding word
اطلب من طفلك أن يكتب نص مكون من حوالي (٥٠) كلمة مستخدمًا الكلمات الإرشادية

Review on Unit 1

Vocabulary


heart


stomach


lungs


skeleton


muscle


bones


blood


champion


Olympic athlete


medal


volleyball


runner

Our senses


We taste with our tongue.


We feel with our skin.


We see with our eyes.


We hear with our ears.

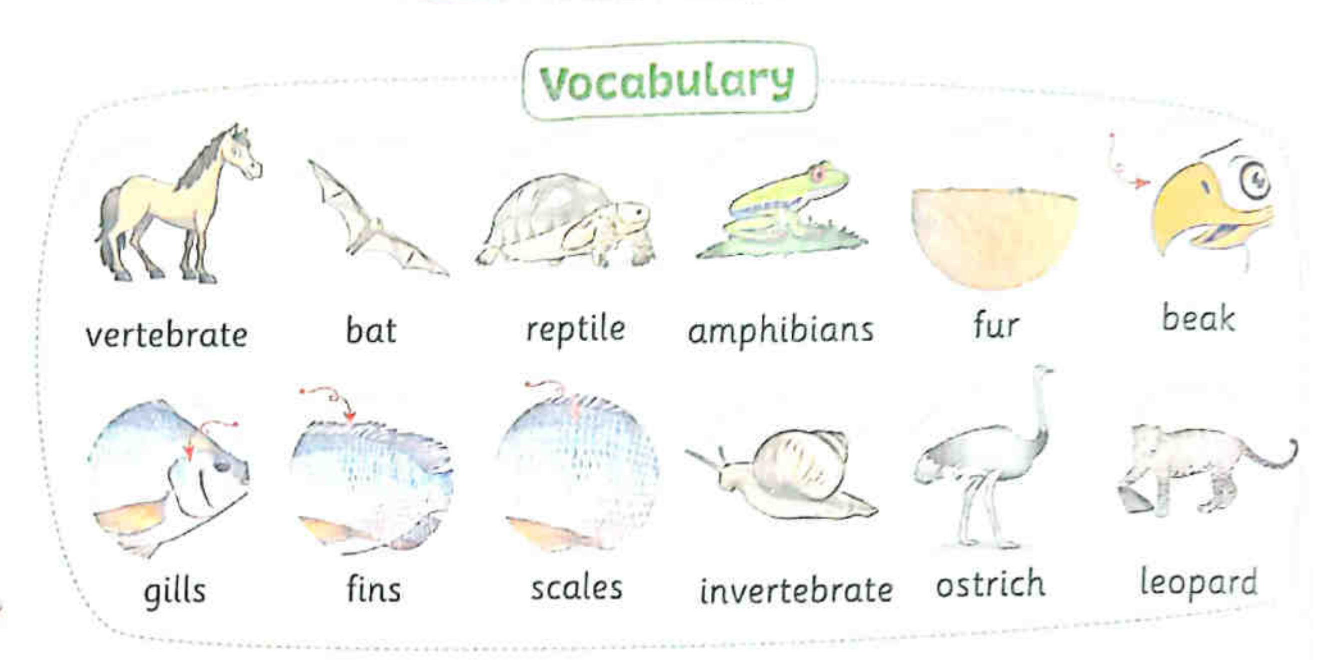

We smell with our nose.

The present simple tense

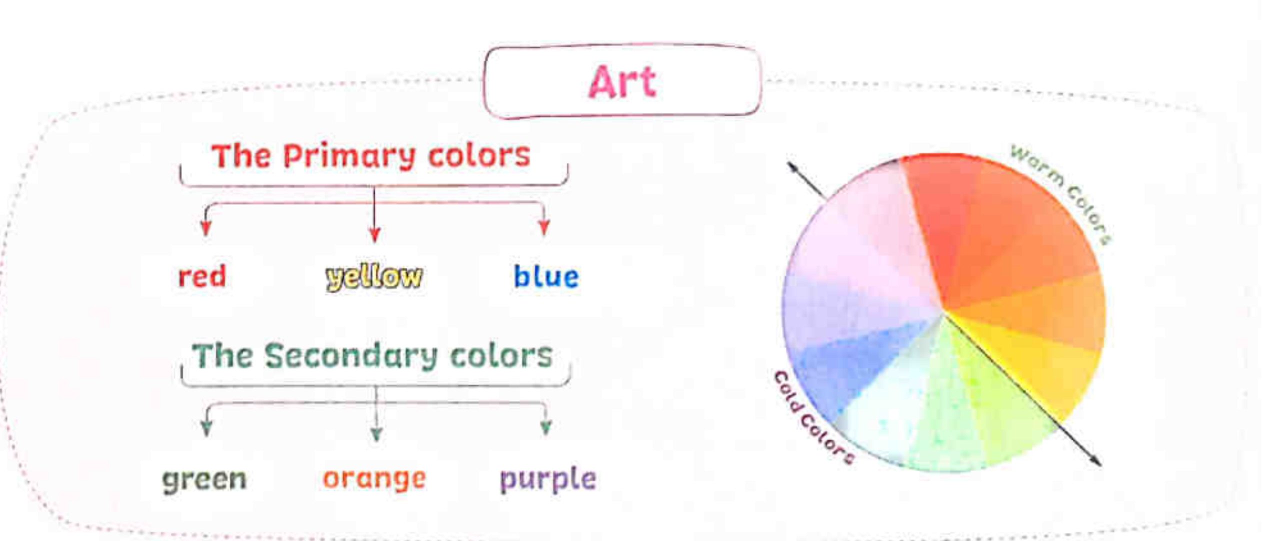
- How **does** she feel today ?
- She **feels** disappointed.
- He **goes** to the park every week.
- They **play** volleyball on Mondays.

Review on Unit 2

Vocabulary



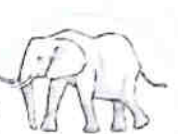
Art



Language

Comparative adjectives

- The elephant is bigger than the lion.



- The whale shark is smaller than the blue whale.



Superlative adjectives

- The ostrich is the biggest bird.



- A tiny chameleon is the smallest reptile.



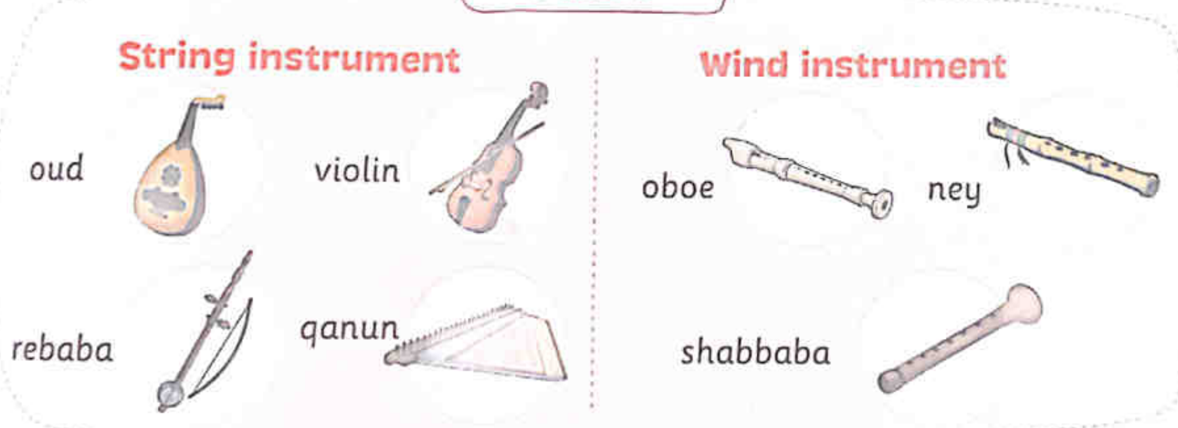
Review on Unit 3

Vocabulary



Music





Language

Possessive pronouns

- This is my neighborhood. It's mine.
- This is our school. It's ours.
- This is Rasha's book. It's hers.
- These are your shoes. They're yours.
- That is his bike. It's his.
- That is their teacher. She is theirs.

General Exercises on Units 1, 2 & 3

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. It is difficult for deaf people to ....
   a. see   b. hear   c. smell   d. touch
2. We can .... with our skin.
   a. feel   b. smell   c. taste   d. hear
3. They .... Sandy's parents.
   a. have   b. do   c. is   d. are
4. Nubian music is very .... all over Egypt.
   a. different   b. popular   c. similar   d. stranger
5. Ants are .... humans.
   a. the strongest   b. stronger than
   c. stronger   d. strong
6. A frog is .... smallest vertebrate.
   a. the   b. than   c. that   d. as
7. A .... is a mixture of people, places and ideas.
   a. club   b. community   c. school   d. hospital
8. The boy is reading ....
   a. quicker   b. quick   c. quickly   d. quickest
9. " .... " means where a place is in the country.
   a. Culture   b. Geography   c. Location   d. History
10. My aunt .... my family last month.
   a. to visit   b. visits   c. visited   d. visit
11. Egypt has .... governorates.
   a. 25   b. 26   c. 27   d. 28
12. We .... a nice garden.
   a. has   b. have   c. did   d. are

Notes for parents

- Ask your child to choose the correct answer.

اطلب من طفلك أن يختار الإجابة الصحيحة

Non-Fiction Reader

Coral Reefs

الشعاب المرجانية



Listen and repeat. استمع وردد.

Vocabulary Part 1

tiny	ضئيل (صغير الحجم)	polyps	البوليب (حيوانات صغيرة مثل حيوان المرجان)
hard exoskeleton	هيكل خارجى صلب	clear	شفاف
ocean	محيط	algae	طحالب
organisms	كائنات حية	shallow	مياه ضحلة
tropical fish	أسماك استوائية	habitat	بيئة

Vocabulary Part 2

camouflage	تمويه (تخفى)	unusual	غير عادى
leave	يغادر	global warming	احتباس حرارى
temperature	درجة حرارة	coral bleaching	ابيضاض المرجان
ecosystem	النظام البيئى	marine	بحرى
pollution	تلوث	rise	يرتفع
reduce	يقلل	the Red Sea	البحر الأحمر



Read and identify. اقرأ وتعرف.

Word	Definition
exoskeleton الهيكل الخارجى	a skeleton that is on the outside of an invertebrate's body هو هيكل يوجد خارج جسم الحيوان اللافقارى
polyp (البوليب)	a very small and simple creature that lives in the sea مخلوق دقيق جدًا وبسيط يعيش فى البحر
organism كائن حى	a living animal or plant حيوان أو نبات حى
clear شفاف	no color, you can see through it بدون لون، تستطيع أن ترى من خلاله
shallow ضحل	not deep; in the sea or a river, the water doesn't go down very far ليس عميق : المياه لا تكون عميقة فى البحر أو النهر
algae طحالب	very simple organisms that live in water كائنات حية دقيقة تعيش فى المياه.

Notes for parents

- Help your child listen and repeat the words.
- Help your child to read and identify the given definitions.

- ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويردد الكلمات
- ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويتعرف على التعريفات المعطاة.

Some information

1. Coral reefs are made of polyps which had a hard exoskeleton.
- الشعاب المرجانية تتكون من البوليب والتي لديها هيكل خارجى صلب.
2. Polyps grow into different shapes and sizes.
- "البوليب" ينمو فى أشكال وأحجام مختلفة.
3. Most coral reefs don't have a color.
- أغلب الشعاب المرجانية ليس لها لون.
4. Polyps' color comes from tiny algae that live inside.
- تأتى الوان البوليب من الطحالب الدقيقة التى تعيش بداخلها.
5. Coral polyps can live in all the oceans and in warm seas.
- الشعاب يمكنها أن تعيش فى كل المحيطات والبحار الدافئة.
6. Coral reefs grow together in shallow water as they need sunlight to live and grow.
- تنمو الشعاب المرجانية معًا فى المياه الضحلة لأنها تحتاج إلى ضوء الشمس كى تنمو وتعيش.
7. The unusual shapes of coral reefs also give a lot of places to hide.
- الأشكال غير العادية للشعاب المرجانية توفر الكثير من الأماكن للاختباء.
8. The largest coral reef system in Africa and the third largest reef system in the world is the Red Sea coral reef.
- أكبر نظام للشعاب المرجانية فى أفريقيا وثالث أكبر نظام للشعاب المرجانية فى العالم هو الشعاب المرجانية للبحر الأحمر.
9. The seas and oceans on Earth are getting warmer because of the global warming.
- تصبح البحار والمحيطات على كوكب الأرض أكثر سخونة بسبب ظاهرة الاحتباس الحرارى.
10. When the algae leave, the reef is pale and white. This is called "Coral bleaching).
- عندما ترحل الطحالب تصبح الشعاب شاحبه وبيضاء وهذا يسمى بـ " ابيضاض الشعاب".
11. When a reef loses its color, the coral dies.
- عندما تفقد الشعاب لونها تموت.
12. To protect coral reefs we need to have less pollution.
- لنحمى الشعاب المرجانية نحتاج إلى تقليل التلوث.

• Help your child read and identify some information.

- ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويتعرف على بعض المعلومات

Part 1 What are coral reefs ?

Look and read. انظر واقرأ.

What are coral reefs ?

Check Vocabulary

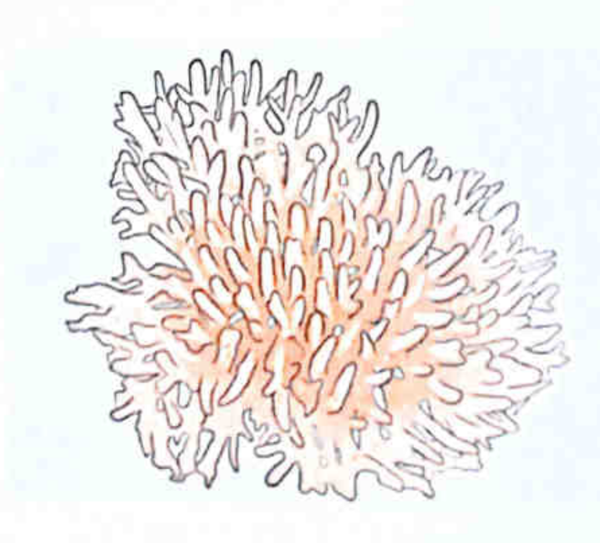
(1) شعاب مرجانية
(2) لا فقارية
(3) بولب
(4) هيكل خارجي صلب
(5) ألوان ساطعة
(6) طحالب
(7) كائنات حية

They look like they are made of plants, but this is wrong. Coral reefs[1] are made of thousands of tiny invertebrates[2], called polyps[3]. They have a hard exoskeleton[4], and they don't move - they stay in the same place all the time.

Different species of polyps grow into different shapes and sizes, but they all grow very slowly. They can sometimes grow for more than ten thousand years.



We think coral reefs have very bright colors[5]. However, most coral polyps don't have a color. They have clear bodies and their exoskeletons are white. The color comes from tiny algae[6] that live inside the polyps. It is their bright colors that we can see.
In a small part of a coral reef, there are millions of these tiny organisms[7].





Notes for parents

- Help your child to look at the pictures and read the text.

ساعد طفلك أن ينظر إلى الصور ويقرأ النص

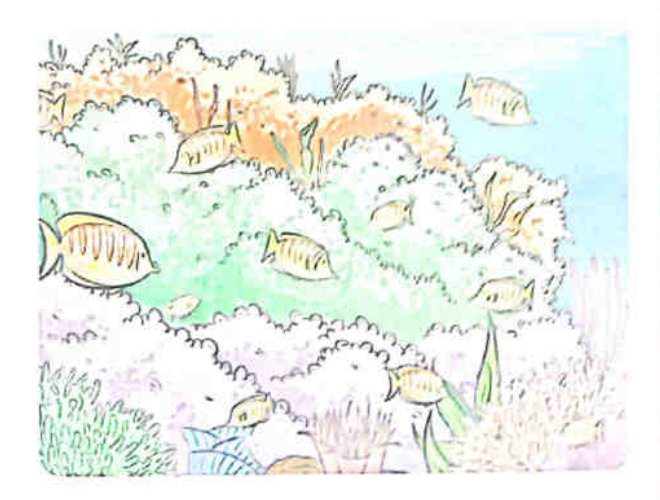
[illegible]

Coral polyps can live in all the oceans[8] around the world, in very cold water and in warm seas[9]. They only grow together and make coral reefs in warm water. The water must be shallow[10] too, because the reefs need sunlight[11] to live and to grow.

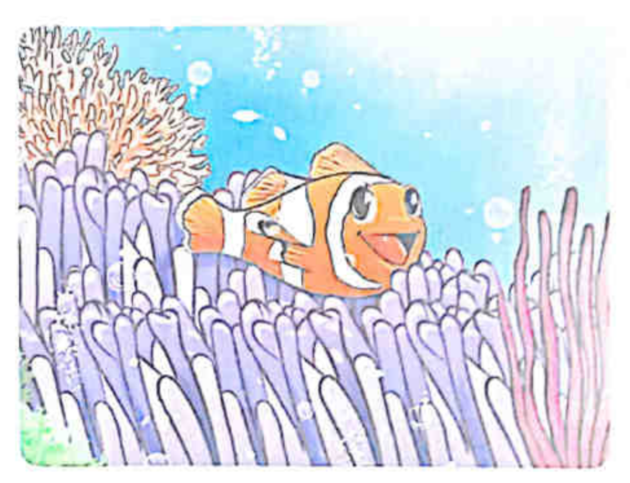
Check Vocabulary

(8) محيطات
(9) بحار دافئة
(10) ضحل - سطحي
(11) أشعة الشمس
(12) مواطن
(13) أسماك استوائية
(14) تمويه
(15) يختبئ

Coral reefs are homes[12] for many other animals, so they are a very important habitat. Tropical fish[13] often have bright colors so they can hide safely in a reef. It is a type of camouflage[14]. The unusual shapes of coral reefs also give lots of places to hide[15].



The Red Sea coral reef is the largest coral reef system in Africa and the third largest reef system in the world. It is about 4,000 kilometers long, and covers over 2,000 square kilometers.



• Help your child look at the pictures, listen and read the text.

- ساعد طفلك أن ينظر إلى الصور، يستمع ويقرأ النص

- يمكن أن تعيش السلسلة المرجانية في جميع المحيطات حول العالم، في المياه شديدة البرودة وفي البحار الدافئة فهي تنمو معًا وتصنع الشعاب المرجانية فقط في المياه الدافئة يجب أن تكون المياه ضحلة أيضًا لأن الشعاب المرجانية تحتاج إلى ضوء الشمس لتعيش وتنمو
- الشعاب المرجانية هي موطن للعديد من الحيوانات الأخرى لذلك فهي موطن هام جدًا غالبًا ما يكون الأسماك الإستوائية زاهية اللون حتى تتمكن من الاختباء بأمان في الشعاب المرجانية وهذا نوع من التمويه (التخفي) تتيح أيضًا الاشكال غير العادية للشعب المرجانية أماكن كثيرة للاختباء إن الشعاب المرجانية المتواجدة بالبحر الأحمر تكون أكبر نظام للشعاب المرجانية في أفريقيا وثالث أكبر نظام للشعاب في العالم وهو حوالي ٤٠٠٠ كيلو متر ويغطي أكثر من ٢٠٠٠ كيلو متر مربع

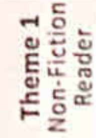
General Exercises on Part 1

1 Read and write T(True) or F (False).

	T	F
1. Coral reefs have bright colors.		
2. Coral reefs don't need sunlight.		
3. Tropical fish live in coral reefs.		
4. Polyps have a hard exoskeleton.		
5. Coral reefs are made of thousands of tiny vertebrates.		
6. Polyps don't move.		
7. Coral polyps have a color.		
8. Coral polyps can live in all the lakes around the world.		
9. Tropical fish can hide safely in a reef.		
10. Coral reefs are homes for many animals.		

2 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. Coral polyps can live in all the .... around the world.
   a. mountains b. lakes c. oceans d. pools
2. The color of the coral reefs comes from tiny ....
   a. algea b. ocean c. moon d. sunlight
3. The Red Sea coral reefs are the .... in Africa.
   a. smallest b. largest c. tallest d. fattest
4. Polyps stay in the .... place all the time.
   a. different b. shape c. same d. beside
5. Coral polyps can live in .... water.
   a. shallow b. behind c. beside d. deep



Notes for parents

1. Ask your child to read and write T (True) or F (False). اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويكتب (T) للإجابة الصحيحة (F) للإجابة الخاطئة
2. Ask your child to read and choose the correct answer. اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويختار الإجابة الصحيحة

Part 2

What is coral bleaching ?

⭐ Look and read.

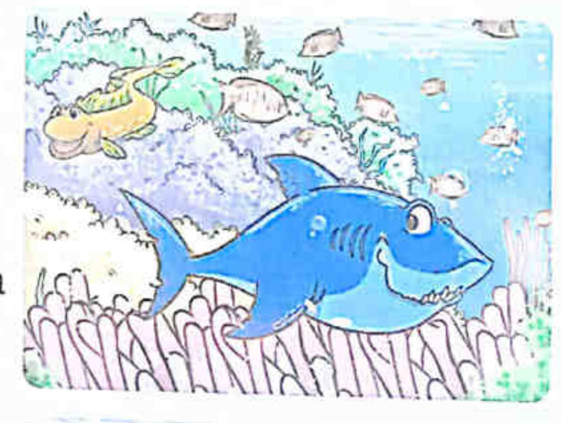
أنظر واقرأ.

At the moment, the seas and oceans(1) on Earth are getting warmer. This is because of global warming(2). When the water temperature(3) rises, the algae inside the coral polyps leave. The algae give the coral reef(4) its bright colors. So, when the algae leave, the reef is pale and white. This is called coral bleaching.

Check Vocabulary

- محيطات (1)
- احتباس حراري (2)
- درجة الحرارة (3)
- شعاب مرجانية (4)
- تبييض (5)
- تلوث (6)
- يبقى على قيد الحياة (7)
- علماء (8)
- يقلل (9)

Coral bleaching(5) can also happen when there is pollution(6), too much sunlight, or not enough water. When a reef loses its color, the coral dies, and the animals who live in the reef cannot stay there.



In 2020, scientists discovered that some coral reefs in the Red Sea can survive(7) changes in temperature. They are the only types of coral in the world that can do this. The water of the Red Sea is warmer than other seas, so the coral in the Red Sea does not have the same problem with coral bleaching. Scientists(8) hope that they can use the Red Sea coral to protect other coral reefs around the world.



To protect coral reefs we also need to have less pollution in our oceans. We must also work together to reduce(9) global warming. It's important to protect the Red Sea coral reef and other coral reefs around the world.

• Help your child to look at the pictures and read the text.

- ساعد طفلك أن ينظر إلى الصور ويقرأ النص

- في هذه اللحظة تزداد البحار والمحيطات على الأرض دفئًا هذا بسبب الإحتباس الحراري. عندما ترتفع درجة حرارة الماء تغادر الطحالب التي بداخل السلائل المرجانية. تعطي الطحالب للشعب المرجانية ألوانها الزاهية لذلك عندما تغادر الطحالب تصبح الشعب المرجانية شاحبة وبيضاء وهذا ما يسمى تبيض المرجان. كما يمكن أن يحدث تبيض المرجان عندما يكون هناك تلوث أو وجود الكثير من أشعة الشمس أو عدم وجود المياه بشكل كافي. فعندما تفقد الشعاب المرجانية ألوانها فإنها تموت وبالتالي لا تستطيع الحيوانات التي تعيش بداخلها البقاء. في عام ٢٠٢٠ اكتشف العلماء أن بعض الشعاب المرجانية في البحر الأحمر يمكنها أن تتحمل التغيرات في درجات الحرارة. فهم النوع الوحيد من المرجان في العالم التي يمكنها فعل ذلك. فمياه البحر الأحمر أكثر دفئًا من البحار الأخرى، لذلك لا يوجد نفس المشكلة للمرجان في البحر الأحمر مع ابيضاص المرجان. ويأمل العلماء أن يتمكنوا من استعمال مرجان البحر الأحمر لحماية الشعاب المرجانية الأخرى حول العالم. ولحماية الشعاب المرجانية نحتاج أيضًا إلى تقليل التلوث في محيطاتنا ويجب أن نعمل سويًا لتقليل الاحتباس الحراري. من المهم أن نحمي الشعاب المرجانية في البحر الأحمر والشعاب المرجانية حول العالم

General Exercises

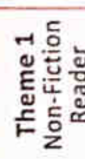


1 Read and write T (True) or F (False).

	T	F
1. Global warming makes oceans and seas cold.		
2. The water in the Red Sea is warm.		
3. We need to have less pollution in the world's oceans.		
4. The algae give the coral reefs its bright colors.		
5. Some coral reefs in the Red Sea can survive changes in temperature.		

2 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. Coral reefs look like they are made of ....
   a. plants b. wood c. paper d. stone
2. The water of the Red Sea is .... than other seas.
   a. higher b. cooler c. warmer d. hotter
3. We need to .... global warming.
   a. reduce b. increase c. decrease d. use



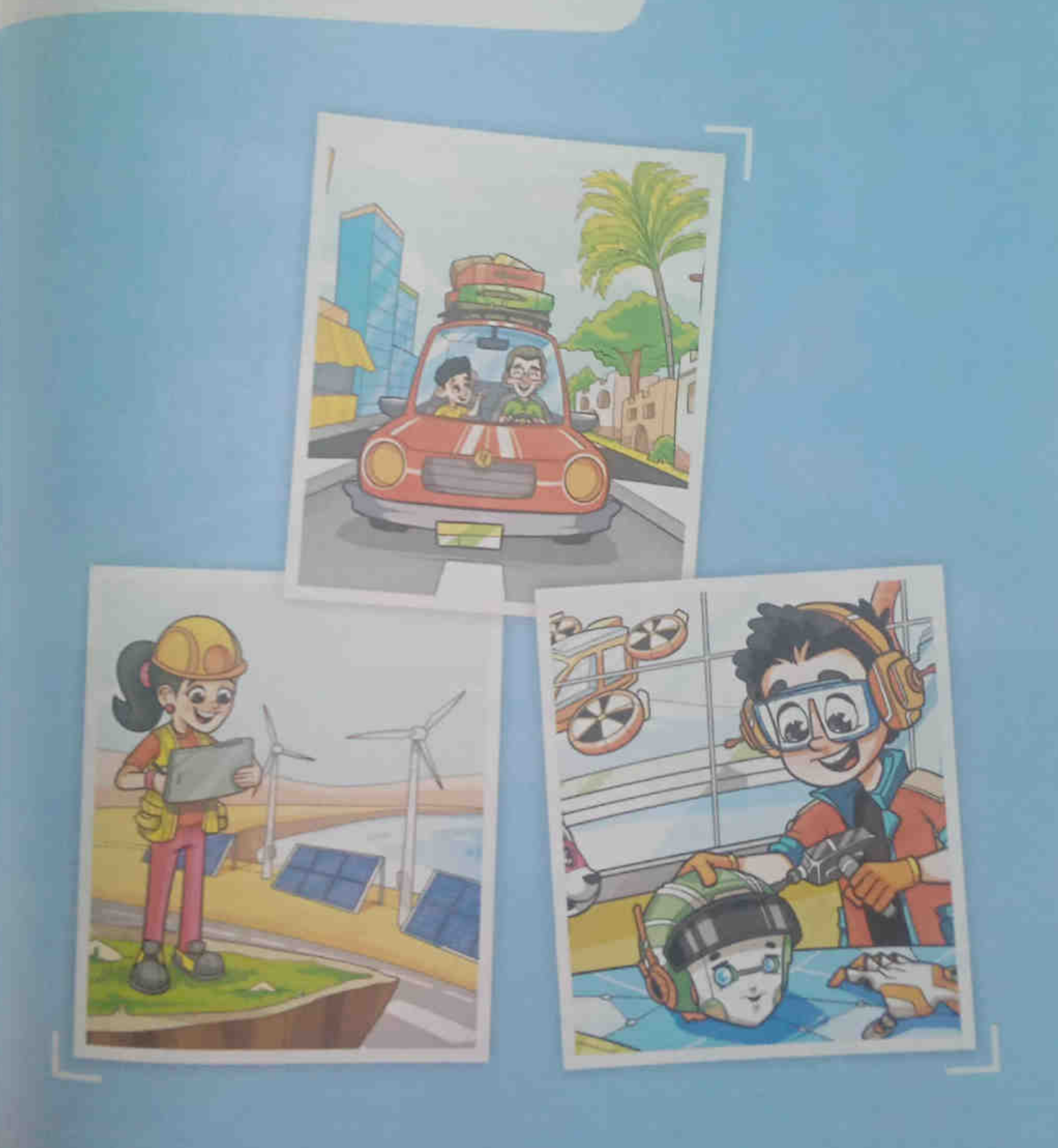
Notes for parents

1. Ask your child to read and write (True) or (False).
2. Ask your child to choose the correct answer.

١ اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويكتب (صح) أو (خطأ).
٢ اطلب من طفلك أن يختار الإجابة الصحيحة.

Theme 2

Myself and others



Unit 4

City and country

المدينة والريف



لإتقان الوحدة

• استخدام كارت **المعاصر** للقراءة والكتابة.
• Test your skills في نهاية الوحدة.
• كراسة **المعاصر** للمهارات.
• كراسة **المعاصر** التفاعلية.
• التقييمات الشهرية في الكراسة التفاعلية.

Aims of Unit Four :

الأهداف العامة للوحدة الرابعة :

In this unit I will .....

في هذه الوحدة سوف.....

- compare life in the city and in the country.
  - أقارن بين الحياة فى المدينة وفى القرية.
- form and use regular and irregular plural nouns.
  - اكون واستخدم أسماء الجمع المنتظمة والغير منتظمة.
- read about crafts and heritage industries.
  - اقرأ عن الحرف والصناعات التراثية.
- use subordinating conjunctions in sentences.
  - أستخدم الروابط فى الجمل للتتابع.
- multiply and divide numbers.
  - أضرب وأقسم الأرقام.
- add and subtract fractions.
  - أجمع وأطرح الكسور.
- plan smart growth for a city.
  - أخطط نمو ذكي لمدينة.

Lesson 1

• Rural and urban places



Vocabulary

Listen and repeat. استمع وردد.

Key vocabulary

densely populated	ذات كثافة سكانية عالية	isolated	معزول
sparsely populated	ذات كثافة سكانية منخفضة	metropolitan	عاصمي
pedestrian	مشاة	urban	حضري / مدني
congestion	أزدحام (اكتظاظ)	rural	قروي / ريفي

Extra vocabulary

sparse	ضئيل/قليل	workshops	ورش عمل
dense	كثيف/كثير	environment	بيئة
services	خدمات	Greater Cairo	القاهرة الكبرى
city	مدينة (كبيرة)	population	تعداد السكان
village	قرية	inhabitants	السكان

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular

Present		Past
live	يعيش	lived
want	يريد	wanted

Irregular

Present		Past
tell	يخبر	told
have	يملك	had
do	يفعل	did

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

• tell about	يخبر عن	• close to	قريب من

• Help your child listen to the words and repeat them. • ساعد طفلك أن يستمع إلى الكلمات ويرددها

The oldest city in Egypt is probably Fayoum. Archeologists say that people started living there more than 6,000 years ago.
ربما تكون أقدم مدينة في مصر هي مدينة الفيوم. يقول علماء الآثار أن الناس بدأوا العيش هناك منذ أكثر من ٦٠٠٠ عام مضى

Pop Quiz | تدرب على ٧٩ من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع

Look, listen and read. انظر، استمع واقرأ.



Hello, my name's Fareeda and I want to tell you about where I live. I live in Greater Cairo. It's a metropolitan area(1) and densely populated(2). There are more than 20 million inhabitants(3), so it's a very busy place. There are a lot of cars so there's also congestion(4). If you are a pedestrian(5), you have to be very careful.



Hi there. I'm Zein. I'm going to tell you about my village. It's sparsely populated(6) – only about 700 people live here. It's also a very traditional place. It's in the desert so it's an isolated(7) place, too. We have a lot of services close to my family's home though, like shops, workshops, and my school.



Check Vocabulary

- منطقة حضرية (1)
- ذات كثافة سكانية عالية (2)
- سكان (3)
- ازدحام (4)
- مشاة (5)
- ذات كثافة سكانية منخفضة (6)
- معزول (7)



Answer the following questions.

Learn 1. Where does Fareeda live ?
- She lives in Greater Cairo.

Practice 2. What services are in Zein's village ?

....

Notes for parents

- Help your child look at the pictures, listen and read the text. ساعد طفلك أن ينظر إلى الصور، يستمع ويقرأ النص

مرحبًا أسمي فريدة وأريد أن أخبرك عن مكان سكني. أنا أعيش في القاهرة الكبرى. إنها منطقة حضرية وذات كثافة سكانية عالية. فهناك أكثر من ٢٠ مليون ساكنًا، لذلك إنه مكان مزدحم جدًا. يوجد الكثير من السيارات لذلك يوجد أيضًا ازدحام. فإذا كنت من المشاة يجب أن تكون حذرًا جدًا.

مرحبًا أنا زين. سأخبرك عن قريتي. إنها ذات كثافة سكانية منخفضة حوالي ٧٠٠ شخص فقط يعيشون هنا. إنه أيضًا مكان تقليدي جدًا. إنه في الصحراء لذا فهو مكان معزول أيضًا. لدينا الكثير من الخدمات بالقرب من منزل عائلتي، مثل المحلات، ورش العمل ومدرستي.

Dictation

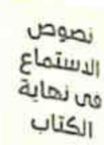
• لإتقان مهارة الكتابة استخدم كارت المعاصر من نهاية الكتاب

Read and spell	Complete	Write
city	c _ _ y	
village	vi _ _ a _ e	
densely populated	d _ _ sely p _ p _ _ ated	
sparsely populated	s _ _ rsely p _ _ ulated	
pedestrian	p _ _ e _ _ rian	
congestion	c _ _ ge _ tion	
isolated	i _ _ lated	
desert	d _ _ ert	
services	s _ _ vi _ es	
environment	e _ _ iro _ me _ t	
rural	ru _ _ l	
urban	u _ _ an	
workshops	w _ _ ksh _ _ s	

• Help your child read, spell , complete and write the words.

• ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ، يتهجى، يكمل ويكتب الكلمات

General Exercises on Lesson 1



• Understand • Apply • Create

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Zein lives in a/an ....
   a. city   b. oasis   c. village   d. town
2. Zein lives in a very .... place.
   a. new   b. traditional   c. old   d. metropolitan
3. Zein's village is in the ....
   a. desert   b. city   c. forest   d. sea
4. We have a lot of services close to my family's ....
   a. museum   b. home   c. office   d. city

2 Listen and complete.

1. I live in .... Cairo.
2. The Greater Cairo is a .... populated area.
3. There are more than 20 million ....
4. If you are a ...., you have to be very careful.

3 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box.

sparsely - workshops - pedestrian - village

Ahmed : Where do you live ?
Ali : I live in a (1) ....
Ahmed : Is it sparsely or densely populated ?
Ali : It's (2) .... populated - only about 700 people live here.
Ahmed : What services are there ?
Ali : We have a lot of services, like shops, (3) ...., and schools.

Notes for parents

1. Ask your child to listen and circle the correct answer. اطلب من طفلك أن يستمع ويضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة
2. Ask your child to listen and complete the sentences. اطلب من طفلك أن يستمع ويكمل الجمل
3. Ask your child to read and complete the dialogue with the correct word from the box. اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويكمل المحادثة بالكلمة الصحيحة من الصندوق أعلاه

4 Read the following text and answer the questions below.

Hello, my name is Fareeda and I want to tell you where I live. It's a metropolitan area and densely populated. There are more than 20 million inhabitants, so it's a very busy place. There are a lot of cars so there's also congestion.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Fareeda tells us about where she ....

a. lives b. plays c. works d. goes

2. Fareeda's city is very ....

a. lazy b. crazy c. busy d. isolated

B. Answer the following questions.

3. How many people are there in Fareeda's area ?

....

4. Why is there congestion in Fareeda's city ?

....

5 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. place - village - a - traditional - My - very - is.

....

2. Egypt - The oldest - is - Fayoum - city - in.

....

3. populated - Is - sparsely - it - densely - or ?

....

4. Ask your child to read the text and answer the questions.
5. Ask your child to order the words and write them correctly.

- اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ النص ويجيب عن الأسئلة
- اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ، يرتب الكلمات ويكتبهم بطريقة صحيحة

Lesson 2

• Reading
• Language



Vocabulary

 **Listen and repeat.** استمع وردد.

Key vocabulary

goose - geese	أوزة - أوز	man - men	رجل - رجال
buffalo(es)	جاموسة - جاموس	woman - women	سيدة - سيدات
sheep	خروف - خِراف	child - children	طفل - أطفال
person - people	شخص - أشخاص	goslings	صغار الأوز

Extra vocabulary

several	العديد	interview	مقابلة رسمية
onion(s)	بصلة - بصل	irrigation	عملية الري
donkey	حمار	program	برنامج
goods	بضائع	lucky	محظوظ
geographic features	خصائص جغرافية	coal	فحم
historically	تاريخيًا	aluminum	معدن الألومنيوم
natural resources	المصادر الطبيعية	copper	معدن النحاس

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular

Present		Past
develop	يطور	developed
wonder	يتسأل / يتعجب	wondered
imagine	يتخيل	imagined
trade	يقايض / يتاجر	traded

Irregular

Present		Past
grow	يزرع	grew
have	يملك	had
give	يعطي	gave

Notes for parents

• Help your child listen to the words and repeat them.

• ساعد طفلك أن يستمع إلى الكلمات ويرددهم

More people live in rural areas than urban areas in Egypt.

• في مصر يعيش أكثر الناس في المناطق الريفية أكثر من المناطق الحضارية

Important expressions and prepositions — تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

• on the Nile	على شاطئ النيل	• half of	منتصف
• of course	بالطبع	• used to + (inf.)	اعتاد أن
• have in common	لديهم نقاط مشتركة	• grown up	بالغ - راشد

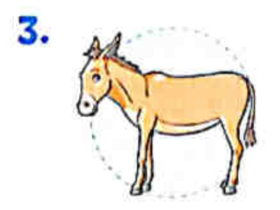


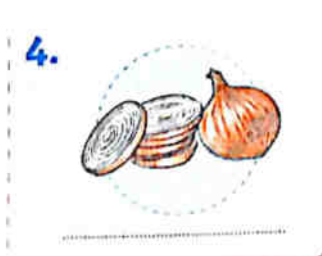
Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

• Look and write the words.

1. 
....

2. 
....

3. 
....

4. 
....

Look, listen and read.



My name's Waleed and I live in a small village on the Nile. My dad's a farmer. He grows tomatoes, potatoes, dates, and onions. We have some animals too. There are six sheep and two buffaloes. There are some donkeys in my village, but my family doesn't have one now. You can see cats in the street and if you're lucky, you might see some beautiful Egyptian geese on the river.

My family lives in a traditional home . There are seven people living in it. There are two men in my family - my dad and my grandpa - and two women - my mom and my grandma. And of course, there are some children too! I have two sisters, but there aren't any babies because we're all grown up. Do you have any brothers or sisters ?



- Ask your child to look and write the words under each picture. - اطلب من طفلك أن ينظر ويكتب الكلمات أسفل كل صورة.
- Help your child look, listen and read the text. - ساعد طفلك أن ينظر، يستمع ويقرأ النص.

اسمي وليد، أعيش في قرية صغيرة على النيل. أبي مزارع هو يزرع الطماطم، البطاطس، البلح والبصل. لديا بعض الحيوانات أيضًا. فيوجد ستة من الخراف واثنان من الجاموس. يوجد بعض الحمير في قريتي، ولكن عائلتي لا تمتلك أي منهم الآن. يمكنكم أن تروا القطط في الشارع، وإذا كنت محظوظًا، سترى بعض الأوز المصري الجميل في النهر. تعيش أسرتي في منزل تقليدي. يوجد سبعة أفراد يعيشون فيه. يوجد رجلان في عائلتي هما أبي وجدي، وامرأتان هما أمي وجدتي. وبالطبع هناك بعض الأطفال أيضًا! أنا لدي أختان ولكن لا يوجد أطفال رُضع لأننا جميعًا كبرنا. هل لديك أي أخوة أو أخوات ؟

Language

Plural صيغة الجمع

1 Regular plural nouns أسماء الجمع المنتظمة

Noun الاسم	Plural الجمع	Examples أمثلة
Most nouns معظم الأسماء	يضاف لها (s)	girl → girls cat → cats
Nouns end in (z / s / ss / x / o / sh / ch)	يضاف لها (es)	fox → foxes tomato → tomatoes
Nouns end in (vowel + o)	الأسماء المنتهية بحرف (o) وقبلها حرف متحرك يضاف لها (s)	zoo → zoos radio → radios
Nouns end in (consonant + y)	الأسماء المنتهية بحرف (y) قبله حرف ساكن، يحول حرف (y) إلى (i) ويضاف (es)	city → cities baby → babies family → families
Nouns end in –f	الأسماء المنتهية بحرف (f) يحول حرف (f) إلى (v) ويضاف لها (es)	shelf → shelves scarf → scarves

2 Irregular plural nouns أسماء الجمع غير المنتظمة

⭐ We don't add –s or –es but they are learnt as they are.
لا يضاف لها (–s) أو (–es) ولكنها تحفظ كما هي.



Some irregular nouns don't change in the plural.
بعض الأسماء الغير منتظمة لا يتغير شكلها من المفرد إلى الجمع.

Singular	Plural
a woman	women
a goose	geese
a man	men
a child	children
a fish	fish
a sheep	sheep
a tooth	teeth
a foot	feet
an ox	oxen
a mouse	mice
a person	people

Note : تحذف أداة (a/an) عند جمع الاسم

Notes for parents

- Help your child identify regular and irregular plural nouns. ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على جمع الأسماء المنتظمة وغير المنتظمة.

Pop Quiz on Language

1 Read and tick (✓) the correct answer.

1. My grandmother has four ....
   - ◯ children
   - ◯ child
2. Tigers have sharp ....
   - ◯ tooth
   - ◯ teeth
3. My .... hurt.
   - ◯ feet
   - ◯ foot
4. Cats like to catch ....
   - ◯ mice
   - ◯ mouse
5. A .... has two wings.
   - ◯ geese
   - ◯ goose
6. Three .... are waiting in line.
   - ◯ woman
   - ◯ women
7. The farmer has twelve ....
   - ◯ sheep
   - ◯ a sheep
8. Many .... like pizza.
   - ◯ people
   - ◯ person

2 Read and write the correct plural form of the words.

1. My (child) .... hate eating pasta.
2. The (tomato) .... I bought are in the fridge.
3. They're sending some (man) .... to fix the broken tables.
4. How many (mango) .... do you eat ?

3 Write the plural form.

1. a man ......men......
2. a desk ....
3. a fish ....
4. a woman ....
5. a baby ....
6. a foot ....
7. a mouse ....
8. a cherry ....
9. a tooth ....
10. a glass ....

1. Ask your child to read and tick (✓) the correct answer. . اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويضع علامة (✓) أمام الإجابة الصحيحة
2. Ask your child to read and write the correct plural for the given words. . اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويكتب صيغة الجمع الصحيحة للكلمات المعطاة
3. Ask your child to write the plural to the given words. . اطلب من طفلك أن يكتب صيغة الجمع للكلمات المعطاه

 Listen, read and role-play.

استمع، اقرأ وتبادل الأدوار.

Presenter : Have you ever wondered why cities develop where they do ? As you can probably imagine, there are several reasons. Today we are talking to Dr. Hossam about this topic. Welcome to our program, Dr. Hossam.

هل تساءلت يومًا لماذا تتطور المدن فى مكان إقامتها؟ كما يمكنك أن تتخيل على الأرجح، هناك عدة أسباب. اليوم نتحدث مع الدكتور حسام حول هذا الموضوع. مرحبًا بكم فى برنامجنا يا دكتور حسام.

Dr. Hossam : Thank you. So, one of the main reasons is for food and transportation. Have you ever noticed that a lot of cities are developed near bodies of water ? These can be rivers, lakes or oceans.

شكرًا لك. لذا، فإن أحد الأسباب الرئيسية هو الطعام والمواصلات. هل سبق لك أن لاحظت أن الكثير من المدن قد تم تطويرها بالقرب من المسطحات المائية؟ يمكن أن تكون هذه الأنهار أو البحيرات أو المحيطات.

Presenter : So why are bodies of water important for cities then ?

فلماذا تعتبر المسطحات المائية مهمة للمدن إذن؟

Dr. Hossam : For one thing, they have animals in them, like fish and birds, which gives people food to eat. Another important reason is that people can use them for transportation. If a city wants to trade its goods with other places, they can be more easily moved to other places on boats. Another very important reason is that fresh water can be used for irrigation. Farmers need to water their plants, you know.

لأحد الأسباب ، لديهم حيوانات فيها، مثل الأسماك والطيور، مما يعطى الناس طعامًا ليأكلوه. سبب آخر مهم هو أن الناس يستخدمونها للنقل. إذا أرادت مدينة أن تتاجر بسلعها مع أماكن أخرى، فيمكن أن يتم نقلهم بسهولة إلى أماكن أخرى على متن القوارب. سبب آخر مهم للغاية هو أنه يمكن استخدام المياه العذبة للري. يحتاج المزارعون الي سقي نباتاتهم، كما تعلم.

Notes for parents

• Help your child to listen, read the dialogue and role-play it with his/her.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع، يقرأ المحادثة ويتبادل الأدوار مع زملائه.

Presenter : Are there any other geographic features which make good places to start a city ?

هل هناك أى ميزات جغرافية أخرى تشكل أماكن جيدة لبدء مدينة؟

Dr. Hossam : Yes, there are. Mountains are another place around the world where cities develop. Cities develop in the mountains because historically they are easier to protect. There are also minerals and good water sources in some mountains. The only bad part is that transportation is more difficult so they might be more isolated than cities near water.

نعم ، يوجد. هناك الجبال هى مكان آخر حول العالم تتطور فيه المدن. تتطور المدن فى الجبال لأنها تاريخيًا يسهل حمايتها. كما توجد معادن ومصادر مياه جيدة فى بعض الجبال. الجزء السيئ الوحيد هو أن التنقل أصعب لذا فقد يكونون أكثر عزلة من المدن القريبة من المياه.

Presenter : Oh, I didn't think of that. Are there any more reasons ?

أوه، لم أفكر فى ذلك. هل هناك أسباب أخرى؟

Dr. Hossam : Let me see. Well, a third big reason is because of natural resources. If there is a lot of natural resources in an area, a city may develop there.

دعنى أرى. حسنًا، السبب الرئيسى الثالث هو الموارد الطبيعية. إذا كان هناك الكثير من الموارد الطبيعية فى منطقة ما، فقد تتطور المدينة هناك.

Presenter : Can you give us an example ? هل يمكنك أن تعطينا مثالًا؟

Dr. Hossam : Of course - there are a lot of them, but oil, coal, aluminum, or copper are a few examples. Forests also give us a very important natural resource - paper.

بالطبع هناك الكثير منها، لكن النفط ، الفحم ، الألمنيوم والنحاس أمثلة قليلة. توفر لنا الغابات أيضًا موردًا طبيعيًا مهمًا للغاية - الورق.

Presenter : Very interesting. Thank you very much, Dr. Hossam.

مثير جدًا. شكرًا جزيلًا لك دكتور حسام.

General Exercises on Lesson 2

• Understand • Apply • Create

1 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

irrigation - sheep - fish - goods

A lot of cities are developed near rivers, lakes or oceans. They have animals, like (1) .... and birds, which give people food to eat. A city trades its (2) .... with other places, they can be more easily moved to other places on boats. Fresh water can be used for (3) ....

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. How many .... does your cat catch ?
   a. mouse's b. mice c. a mouse d. mouse
2. There are three .... work in my office.
   a. a person b. person's c. person d. people
3. Three .... are waiting in line.
   a. woman b. women c. a woman d. woman's
4. .... like water.
   a. Geese b. Goose c. Goose's d. A goose

3 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. from - get - the water - People - food.

....

2. see - the - cats - street - can - You - in.

....

3. a small - I - village - live in - the Nile - on.

....

Notes for parents

1. Ask your child to read and complete the text with the words from the box.
2. Ask your child to choose the correct answer.
3. Ask your child to read, order the words and write the sentences correctly.

- اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويكمل النص بالكلمات من المربع.
- اطلب من طفلك أن يختار الإجابة الصحيحة.
- اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ، يرتب الكلمات ويكتب الجمل بطريقة صحيحة.

4 Read the following text and answer the questions below.

Hello, I'm Waleed's dad and this is my farm. I've got some sheep and two buffaloes on my farm. We used to have donkeys but we don't have any now. I grow a lot of dates, onions and some potatoes. We live near the river and this year, there are two Egyptian geese on the river. And they have three young goslings. They're really small.

I live in a traditional house with my family. I have three children. Waleed is my youngest child. The women in my family are my wife and my mother. And there are two men, me and my dad.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Waleed's family lives near the ....
   a. ocean b. desert c. river d. forest
2. The Egyptian geese have three young ....
   a. donkeys b. sheep c. buffaloes d. goslings

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Who is Waleed ?

   ....

4. What does Waleed's dad grow ?

   ....

5 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements.

Your village life

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

Guiding questions :

1. Where do you live ?
2. What is your father's job ?
3. What does he do ?
4. What services are there ?



....

....

....

....

4. Ask your child to read the text and answer the given questions.
- اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ النص ويجيب عن الأسئلة المعطاة.

5. Ask your child to write a text of (50) words using the given guiding questions.
- اطلب من طفلك أن يكتب نص مكون من (٥٠) كلمة مستخدمًا الأسئلة الإرشادية المعطاة.

Lesson 3

• Language



Vocabulary

Listen and repeat. استمع وردد.

Key vocabulary

artisans	حرفيون	dye	صبغة / يصبغ
warp	خيوط النسيج	spin	يغزل / ينسج
yarn	خيط / غزل	wool	صوف
carpet	سجادة	weave	ينسج

Extra vocabulary

workshop	ورشة عمل	spun cotton	القطن المنسوج
craft	حرفة / مهارة	machine	ماكينة / آلة
dark colors	ألوان غامقة - داكنة	loom	نول (اسم آلة)
synthetic	صناعي - مصطنع	geometric patterns	أشكال هندسية
structure	تركيب - أساس	skill	مهارة

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular

Present		Past
explain	يشرح	explained
collect	يجمع	collected
prefer	يفضل	preferred
design	يصمم	designed
decorate	يزين	decorated
guess	يخمن	guessed
dry	يجفف	dried
boil	يغلى	boiled

Irregular

Present		Past
learn	يتعلم	learned / learnt
take	يأخذ	took
make	يصنع	made

Notes for parents

• Help your child listen to the words and repeat them.

• ساعد طفلك أن يستمع إلى الكلمات ويرددهم

Important expressions and prepositions — تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

• traditional Egyptian crafts — الحرف اليدوية المصرية التقليدية	• ready for ..... — مستعد لـ .....
• spinning and weaving workshop — ورشة الغزل والنسيج	• the same — مطابق - مماثل
• make by hand — يصنع يدويًا	• pick out — يختار / يلتقط
	• make it into — يصنعوا منه / يحولوا إلى

Listen and read.

Pop Quiz | تدرب على ٩٩ من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع

Visiting a Carpet Workshop



Last summer I really wanted to learn about traditional Egyptian crafts[1]. So, my grandma took me to a spinning[2] and weaving[3] workshop so that I could learn about this craft. The guide explained how the artisans make the carpets while we watched them weave[4].

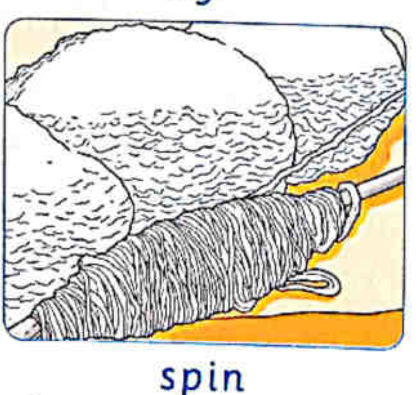
First, they collect the wool from sheep. They have to clean, wash, and dry the wool before they can use it. The artisans[5] spin the wool to make it into yarn after they clean it.

Then, they need to dye the yarn[6]-that is how it gets its color. I think the bright colors are the most beautiful ones even though some people prefer dark colors.

Check Vocabulary

(1) حرف
(2) غزل
(3) نسيج
(4) ينسج
(5) حرفيون
(6) خيط - غزل


dye


spin

• Help your child listen to the text and read it.

- ساعد طفلك أن يستمع إلى النص ويقرأه.

زيارة ورشة سجاد في الصيف الماضي كنت أريد حقًا أن أتعلم عن الحرف المصرية التقليدية. لذلك، أخذتني جدتي إلى ورشة الغزل والنسيج لكي أستطيع أن أتعلم عن هذه الحرفة. قام المرشد بتوضيح كيف يصنع الحرفيون السجاد بينما كنا نشاهدهم وهم ينسجون. أولًا، يقومون بجمع الصوف من الأغنام. وعليهم أن ينظفوا ويغسلوا ويجففوا الصوف قبل أن يستخدموه. يقوم الحرفيون بغزل الصوف ليصنعوا منه خيوط بعد تنظيفه. ثم يحتاجون إلى أن يقوموا بصبغ الخيط هذه هي الطريقة التي تحصل بها على لونها. اعتقد أن الألوان الزاهية هي الأكثر جمالًا على الرغم من أن بعض الناس يفضلون الألوان الداكنة.

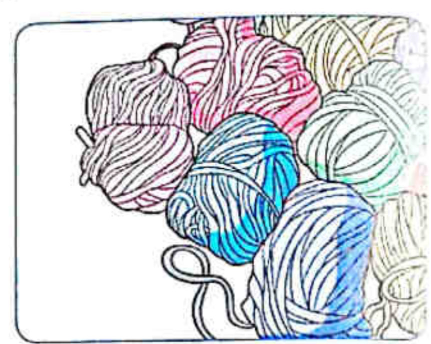
These artisans only use natural vegetable dyes, although some other workshops use synthetic dyes. My grandma and I like the natural vegetable dyes as they are more traditional. So, now I guess you're wondering how they dye the wool. Well, I learned that different plants and roots are first grown in a rural(7) village. Then they use these plants and roots to make beautiful dyes to color the wool. They have to boil(8) the yarn with the dyes, and then let it dry. As soon as the yarn is dry, they can use it to weave a carpet.

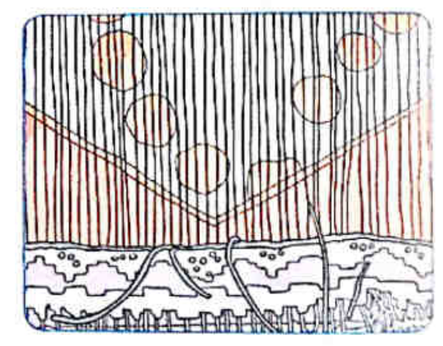
Before the artisans can weave the carpets, they have to make the warp(9). The warp is the structure of the carpet(10). They make the warp using spun Egyptian cotton(11). Later, they use the warp and the dyed wool(12) to make beautiful carpets. The artisans make the carpets by hand using a machine called a loom. They add the different colored yarn to make geometric patterns.

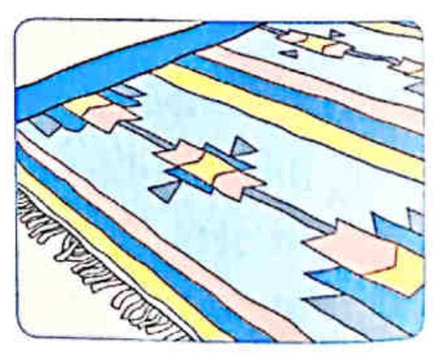
My grandma let me pick out a carpet for my bedroom. Every time I look at it, I remember how much work and skill it takes to make just one carpet.

Check Vocabulary

قروى (7)
يغلى (8)
خيوط سداة النسيج (9)
سجادة (10)
قطن (11)
صوف (12)


yarn


warp


carpet



Notes for parents

يستخدم هؤلاء الحرفيون فقط الأصباغ النباتية الطبيعية، على الرغم من أن بعض ورش العمل الأخرى تستخدم الأصباغ الصناعية. أنا وجدتي نحب الأصباغ النباتية الطبيعية لأنها تقليدية أكثر. لذلك، الآن أنا أخمن أنك تتساءل كيف يقومون بصباغة الصوف. حسنًا، لقد تعلمت أن النباتات والجذور المختلفة تنمو فى البداية فى قرية ريفية. ثم يستخدمون هذه النباتات والجذور لصنع أصباغ جميلة لتلوين الصوف. يجب أن يقوموا بغلى الخيوط مع الأصباغ وبعد ذلك يتركوه ليجف. فبمجرد أن يجف، يستطيعون أن يستخدموه فى نسيج السجاد. قبل أن ينسج الحرفيون السجاد كان عليهم أن يصنعوا خيوط النسيج. فالخيوط هى بنية السجاد. أنهم يصنعون الخيوط باستخدام القطن المصرى المغزول. ومؤخرًا يستخدمون بنية السجاد والصوف المصبوغ لصنع سجاد جميل. يقوم الحرفيون بصناعة السجاد اليدوى مستخدمين ماكينة تسمى النول. إنهم يضيفون ألوان مختلفة من الغزل لصنع أنماط هندسية. جعلتنى جدتى أختار سجادة لغرفة نومى. ففى كل مرة انظر إليها، اتذكر مدى العمل والمهارة التى استغرقت لعمل سجادة واحدة فقط.

Language

The conjunctions الروابط

1 After بعد

ex. - After I went to the club, I met my friends there.

2 Before قبل

ex. - We had to chop the vegetables before we cooked them.

3 So that لكى so that + الغرض أو السبب

ex. - Salma is studying English so that she can be a journalist.

4 Although على الرغم من - لربط فكرتين متناقضتين.

ex. - Tamer couldn't eat although he was hungry.

5 Even though رغم أن - لربط فكرتين متناقضتين.

ex. - I watched Amr play football even though I don't like sports.

6 While بينما / أثناء - لربط حدثان فى نفس التوقيت.

ex. - We chatted with our friends while we waited for the bus.

7 Every time كل مرة

ex. - My little sister dances every time she hears this song.

8 As soon as بمجرد أن - لربط فكرتين أو حدثين متتاليتين.

ex. - Malak ran inside as soon as it started raining.

• Help your child to identify the conjunctions. - ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على الروابط



Pop Quiz on Language

1 Read and tick (✓) the correct answer.

1. .... I was tired, I managed to finish the work.
   ◯ Although ◯ But ◯ And
2. It was late .... I went home.
   ◯ so that ◯ as soon as ◯ but
3. He was watching TV .... I was studying.
   ◯ when ◯ while ◯ although
4. Hamza ran upstairs to see his little brother .... he got home.
   ◯ but ◯ as soon as ◯ even though
5. I opened the present yesterday .... I came back home.
   ◯ after ◯ but ◯ or
6. .... the lesson ends, I'll go home.
   ◯ As soon as ◯ Before ◯ Until

2 Read and circle the correct answer.

1. I have lunch .... I get home from school.
   as soon as while even though so that
2. I understand what I learned .... I did my homework.
   while before so that even though
3. She was studying .... she was sick.
   while although every time before
4. .... I went home, I took a shower.
   Before So that While As soon as

Notes for parents

1. Ask your child to read and tick (✓) for the correct answer. اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويضع علامة (✓) أمام الإجابة الصحيحة.
2. Ask your child to read and circle the correct answer. اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

General Exercises on Lesson 3

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

• Understand • Apply • Create

1 Listen and complete.

1. The warp is the structure of the ....
2. The artisans can .... the carpets.
3. The artisans make the carpets by ....
4. They add the different colored .... to make geometric patterns.

2 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. from - wool - The artisans - sheep - the - collect.

....

2. use - weave - They - to - a carpet - yarn - can.

....

3 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

loom - carpet - artisans - wool

Salma's grandma took her to a spinning and weaving workshop. The guide at the workshop explained how the (1) .... make the carpets. They collect the wool from the sheep. They have to clean, wash and dry the (2) .... before they can use it. Artisans spin the wool to make it into yarn. They dye the yarn then the artisans can weave a (3) ....

1. Ask your child to listen and complete the sentences.
- اطلب من طفلك أن يستمع ويكمل الجمل
2. Ask your child to order the words to make correct sentences.
- اطلب من طفلك أن يرتب الكلمات ويكتب الجمل بطريقة صحيحة
3. Ask your child to read and complete the text with words from the box.
- اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويكمل النص بكلمات من المربع

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. I change my clothes .... I get home from school.
   a. so that b. as soon as c. also d. even though
2. I don't talk .... the teacher is talking.
   a. while b. before c. even so d. as soon as
3. I do my homework .... I can get good grades.
   a. before b. every time c. while d. so that
4. I'll have a bath .... I go to work.
   a. as soon as b. while c. before d. every time

5 Read the text and answer the questions below.

My grandma and I like the natural vegetable dyes as they are more traditional. So, now I guess you're wondering how the artisans dye the wool. Well, I learned that different plants and roots are first grown in a rural village. Then, they use these plants and roots to make beautiful dyes to color the wool.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. They use dyes to .... the wool.
   a. color b. use c. dry d. cry
2. You wonder how the .... dye the wool.
   a. artisans b. roots c. farmers d. teachers

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Why do they like natural vegetable dyes ?

....

4. Why do they use plants and roots ?

....

Notes for parents

4. Ask your child to choose the correct answer. اطلب من طفلك أن يختار الإجابة الصحيحة.
5. Ask your child to read the text and answer the given questions. اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ النص ويجيب عن الأسئلة المعطاة له.

Lesson 4

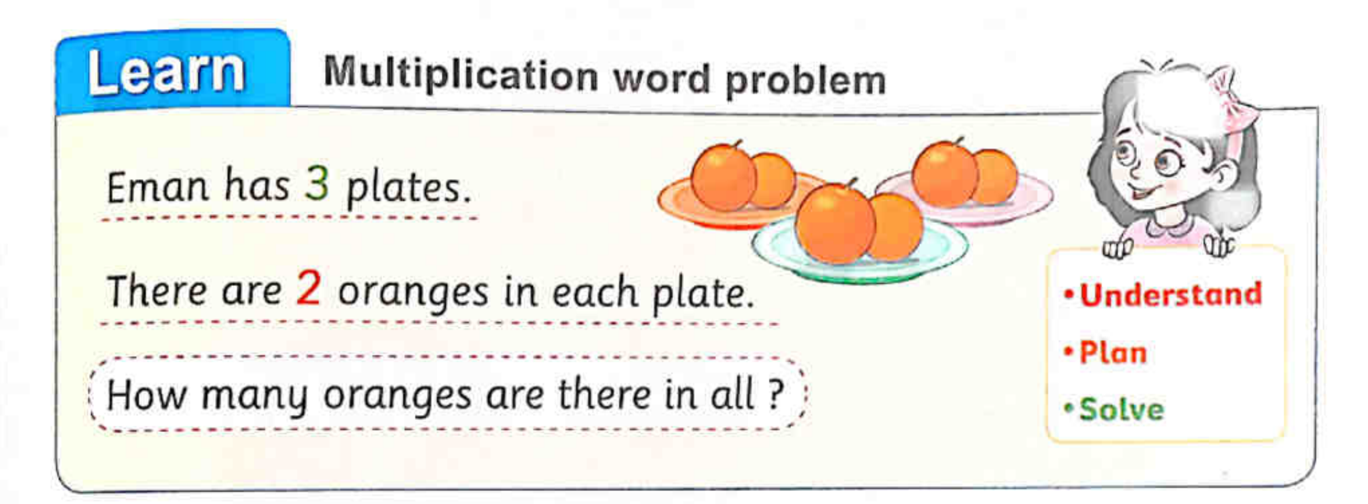
• CLIL : Math




Vocabulary

⭐ **Listen and repeat.** استمع وردد.

tops	نحل دوار	potter	صانع الخزف - فخارى
work on a project	ينفذ مشروع	pots	أوانى
in group of	فى مجموعة مكونة من	sack	كيس
sell ⟶ sold	يبيع ⟵ باع	loaf	رغيف خبز



Learn — Multiplication word problem

Eman has 3 plates.

There are 2 oranges in each plate.

How many oranges are there in all ?

• Understand
• Plan
• Solve



Understand

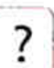
- What do you want to find out ? Circle the question.
- What fact do you need ? Underline them.



Plan

- Write a number sentence to solve. $3 \times 2 = ?$







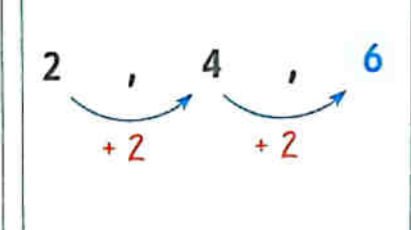
Solve

- You can use one of these different ways to solve the problem.

• Help your child listen to the words and repeat them. ـ ساعد طفلك أن يستمع إلى الكلمات ويرددهم

• Help your child learn about different ways to solve multiplication word problem.

ـ ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم عن طرق مختلفة لحل المسائل الكلامية الخاصة بعملية الضرب

Using repeated addition	Using skip counting	Using objects
2 + 2 + 2 = 6		These are 3 rows of 2 arrays. There are 6 objects.

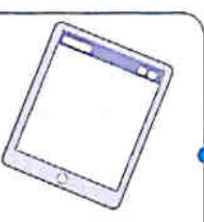
So, **3 x 2 = 6**



Pop Quiz on Math

- **Read and match each problem to the suitable multiplication sentence.**

◦ Ali downloaded 3 games onto his tablet. The next day he downloaded 3 more.



How many games has he downloaded ?

◦ A guitar has 6 strings.



How many strings are there in 2 guitars ?

◦ There are 5 apples in a box.



How many apples are there in 2 boxes ?

- 6 x 2 = 12
- 2 x 5 = 10
- 3 x 2 = 6

Notes for parents

- Ask your child to read each story problem carefully to determine the suitable multiplication sentence and match.

- اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ كل مسألة كلامية بعناية ليحدد عملية الضرب المناسبة ويصل



How to solve word problems on division.

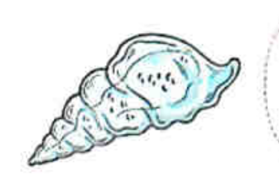
كيفية حل المسائل الكلامية على القسمة.

Remember

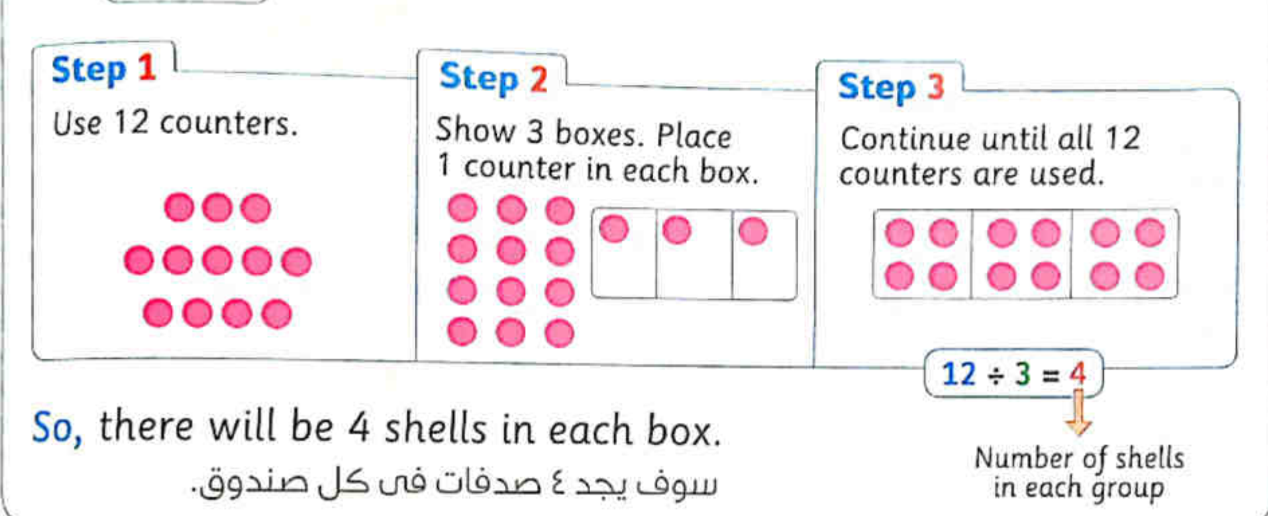
When you divide, you separate into equal groups.

PROBLEM :

Wael has 12 shells. He wants to put the same number of shells in each of 3 boxes. How many shells will be in each box ?



find $12 \div 3$ as follows :



Step 1

Use 12 counters.

Step 2

Show 3 boxes. Place 1 counter in each box.

Step 3

Continue until all 12 counters are used.

$12 \div 3 = 4$

Number of shells in each group

So, there will be 4 shells in each box.

سوف يجد ٤ صدفات في كل صندوق.

Pop Quiz on Math

05 min

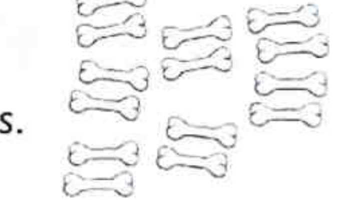
- **Read, think and solve.**

A boy gives his dog 2 dog treats each day. He has 14 dog treats. How many days will the dog treats last ?





☐ ÷ ☐ = ☐ It will last for ☐ days.



• Ask your child to read and solve word problems on division. . اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويحل المسائل الكلامية على القسمة

Learn ⭐ Look and read.

انظر واقرأ.

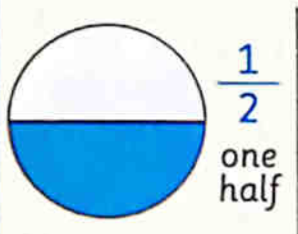
Name fraction

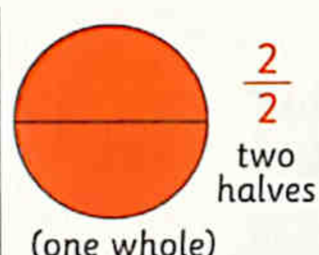


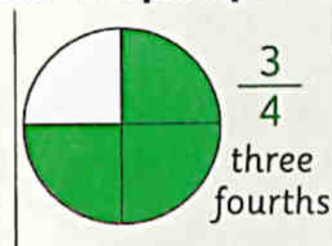
$\frac{2}{4}$ of equal parts have jam.

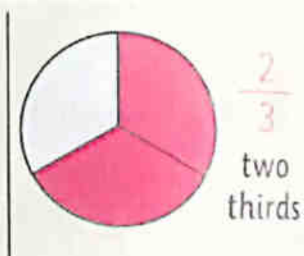
Two fourths of the biscuit has jam.

A fraction can name more than 1 equal part of a whole.





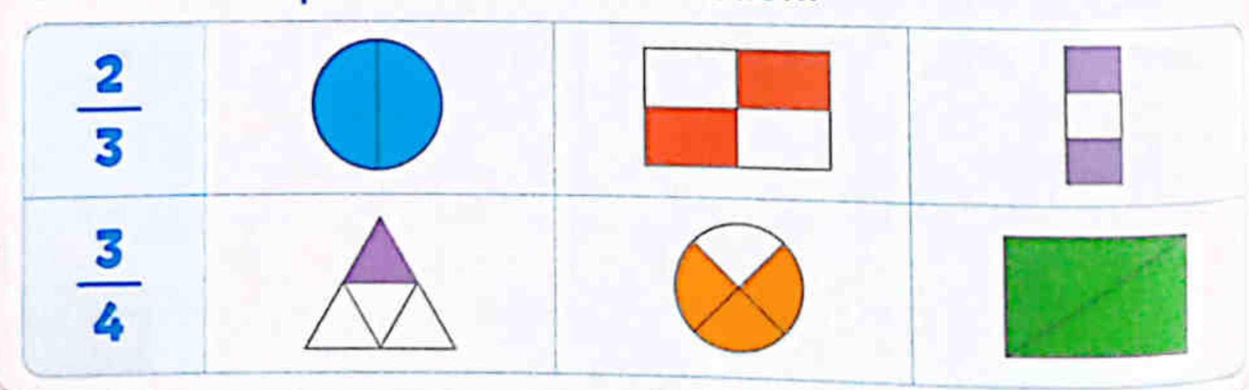






Pop Quiz on Math

- **Circle the shape that shows the fraction.**



Notes for parents

- Help your child look at the pictures and read.
- A fraction is a part of the whole $\frac{1}{2}$ (1 ← Numerator, 2 ← Denominator)
- Ask your child to circle the shape that shows the fractions.
  - The numerator tells how many parts are being identified.
  - The denominator tells the total number of equal parts in the whole.

ساعد طفلك في النظر إلى الصور والقراءة.
الكسر هو جزء من الواحد الصحيح (١ ← البسط، ٢ ← المقام)
اطلب من طفلك أن يضع دائرة حول الشكل المناسب للكسر
البسط يذكر كم عدد الأجزاء المعدودة.
المقام يذكر الجزء الكلي في الواحد الصحيح

Learn Fractions word problems

Maged had a bar of chocolate. He divided it into 4 equal parts, and ate one of them.

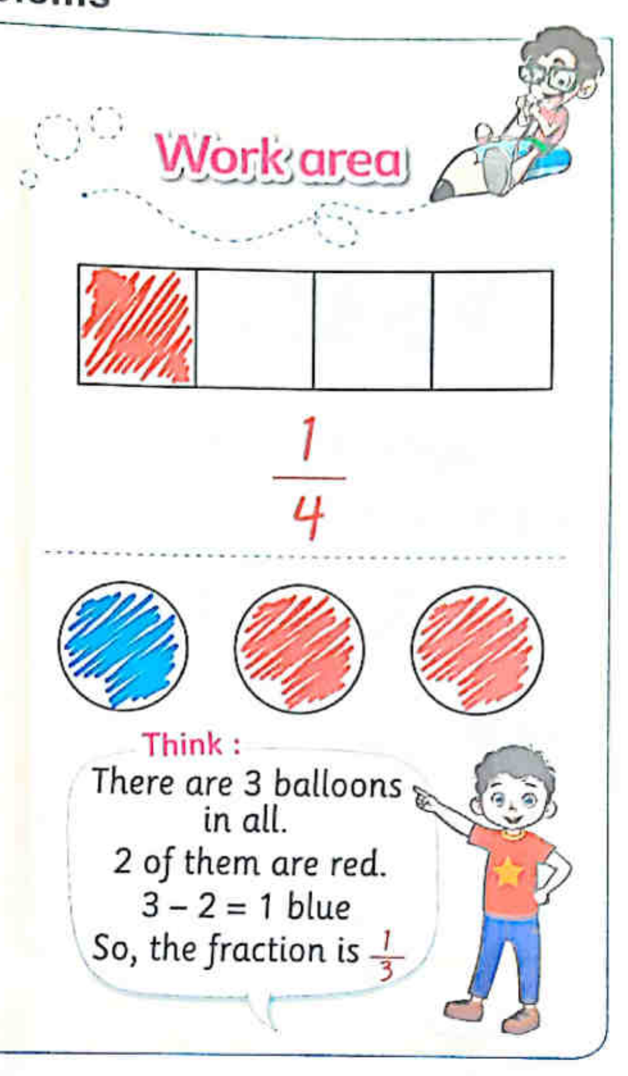


- What fraction of the chocolate did he eat ? $\frac{1}{4}$

Laila has 3 balloons. 2 of them are red and the rest is blue.



- What fraction of the balloons are blue ? $\frac{1}{3}$



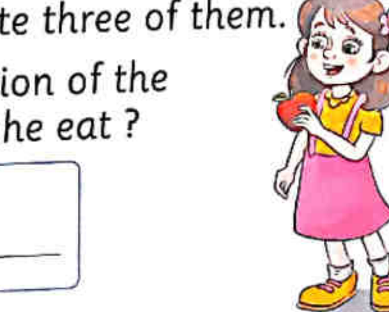


Pop Quiz on Math

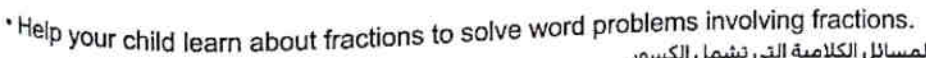
- **Read, think and solve.**

★ Yara has one apple.
She chopped it into four equal pieces and ate three of them.

- What fraction of the apple did she eat ?







• Help your child learn about fractions to solve word problems involving fractions.

- ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم عن الكسور لحل المسائل الكلامية التي تشمل الكسور.

• Ask your child to draw a rectangle or a circle and divide it into equal parts to model each problem, that helps your child to solve easily.

- اطلب من طفلك أن يرسم مستطيل أو دائرة ويقسمها إلى أجزاء متساوية ليصمم كل مسألة لتساعده في حلها بسهولة.

Lessons **5 & 6**

• My city
• Writing



Vocabulary



استمع وردد.

Key vocabulary

port	ميناء	transportation	وسائل المواصلات (النقل)
neighborhood	حى	location	موقع
smart growth	النمو الذكى	planners	مخططين

Extra vocabulary

Mediterranean Sea	البحر المتوسط	services	خدمات
industry	صناعة	Montaza Palace	قصر المنتزه
apartment	شقة	important	هام
parents	الوالدين	wherever	أينما - فى أى مكان



Conjugation of verbs — تصريف الأفعال

Regular

Present		Past
work	يعمل	worked
enjoy	يستمتع	enjoyed
use	يستخدم	used
visit	يزور	visited
protect	يحمى	protected

Irregular

Present		Past
have	يملك	had
buy	يشترى	bought

Important expressions and prepositions — تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

- as you might know — كما قد تعلم
- the second largest city — ثانى أكبر مدينة

Notes for parents

- Help your child listen to the words and repeat them.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع إلى الكلمات ويرددها

Listen and read.

Pop Quiz تدرب على ٢٩ من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع

Alexandria

I'm Dina and I'm going to tell you about myself today.

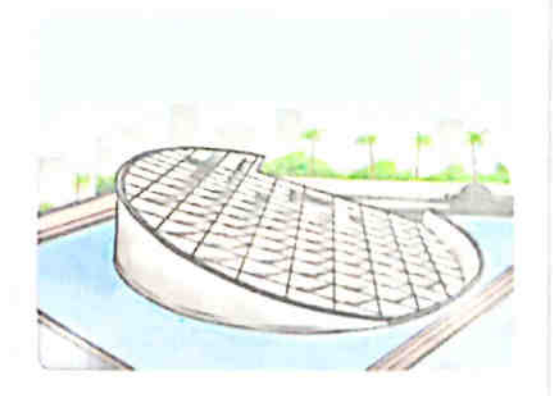
1. My city



I live in Alexandria. It's a beautiful city on the Mediterranean Sea[1]. As you might know, It's the second largest city in Egypt with a population[2] of more than 5 million people. It has an important port and there is a lot of industry here too.

Check Vocabulary

- البحر المتوسط (1)
- تعداد سكانى (2)
- حى (3)
- شقة سكنية (4)
- خدمات (5)
- قصر المنتزه (6)



2. My neighborhood

I live with my family in an apartment in a neighborhood[3] called Amrya. There are 6 people in my family : my parents, my grandparents, my brother Magdy and me. Our apartment[4] isn't big, but it isn't small either.



3. What I like

I like my city because we have a lot of services[5]. We have schools, hospitals, and lots of shops where you can buy anything you need. We can also use the bus to go wherever we want. One of my favorite places is Montaza Palace[6]. There are beautiful gardens that I sometimes visit with my family.
I love my city very much and I hope you visit Alexandria one day.

* Help your child to listen and read the text.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ النص



Read and learn.

اقرأ وتعلم.

How to write a clear paragraph

1. Use several short paragraphs instead of one or two long ones.
استخدم فقرات قصيرة متعددة بدلًا من فقرة أو فقرتين طوال.
2. You can give each paragraph a heading.
يمكنك إعطاء عنوان لكل فقرة.



Pop Quiz on Writing skill

- **Write a text about your city.** اكتب نص عن مدينتك.

Fact file

My city

City : ....

Population : ....

Sites : ....

My neighborhood

Home : ....

Family : ....

What I like

Likes : ....

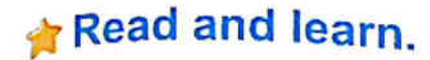
Favorite places : ....

Good services : ....

Notes for parents

- Help your child learn how to write a clear paragraph.
- Ask your child to write a fact file about his / her city.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم كيف يكتب فقرة انشائية واضحة
اطلب من طفلك أن يكتب ملف حقائق عن مدينته / مدينتها



What is Smart Growth ?

Smart growth(1) is a way to plan(2) new areas of a city. Smart growth planners(3) want to protect the environment(4) and improve(5) the lives of people living in them. Here are some of the ideas behind smart growth :

- People can walk to work or school.
- There's good public transportation(6) and no cars.
- People have all of the services that they need close to their homes: shops, markets, doctors , government offices(7), etc.
- There are green spaces(8) for people to enjoy.

Check Vocabulary

(1) النمو الذكى
(2) يصمم / يخطط
(3) مخططين
(4) بيئة
(5) يحسن
(6) مواصلات عامة
(7) مكاتب الحكومة
(8) مساحات خضراء

Read and choose the correct answer :

Learn

1. Smart growth .... want to protect the environment.
   a. engineers b. teachers c. vets d. planners

Practice

2. People can .... to school.
   a. walk b. cycle c. drive d. fly
3. There are .... spaces for people to enjoy.
   a. blue b. green c. yellow d. red

• Help your child read and learn about smart growth.

- ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويتعلم عن النمو الذكى.

ما هو النمو الذكى ؟ النمو الذكى هو طريقة لتصميم مناطق جديدة فى مدينة. يريد مخططين النمو الذكى أن يحموا البيئة ويحسنوا حياة الأشخاص الذين يعيشون فيها
هنا بعض الأفكار وراء النمو الذكى
- يستطيع الناس أن يسيروا إلى العمل أو المدرسة
- يوجد وسائل مواصلات عامة جيدة ولا يوجد سيارات
- يوجد جميع الخدمات التى يحتاجها الناس أن تكون قريبة من منازلهم . المحلات ، الأسواق ، أطباء ، مكاتب حكومية ، إلخ
- يوجد مساحات خضراء للناس لكى يستمتعوا

General Exercises on Lessons 5 & 6

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

• Understand • Apply • Create

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Dina lives in ....
   a. Luxor b. Cairo c. Aswan d. Alexandria
2. Alexandria is a / an .... on the Mediterranean Sea.
   a. village b. city c. town d. oasis
3. Alexandria is the .... largest city in Egypt.
   a. first b. second c. third d. fourth
4. Alexandria has an important ....
   a. port b. lake c. river d. ship



2 Listen and complete.

1. .... growth is a way to plan new areas of a city.
2. Planners of smart growth want to protect the ....
3. There is good .... transportation and no cars.
4. There are green .... for people to enjoy.

3 Read and complete the dialogue from the words in the box.

Mediterranean – family – Alexandria – services

Nada : Hello ! My name's Nada.
Shorouk : Hello ! I'm Shorouk. Where do you live ?
Nada : I live in (1) ....
Shorouk : Oh ! It's a beautiful city on the (2) .... Sea.
Nada : That's right. I like my city because we have a lot of (3) ....
Shorouk : That sounds good.

Notes for parents

1. Ask your child to listen and circle the correct answer. اطلب من طفلك أن يستمع ويضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة
2. Ask your child to listen and complete the sentences with the correct words. اطلب من طفلك أن يستمع ويكمل الجمل بالكلمات الصحيحة
3. Ask your child to read and complete the dialogue with the correct word from the box. اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويكمل المحادثة بالكلمة الصحيحة من المربع أعلاه

4 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. six - in - There - my - family - are - people.

....

2. can - to - work - People - walk - school - or.

....

3. good - There's - transportation - my - in - village.

....

5 Read the following text and answer the questions below.

My name's Hossam. I live in Marsa Matruh. I like my city because we have a lot of services. We have schools, hospitals, and lots of shops where you can buy anything you need. I live with my family in an apartment in a neighborhood called Alexandria Street. There are six people in my family : My parents, my grandparents, my brother Ahmed and me. Our apartment isn't big, but it isn't small either. We can use the bus to go wherever we want.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. We can buy anything we need from ....
   a. schools   b. hospitals   c. gardens   d. shops
2. We can use the .... to go wherever we want.
   a. plane   b. bus   c. truck   d. van

B. Answer the following questions.

3. How many members does Hossam's family have ?

....

4. Who does Hossam live with ?

....

4 Ask your child to read, order the words and write the sentences correctly.
- اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ، يرتب الكلمات ويكتب الجمل بطريقة صحيحة

5 Ask your child to read the text and answer the questions.
- اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ النص ويجيب عن الأسئلة

Test your skills Unit 4



If you got ● you need to revise the unit again on the next page.

قم بتقييم نفسك بالعلامات الموضحة وإذا حصلت على ● غير جيد قم بمراجعة الوحدة مرة أخرى في الصفحة التالية.

My Dictation

1 Read and write the meaning.

اقرأ وأكتب المعنى.

A. congestion ....

sparse ....

dye ....

pedestrian ....

weave ....

B. .... معزول

.... حرفيون

.... سجادة

.... خيط / غزل

.... تعداد السكان

My Language

2 Correct the underlined words.

صحح الكلمات التي تحتها خط.

1. There are four girl.

....

2. When you help her, she doesn't help anyone.

....

3. As soon as they have a lot of money, they're still not happy.

....

My Reading

3 Read and tick (✓) for the correct answer.

اقرأ وضع علامة (✓) أمام الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. Cairo is a metropolitan area and .... populated.
   ◯ densely ◯ sparsely
2. The .... make the carpets while we watched them weave.
   ◯ doctors ◯ artisans
3. .... is a way to plan new areas of a city.
   ◯ Smart growth ◯ Transportation
4. Carpets are made from ....
   ◯ cotton ◯ sheep's wool

My Writing

4 Write three(3) sentences under the picture.

اكتب ثلاث جمل تحت الصورة.



dye – carpet – artisans

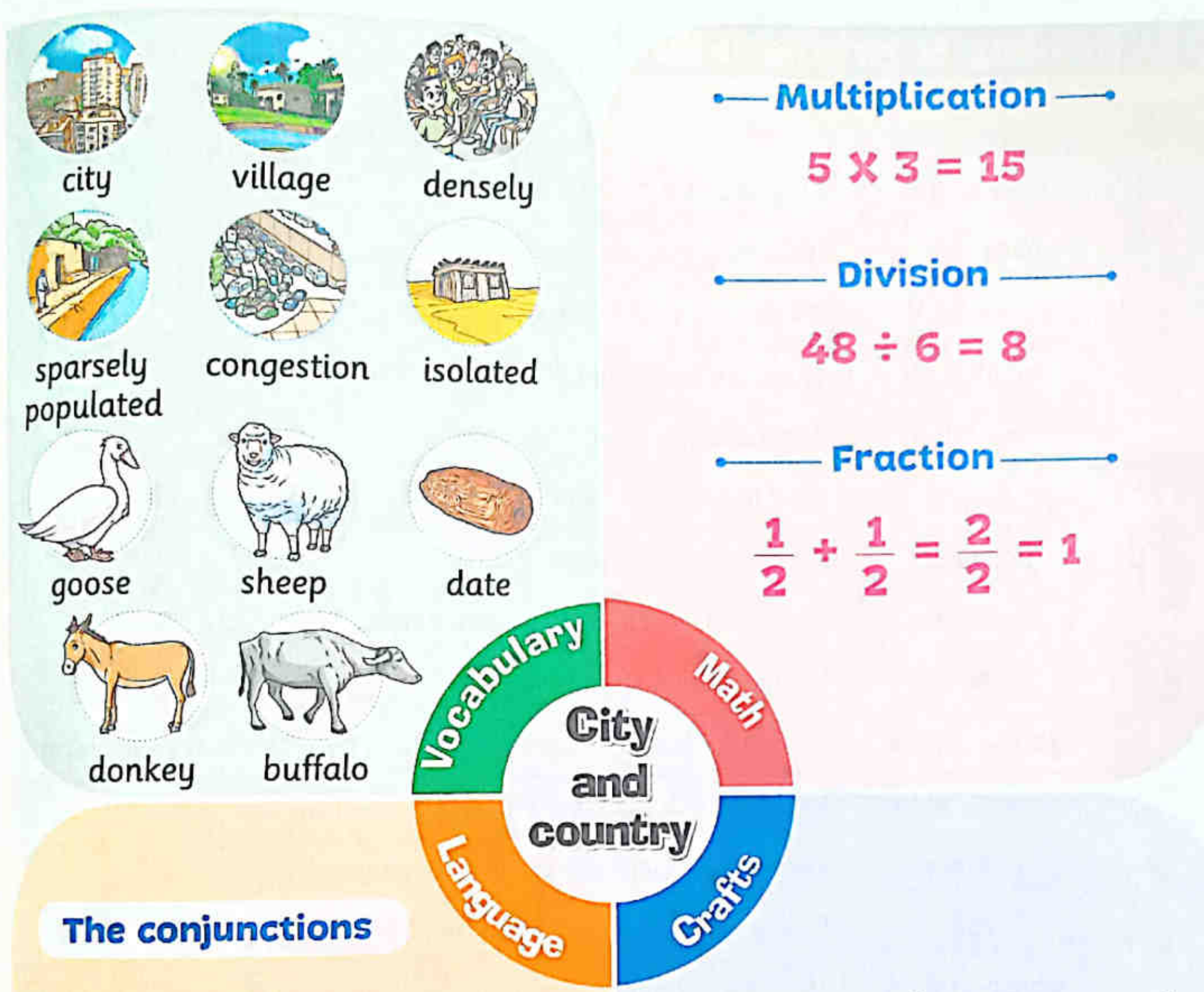
....

....

....

◯ قم بتقييم نفسك بالعلامات الموضحة.

Review on unit 4



The conjunctions

- We are quiet while the teacher is talking.
- I do my homework as soon as I get home from school
- I do well at school so that I understand what I learn.

- The warp is the structure of the carpet.
- They make the warp using spun Egyptian cotton.
- Carpets are made from wool in workshops.
- They use natural vegetable dyes.

- ساعد طفلك في مراجعة الوحدة الرابعة.

• Help your child review unit 4.

Skills



هذا الجزء يمكنك من ربط الكلمات التى درستها بجمل ليساعدك على التمكن من مهارة القراءة والكتابة

1. Reading & writing skills :

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
Living in a city (urban places)	Cairo - live	I live in Greater Cairo.
	metropolitan	It's a metropolitan area.
	populated	It's densely populated.
	inhabitants	There are more than 20 million inhabitants.
	congestion	There is congestion.
Living in a village (rural places)	village	I live in a small village on the Nile.
	populated	It's sparsely populated.
	traditional	My family lives in a traditional home.
	animals	We have some animals.
	farmer - grow	My dad is a farmer. He grows tomatoes, potatoes, dates and onions.
Smart growth	planners - protect	Smart growth planners protect the environment.
	improve	They want to improve the lives of people.
	walk	People can walk to work or school.
	transportation	There's good public transportation and no cars.
	services	People have all the services close to their homes.
	green spaces	There are green spaces for people to enjoy.
A carpet workshop	wool - sheep	They collect the wool from sheep.
	artisans - yarn	The artisans spin the wool to make it into yarn.
	dye - boil	They dye the yarn. They boil the yarn with the dyes.
	cotton	They make the warp using spun Egyptian cotton.
	loom	The artisans make the carpet by hand using a machine called a loom.
	beautiful	They make beautiful carpets.

2. How to make a sentence:

٢. تعلم كيف تكون وترتب جملة.

١ الجمل الخبرية

1. to – me – took – My grandma – workshop - a weaving.
2. Alexandria – in – I – live.

	فاعل	فعل	. باقي الجملة
1			
2			

٢ الجمل الأمرية

1. me – your – Tell – village - about.
2. your – Do – homework.

	Don't	مصدر الفعل	. باقي الجملة
1			
2			

٣ الجمل الأستفهامية

(أ) السؤال بـ (كلمة استفهام .. ؟)

1. do – you – Where – live ?
2. is – city – your – in – What ?

	كلمة الاستفهام	فعل مساعد	فاعل	فعل أساسي	? باقي الجملة
1					
2					

(ب) السؤال بـ (هل .. ؟)

- densely – or – Is – it – sparsely – populated ?

فعل مساعد	فاعل	فعل أساسي	? باقي الجملة
Is			



3. Writing skill :

١- عناصر تساعدك على تنظيم أفكارك للتعامل مع مهارة الكتابة متبوعة بنموذج.

City and country

City

- I live in Alexandria / Luxor / Cairo / Aswan... etc.

Location

1. It's a beautiful city on the Mediterranean Sea.
2. It is in the east / west / north / south of Egypt.

Neighborhood

I live with my family in an apartment in a neighborhood called ....

Services

1. I like my city because we have a lot of services.
2. We have schools, hospitals, and lots of shops.



Transportation

1. We can also use the bus to go wherever we want.
2. We can use the underground.

Likes about your area

1. My favorite place is ....
2. There are beautiful gardens that I sometimes visit with my family.

Read and learn. اقرأ وتعلم.

I am Hadeer and I am 13 years old. I like my school. We have a big classroom. There is a whiteboard. There are a lot of examples of technology. There is a 3D printer. We use it to print our homework. There are tablets which we use in our classroom. There is a laptop and it has a mouse. I have a mobile phone but I do not use it at the classroom. Technology makes our life easy. I sometimes play video games. I look at websites to get information, but I love nature more. I like being in the garden. I like walking and watching trees, animals and flowers. I use my mobile to take photos of nature and share it with my friends.

٢- تعتبر مهارة الكتابة من المهارات الأساسية للتعبير عن فكرة أو موضوع لذا يجب استخدام جمل وأفكار مترابطة. قم بقراءة هذه الجمل لتساعدك على التعامل مع مهارة الكتابة (٢٤ جملة).

1 An urban environment

I live in Greater Cairo.(1) It's an urban environment.(2) It's a metropolitan area and densely populated.(3) There are more than 20 million inhabitants, so it's a very busy place.(4) There are a lot of cars so there's also congestion.(5) If you are a pedestrian, you have to be very careful.(6)

2 Your village

My name's Amr.(7) I live in a small village on the Nile.(8) My dad is a farmer.(9) He grows tomatoes, potatoes, dates, and onions.(10) We have some animals, too.(11) There are six sheep and two buffaloes.(12)

3 Mountains

Cities develop in the mountains.(13) They are good places to start a city.(14) Historically they are easier to protect.(15) There are minerals and good water sources in some mountains.(16) Transportation is more difficult there.(17) It's an isolated place.(18)

4 Alexandria

Alexandria is a beautiful city.(19) It's on the Mediterranean Sea.(20) It's the second largest city in Egypt.(21) There are more than million people live in Alexandria.(22) It has an important port.(23) There is a lot of industry in it.(24)

Test 7 on Unit 4

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

• Understand • Apply • Create

A. Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Dina has a big ....
   a. school b. group c. family d. park
2. Dina is .... years old.
   a. 12 b. 10 c. 11 d. 13
3. .... is Dina's favourite place.
   a. Alexandria Library b. Egyptian Museum
   c. Montaza Palace d. The Red Sea
4. Dina and her family visit Montaza Palace once a ....
   a. month b. week c. year d. day

2 Listen and complete.

1. The .... make the carpets.
2. They collect the .... from sheep to make carpets.
3. They use natural vegetables .... to color the yarn.
4. They spin the wool to make it into ....

B. Reading

3 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box.

inhabitants - city - sparsely - services

Hisham : Hi, Hala. Where do you live ?
Hala : I live in Alexandria.
Hisham : Is it (1) .... or densely populated ?
Hala : It's the second largest (2) .... in Egypt with population of more than 5 million.
Hisham : What (3) .... are there ?
Hala : We have schools, hospitals and lots of shops.
Hisham : I hope I visit Alexandria one day.
Hala : Sure. It'll be interesting.

Notes for parents

1. Ask your child to listen and circle the correct answer.
2. Ask your child to listen and complete with the correct answer.
3. Ask your child to read and complete the dialogue with words from the box.

اطلب من طفلك أن يستمع ويضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.
اطلب من طفلك أن يستمع ويكمل بالإجابة الصحيحة.
اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويكمل المحادثة بكلمات من المربع.

4 Read the following text and answer the questions below.

Hello, my name's Fareeda and I want to tell you about where I live. I live in Greater Cairo. It's a metropolitan area and densely populated. There are more than 20 million inhabitants, so it's a very busy place. There are a lot of cars so there's also congestion. If you are a pedestrian, you have to be very careful.

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. The text is about ....
   a. a city where Fareeda lives
   b. a job that Fareeda works
   c. a club where Fareeda plays tennis
   d. a country where Fareeda travels
2. The population Greater Cairo is ....
   a. sparse b. dense c. isolated d. congestion

B. Answer the following questions.

3. What should you do when you walk in Cairo ?
   ....
4. Is Cairo, sparsely or densely populated ?
   ....

5 The reader

A Read and write T (True) or F (False).

	T	F
1. Grandpa designs, measures the patterns and chooses the colors.		
2. Grandpa uses machines to do his work.		

B Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Grandpa's eyes are not .... now.
   a. bad b. good c. sad d. happy
2. Zeinab asks her grandpa to .... her how to sew.
   a. teach b. give c. let d. make

4 Ask your child to read the text and answer the questions. - اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ النص ويجيب عن الأسئلة
5 Ask your child to read and answer the questions according to the events of the story.
- اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويجيب عن الأسئلة طبقًا لأحداث القصة

C. Writing

6 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Cats always try to catch many ....
   a. mice b. a sheep c. a goose d. a mouse
2. They wash the wool .... it becomes ready to use.
   a. although b. after c. so that d. before
3. .... she is very helpful, she doesn't have any friends.
   a. So b. Before c. While d. Although
4. How many .... are there in the park ?
   a. person b. woman c. child d. people

7 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. do - so that - I - understand - my homework - I - the lesson.

....

2. you - any - Do - have - brothers ?

....

8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements.

City you live in

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

Guiding questions :

1. Where do you live ?
2. How many people live in your city ?
3. Is your city densely or sparsely populated ?
4. What about the services in your area ?
5. Why is your club important ?



....

....

....

....

Notes for parents

6. Ask your child to choose the correct answer. اطلب من طفلك أن يختار الإجابة الصحيحة
7. Ask your child to read, order the words and write the sentences correctly. اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ, يرتب الكلمات ويكتب الجمل بطريقة صحيحة.
8. Ask your child to write a text of (50) words using the given guiding questions. اطلب من طفلك أن يكتب نص مكون من حوالى (٥٠) كلمة مستخدمًا الأسئلة الارشادية

Test 8 on Unit 4

Collected From Governorates Exams

اختبار مجمع من مختلف المحافظات

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

• Understand • Apply • Create

A. Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Rahma lives in a .... city.
   a. old b. big c. new d. far
2. She lives in a/an .... environment.
   a. urban b. rural c. unhealthy d. close
3. It's not .... to travel around her city.
   a. hard b. far c. important d. easy
4. It's a/an .... populated city.
   a. lightly b. densely c. easily d. sparsely

(Cairo – Sayeda Zainab 2022 / Ismailia – Fayid 2022)

2 Listen and complete.

1. Food and .... are main reasons to develop cities.
2. A lot of cities are developed near bodies of ....
3. Water is very .... for cities.
4. Rivers, lakes and oceans have animals like .... and fish.

(Alexandria - El Agamy 2022 / Giza - Dokki 2022)

B. Reading

3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

artisans – crafts – yarn – wool

Last week, my dad took us to a spinning and weaving workshop so that we could learn about this craft. The owner of the workshop explained how the (1) .... make the carpets while we watched them weave. First, they collect the (2) .... from the sheep. They have to clean, wash, and dry the wool before they can use it. The artisans spin the wool to make it into (3) ....

(Sharkia – Abo Hamad 2022 / Giza – Agouza 2022)

1 Ask your child to choose the correct answer. - اطلب من طفلك أن يختار الإجابة الصحيحة
2 Ask your child to listen and complete with the correct answer. - اطلب من طفلك أن يستمع ويكمل بالإجابة الصحيحة
3 Ask your child to read and complete the dialogue with words from the box. - اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويكمل المحادثة بكلمات من المربع

4 Read the following text and answer the questions below.

I'm Adam. I live in Alexandria. I like my city because we have a lot of services. We have schools, hospitals, and lots of shops where you can buy anything you need. We can also use the bus to go wherever we want. One of my favorite places is Monataza Palace. There are beautiful gardens that I sometimes visit with my family. I love my city very much and I hope you visit Alexandria one day.

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. The main idea of the text is about ....
   a. Alexandria b. Montaza Palace c. services d. gardens
2. Adam lives in a/an .... environment.
   a. rural b. desert c. urban d. isolated

B. Answer the following questions.

3. What's Adam's favorite place ?

   ....

4. Why does Adam like his city ?

   ....

(Gharbia – West Tanta 2022 / Beheira – Itay El Barud 2022)

5 The reader

A Read and write T (True) or F (False).

	T	F
1. Grandpa loves his job.	☐	☐
2. Zeinab's friends don't like khaymeya.	☐	☐

(Sohag – Dar El Salam 2022 / Beni Suef – Beba 2022)

B Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Grandpa was one of the ....
   a. Shoe makers b. bus drivers c. tent makers d. dentists
2. Zeinab's .... met her at the train station.
   a. uncles b. grandparents c. friends d. cousins

(Fayoum – West Fayoum 2022 / Qalyoubia – Benha 2022)

Notes for parents

4. Ask your child to read the text and answer the questions. اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ النص ويجيب عن الأسئلة
5. Ask your child to read and answer the questions according to the events of the story. اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويجيب عن الأسئلة طبقًا لأحداث القصة

C. Writing

6 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. There are nine .... on the farm. (Cairo – Abdeen 2022)
   a. goose b. gooses c. geese d. geeses
2. He was busy .... he couldn't come to the birthday party.
   a. although b. while c. so that d. even though
   (Beheira - Damanhur 2022)
3. She asked me to revise well .... the exam.
   a. while b. before c. so that d. after
4. I have three cherries. .... are very delicious. (Luxor 2022)
   a. It b. That c. They d. This

7 Order the words to make correct sentences :

1. grow - tomatoes - and - Farmers - onions.

....

(Alexandria - Borg El Arab 2022)

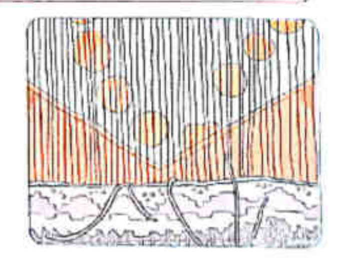
2. use - They - to make - beautiful - plants - dyes.

....

(Minia – Beni Mazar 2022)

8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements.

Carpet making مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب



Guiding questions :

1. How do they get wool ?
2. How do they make yarn ?
3. How do they make dyes ?
4. What's the loom ?

....
....
....
....
....

(New valley – Dakhla 2022)

[6] Ask your child to choose the correct answer. - اطلب من طفلك أن يختار الإجابة الصحيحة
[7] Ask your child to read, order the words and write the sentences correctly. - اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ، يرتب الكلمات ويكتب الجمل بطريقة صحيحة
[8] Ask your child to write a text of (50) words using the given guiding elements. - اطلب من طفلك أن يكتب نص مكون من حوالي (٥٠) كلمة مستخدمًا العناصر الارشادية

Unit 5 Resources in our world

الموارد فى عالمنا



إتقان الوحدة

- استخدام كارت **المعاصر** للقراءة والكتابة.
- Test your skills فى نهاية الوحدة.
- كراسة **المعاصر** للمهارات.
- كراسة **المعاصر** التفاعلية.
- التقييمات الشهرية فى الكراسة التفاعلية.

Aims of Unit Five :

الأهداف العامة للوحدة الخامسة :

In this unit I will .....

فى هذه الوحدة سوف.....

- understand the difference between renewable and non-renewable resources.
  - أفهم الفرق بين الموارد المتجددة وغير المتجددة.
- identify fossil fuels and the problems with them.
  - أتعرف على الوقود الحفرى ومشاكله.
- use the correct form of third person present singular verbs.
  - استخدم الصيغة الصحيحة لضمائر المخاطب مع الأفعال المفردة فى زمن المضارع.
- explain different types of renewable energy sources.
  - أوضح الأنواع المختلفة لمصادر الطاقة المتجددة.
- match and correctly use pronouns.
  - أطابق وأستخدم الضمائر بشكل صحيح.
- recognize and use vocabulary related to jobs.
  - أتعرف وأستخدم المفردات المتعلقة بالوظائف.
- understand how to be a good team member.
  - أفهم كيف أكون عضو جيد في فريق.
- write an email to apply for a job.
  - أكتب بريد إلكترونى للتقدم لوظيفة.
- design a vehicle that runs on a renewable energy source.
  - أصمم عربة تسير بمصدر طاقة متجددة.

Lesson 1

Natural Resources



Vocabulary ⭐ Listen and repeat. استمع وردد.

Key vocabulary

natural resources	موارد طبيعية	mineral	صُلب/معدن
renewable	متجدد	non-renewable	غير متجدد

Extra vocabulary

natural	طبيعى	wood	خشب
material	مادة خام	soil	تربة زراعية
purpose	غرض	stone	حجر
frame	إطار / هيكل	metal	معدن
gold	ذهب	petroleum	بترول
silver	فضة	water	مياه
common	شائع	plastic	بلاستيك

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular

Present		Past
construct	يبنى / ينشئ	constructed
replace	يستبدل	replaced
raise	يربى	raised
guess	يخمن	guessed

Irregular

Present		Past
find	يجد	found
get	يحصل	got
grow	يزرع	grew

• Help your child listen to the words and repeat them. - ساعد من طفلك أن يستمع إلى الكلمات ويرددهم

The first windmills were used in western Asia almost 3.000 years ago to grind grain and pump water.
- أول طاحونات أستخدمت فى آسيا العربية من حوالى ٣٠٠٠ عام مضى لطحن الحبوب وضخ الماء

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

for different purposes لأغراض مختلفة	made from مصنوع من (المادة الخام تتغير بعد التصنيع)
look around يتجول	come from يأتي من
made of مصنوع من (المادة الخام لا تتغير بعد التصنيع)	made up of يتألف من/يتكون من
	run out ينفد، يُستهلك، ينتهي

 Read and identify. اقرأ وتعرف.

Natural resources المصادر الطبيعة  Are materials that we get from nature.
هي المواد الخام التي نحصل عليها من الطبيعة.





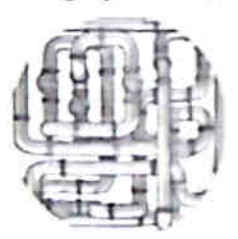
Renewable resources المصادر المتجددة  The resources that can be replaced when they run out. هي المصادر التي يمكن إستبدالها عندما تنفذ.





Non-renewable resources المصادر غير المتجددة → The resources that we can't get any more here on Earth.
هي المصادر التي لا يمكن الحصول على المزيد منها على كوكب الأرض.





Notes for parents
- Help your child read and identify natural, renewable and non-renewable resources
ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويتعرف على المصادر الطبيعية، المتجددة وغير المتجددة

★ Listen and read. استمع واقرأ.

Pop Quiz | تدرب على ٩٩ من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع

Our Natural Resources مواردنا الطبيعية

Natural resources(1) are materials that we get from nature(2). People use these materials for different purposes. If you look around your classroom, you will probably see different types of them. What is your school made of ? We use stone to construct buildings, bridges, and sometimes schools too. What are you sitting on right now ? Is it made of(3) wood ? Forests, and the wood we get from them, are another important natural resource. Is anything made of plastic in your classroom ? Plastic is made from petroleum, which is ... that's right – a natural resource!
Can you find any minerals(4) in your classroom ?
What about the door handle(5), the window frame, or the watch your teacher is wearing ? Is part of your desk or chair metal ? There are many different types of metal, which are types of minerals. Gold(6) and silver(7) are two common(8) ones. And they are all natural resources.

Check Vocabulary

- موارد طبيعية (1)
- الطبيعة (2)
- مصنوع من (3)
- معادن (4)
- مقبض الباب (5)
- ذهب (6)
- فضة (7)
- شائع (8)

Read and tick (✓) or (x) : | **Learn Practice**

1. Natural resources are made by people. (x)
2. Stone and wood are natural resources. ( )
3. Gold and silver are types of stone. ( )

• Help your child listen and read the text.

- ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ النص

- الموارد الطبيعية هي الخامات التي نحصل عليها من الطبيعة. يستخدم الناس تلك الخامات لأغراض مختلفة. إذا نظرت حولك في فصلك الدراسي، سوف ترى حتمًا أنواع مختلفة منهم. مما تُصنع مدرستك ؟ نحن نستخدم الحجارة لإنشاء المباني والكباري وأحيانًا المدارس أيضًا. على ماذا تجلس الآن ؟ هل هو مصنوع من الخشب؟ الغابات والأخشاب التي نحصل عليها منها تعتبر مورد طبيعي هام آخر. هل يوجد أي شئ مصنوع من البلاستيك في فصلك الدراسي؟ يُصنع البلاستيك من البترول، والذي هو ... هذا صحيح - مصدر طبيعي ! هل يمكنك أن تجد أي معادن في حجرة الدراسة الخاصة بك ؟ ماذا عن مقبض الباب إطار الشباك أو ساعة اليد التي يرتديها معلمك ؟ هل جزء من مكتبك أو الكرسي مصنوع من المعدن؟ يوجد العديد من الأنواع المختلفة من المعادن والتي تعتبر أشكال من المعادن. إن الذهب والفضة هما نوعان شائعين وجميعهم موارد طبيعية

The water you drink at lunch is a natural resource. Where do the potatoes we eat come from ? They're grown in the ground, and this ground is made up of what we call soil[9]. So yes, soil too, is a natural resource. Some resources are what we call renewable[10]. Renewable resources can be naturally replaced when they run out. The sun, wind and falling water are examples of renewable resources. Then there are non-renewable[11] resources. These are things like metals and petroleum. Once we have used all of them up, we can't get any more here on Earth.

Check Vocabulary
(9) تربة
(10) متجدد
(11) غير متجدد

Answer the following questions :

Learn 1. What are natural resources ?
These are resources we get from nature such as wood and water.

Practice 2. Why are potatoes a renewable resource ?

....

3. Explain the difference between renewable and non-renewable resources.

....



Notes for parents

الماء الذى تشربه على الغداء مصدر طبيعى من أين تأتى البطاطس التى نتناولها؟ إنها تزرع فى الأرض وهذه الأرض تتكون مما ندعوه تربة زراعية لذلك نعم، التربة الزراعية أيضا مصدر طبيعى بعض المصادر نطلق عليها متجددة فالمصادر المتجددة يمكن أن تُستبدل بشكل طبيعى عندما تنفد إن الشمس والرياح والمياه المتدفقة أمثلة على مصادر الطاقة المتجددة إذن يوجد مصادر غير متجددة وهذه أشياء مثل المعادن والبترول إذا استخدمنا جميعها، لا يمكننا إيجاد المزيد منها على كوكب الأرض.

General Exercises on Lesson 1

نموذج الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

• Understand • Apply • Create

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Natural resources are materials that we get from ....
   a. forest b. school c. nature d. people
2. We use .... to construct buildings and bridges.
   a. wood b. stone c. plastic d. soil
3. We get wood from ....
   a. rivers b. farms c. deserts d. forests
4. .... and silver are types of minerals.
   a. Gold b. Wood c. Stone d. Bridge

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

Meat – non-renewable – renewable – raise

Renewable resources can be replaced when they run out. So, potatoes are a (1) .... resource because we can grow more. (2) .... is also a renewable resource because farmers can (3) .... more animals for you to eat. Wood is a renewable resource, too.

3 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. natural – What – resources – are ?

....

2. a – natural – Soil – resource – is.

....

3. stone – buildings – to – use – construct – We.

....

1. Ask your child to listen and circle the correct answer. - اطلب من طفلك أن يستمع ويضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة
2. Ask your child to read and complete the text with the words from the box. - اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويكمل النص من الكلمات المعطاة
3. Ask your child to order the words to make correct sentences. - اطلب من طفلك أن يرتب الكلمات لتكوين جمل صحيحة

4 Read the following text and answer the questions below.

Natural resources are materials that we get from nature. People use these materials for different purposes. If you look around your classroom, you will probably see different types of them. What is your school made of ? We use stone to construct buildings, bridges, and sometimes schools too. What are you sitting on right now ? Is it made of wood ? Forests, and the wood we get from them, are another important natural resource. Is anything made of plastic in your classroom ? Plastic is made from petroleum.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The main idea of the text is about ....
   a. renewable resources b. non-renewable resources
   c. natural resources d. wind energy
2. We use .... to construct buildings.
   a. wood b. food c. plastic d. stone

B. Answer the following questions.

3. What is plastic made from ?
   ....
4. Give two examples of natural resources.
   ....

5 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements.

Natural resources

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

Guiding words :

- minerals
- nature
- made of
- materials





....
....
....
....

Notes for parents

4. Ask your child to read the text and answer the given questions. اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ النص ويجيب عن الأسئلة المعطاة.
5. Ask your child to write a text of fifty (50) words using the given guiding elements.
اطلب من طفلك أن يكتب نص مكون من (٥٠) كلمة باستخدام العناصر الإرشادية المعطاة

Lesson 2

- Listening
- Language
- Fossil Fuels



Vocabulary

⭐ Listen and repeat. استمع وردد.

Key vocabulary

a crude oil well	بئر بترول خام	greenhouse gases	غازات محتبسة
fossil	حفرية	fossil fuels	وقود حفرى
global warming	الاحتباس الحرارى	natural gas	غاز طبيعى
climate change	تغير المناخ	coal	فحم

Extra vocabulary

energy	طاقة	dishes	أطباق
geologist	عالِم چيولوچى	heat	حرارة
dinosaur	ديناصور (حيوان منقرض)	power	قوة
atmosphere	الغلاف الجوى	industry	صناعة
heating	التدفئة	deep	عميق
serious	جاد / خطير	petroleum	بترول
problem	مشكلة		

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular

Present		Past
relax	يسترخى	relaxed
create	يولد / ينتج	created
kiss	يُقبل	kissed
brush	ينظف بالفرشاة	brushed
dry	يجفف	dried
raise	يربى	raised
produce	ينتج	produced
generate	يولد	generated
process	يُعالج/يحول	processed

Irregular

Present		Past
fly	يطير	flew
catch	يلحق	caught
wake up	يستيقظ	woke up
do	يفعل	did
go	يذهب	went
burn	يحرق	burned / burnt
lie	يرقد	lay / lain

• Help your child listen to the words and repeat them. . ساعد طفلك أن يستمع إلى الكلمات ويرددهم

Today, around 80 % of the energy used around the world comes from fossil fuels.
- اليوم، حوالى ٨٠٪ من الطاقة المستخدمة حول العالم تأتى من الوقود الحفرى

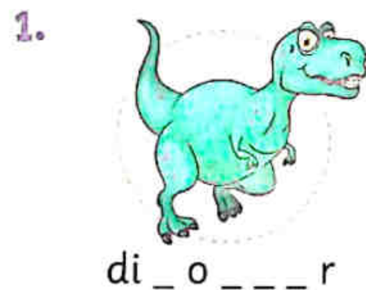
Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

turn into	يتحول إلى	on Fridays	فى أيام الجمعة
wake up for	يستيقظ لأجل	a lot of	الكثير من
catch the bus	يلحق بالأتوبيس	raise his hand	يرفع يده
make dinner	يعد وجبة العشاء	is taken out	يُستخرَج / يتم استخراجه

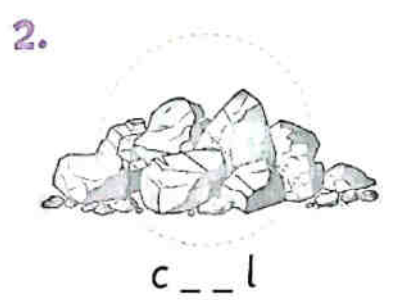


Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

• **Look and write the missing letters.**

1.  

di _ o _ _ _ r

2. 

c _ _ l

3. 

d _ _ _



Read and identify. اقرأ وتعرف.

A fuel → is a material that we burn to produce power or heat.
الوقود هو مادة نقوم بحرقها لإنتاج طاقة أو حرارة.

Fossil fuels →
- is a non-renewable resource.
الوقود الحفرى هو مورد غير متجدد.
- were plants and animals that lived before the dinosaurs.
الوقود الحفرى هو النباتات والحيوانات التى عاشت قبل الديناصورات.

Crude oil →
- is turned into petroleum. الزيت الخام يتحول إلى بترول.
- We get it from oil wells. نحصل عليه من آبار البترول الخام.
- is taken out of the ground. الزيت الخام يُستخرَج من الأرض.

Coal and natural gas → are used in homes for heating and cooking
الفحم والغاز الطبيعى نستخدمه فى المنازل فى التسخين والطهى.

Notes for parents
- Ask your child to look at the pictures and write the missing letters. اطلب من طفلك أن ينظر إلى الصور ويكتب الحروف الناقصة
- Help your child read and identify the words. ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويتعرف على الكلمات.

The global warming and climate change → are serious problems because of fossil fuels.
الاحتباس الحرارى وتغير المناخ مشكلات خطيرة بسبب الوقود الحفرى.

Greenhouse gases →
- are gases collected in the atmosphere.
غازات محتبسة هى غازات مجمعة فى الغلاف الجوى.
- are very bad for the environment. هى سيئة للبيئة جدًا.
- help to create global warming.
هى تساعد على إحداث الاحتباس الحرارى.
- make the problems of climate change worse.
هى تجعل مشاكل تغير المناخ أسوأ.

Listen, read and learn.

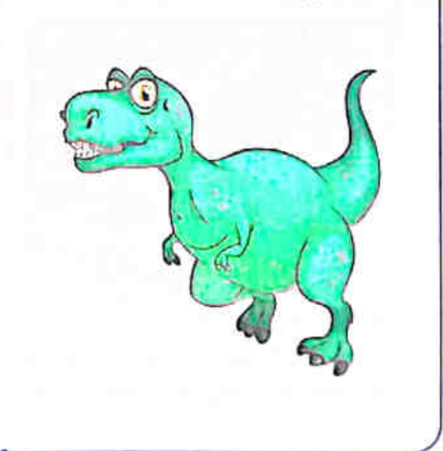
Pop Quiz | تدرب على ٩٩ من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع

Fossil fuels الوقود الحفرى

Professor Kamal : For many years, people around the world have burned fossil fuels. There are different types of fossil fuels, but all of them are non-renewable resources. We all probably use at least one of them every day.

الأستاذ كمال: لسنوات عديدة لقد أحرق الناس حول العالم الوقود الحفرى. هناك أنواع مختلفة من الوقود الحفرى، لكنها كلها موارد غير متجددة. ربما نستخدم جميعًا واحدًا منهم على الأقل كل يوم.

For example, oil wells take crude oil out of the ground, it is processed into petroleum, and then we use it in our cars, buses, and airplanes. Natural gas is also taken from inside the Earth and sent to some of our homes for cooking, and for heating homes in colder climates. Coal, this dark rock taken from mines deep inside the Earth,



* Help child listen, read the text and learn about the fossil fuels.
- ساعد طفلك أن يستمع، يقرأ النص ويتعلم عن الوقود الحفرى.

is used in industry, to generate our electricity, and in some people's homes for heating and cooking.

على سبيل المثال، تقوم آبار النفط بإخراج النفط الخام من الأرض، ويتم معالجته إلى بترول، ثم نستخدمه في سياراتنا وحافلاتنا وطائراتنا. يتم استخراج الغاز الطبيعي أيضًا من داخل الأرض وإرساله إلى بعض منازلنا للطهي وتدفئة المنازل في المناخ البارد. الفحم، هذه الصخور الداكنة المأخوذة من المناجم الموجودة في أعماق الأرض، تُستخدم في الصناعة لتوليد الكهرباء، وفي منازل بعض الناس للتدفئة والطهي.



But why do we call them fossil fuels ? Maybe you have heard of the dinosaurs ? Well, like the dinosaurs, fossil fuels were plants and animals that lived a very long time ago. It's hard to imagine just how long ago though because they actually lived before the dinosaurs did. Over time, these plants and animals were buried deep inside the earth and changed into fossil fuels.

لكن لماذا نطلق عليهم اسم الوقود الحفري ؟ ربما سمعت عن الديناصورات ؟ حسنًا، مثل الديناصورات، كان الوقود الحفري نباتات وحيوانات عاشت منذ زمن طويل جدًا. من الصعب تخيل المدة التي مرت منذ ذلك الحين لأنهم عاشوا بالفعل قبل الديناصورات. بمرور الوقت، تم دفن هذه النباتات والحيوانات في أعماق الأرض وتحويلها إلى وقود حفري.

It sounds like fossil fuels help us a lot, doesn't it ? Well, that is kind of true. Fossil fuels have helped us develop into modern nations with great technological advancements. We have built cities with hospitals and universities, and can easily travel through the desert in our cars and over the oceans in airplanes. But there is a serious problem. The problem with fossil fuels is that when they are burned, they produce greenhouse gases. These gases collect in the atmosphere and make the problems of global warming and climate change even worse.

يبدو أن الوقود الحفري يساعدنا كثيرًا، أليس كذلك ؟ حسنًا، هذا نوعًا ما حقيقي. لقد ساعدنا الوقود الحفري على التطور إلى دول حديثة ذات تطورات تكنولوجية كبيرة. لقد بنينا مدنًا بها مستشفيات وجامعات، ويمكننا بسهولة السفر عبر الصحراء في سياراتنا وعبر المحيطات في الطائرات. لكن هناك مشكلة خطيرة. مشكلة الوقود الحفري هي أنه عندما يتم حرقه، فإنه ينتج غازات دفيئة. تتجمع هذه الغازات في الغلاف الجوي وتزيد من تفاقم مشاكل الاحتباس الحراري وتغير المناخ للأسوء.

Language

The third person singular of the present simple.

استخدام الأفعال مع ضمائر الفاعل الغائب المفردة فى زمن المضارع البسيط.

A Affirmative statements : الجمل المثبتة :

Formation

التصريف الأول للفعل مضافًا له "s" أو "es" أو "ies" :

He /She / It / اسم مفرد (Ali) + (inf.) مصدر الفعل + s → or es →

- معظم الأفعال يضاف لها (s)
- أما التى تنتهى بـ (sh , ch, ss , x , o) يضاف لها (es)

ex. -Youssef's dad is a mechanic. He fixes cars.
- Our cat drinks a lot of water when it's hot out.

Spelling rules

1. If the verb ends in a (consonant + y), we remove the (y) and add (ies).

الفعل المنتهى بـ (y) قبله حرف ساكن يضاف له (ies) مع حذف (y) :

ex. - The baby cries when she's hungry.

2. If the verb ends in a (vowel + y), we add (s).

الفعل الذى ينتهى بـ (y) قبله حرف متحرك (a - e - i - o - u) يضاف له (s):

ex. - He plays volleyball every Friday.

3. We do not add (s) to the verb (have), but with (He - She - It) we use "has".

الفعل (have) لا يضاف له (s) ولكن مع (He - She - It) نستخدم (has).

ex. - He has brown hair.

• Help your child identify and use the verbs in the present simple with singular pronouns.
- ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على ويستخدم الأفعال فى زمن المضارع البسيط مع ضمائر المفرد

B Negative statements : الجمل المنفية :

Formation

He/she/It/اسم مفرد + does not (doesn't) + inf. ....

ex. - He doesn't speak Italian.

Usage

⭐ We use present simple to talk about facts & repeated actions.

⭐ يستخدم زمن المضارع البسيط للتحدث عن حقائق وأحداث متكررة.

ex. - The mechanic fixes cars.

- She visits her grandfather on Fridays.



Pop Quiz on Language

1 Complete the sentences with the present simple form.

1. She always .... (do) her homework.
2. Emy .... (watch) TV every day.
3. Hamza often .... (use) his laptop for his school project
4. She .... (brush) her teeth every day.
5. My grandpa .... (live) in a two-bedroom apartment.

2 Choose the correct form.

1. My sister ride / rides a bicycle.
2. Our cat drinks / drink a lot of water when it's hot out.
3. Salma tidies / tidy her room every day.
4. My dad never do / does the shopping.
5. Malak watch / watches TV in the evening.

Notes for parents

1. Ask your child to complete the sentences with the present simple form of the verbs between brackets.
من طفلك أن يكمل الجمل بصيغة المضارع البسيط للأفعال التي بين الأقواس
2. Ask your child to choose the correct form.
من طفلك أن يختار الصيغة الصحيحة

General Exercises on Lesson 2

نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب

• Understand • Apply • Create

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Gameela wakes up for .... at 7 o'clock.
   a. park b. hospital c. museum d. school
2. She catches the .... to go home.
   a. car b. bus c. van d. truck
3. Gameela's .... washes and dries the dishes.
   a. grandma b. mother c. sister d. brother
4. Gameela's family watches a movie after ....
   a. lunch b. breakfast c. dinner d. snacks

2 Listen and complete.

1. Fossil fuels are .... resources.
2. Crude oil is turned into ....
3. Fossil fuels were plants and animals that lived .... the dinosaurs.
4. There are .... problems with fossil fuels : global warming and climate change.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. It often .... in winter.
   a. rained b. raining c. rains d. rain
2. Alia .... the family car every week.
   a. washes b. washed c. wash d. washing
3. He .... to work every day.
   a. drove b. driving c. drive d. drives
4. I .... cereal in the morning.
   a. eat b. to eat c. eats d. eating

[1] Ask your child to listen and circle the correct answer.
[2] Ask your child to listen and complete the sentences.
[3] Ask your child to choose the correct answer.

- اطلب من طفلك أن يستمع ويضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة
- اطلب من طفلك أن يستمع ويكمل الجمل
- اطلب من طفلك أن يختار الإجابة الصحيحة

4 Read and complete the dialogue from the words in the box.

animals – fossil fuels – natural gas – airplanes

Renad : Hello, Dalia. Our lesson today was about fossil fuels.
Dalia : That's great ! Can you give me examples of (1) .... ?
Renad : Of course. Oil, coal and(2) ....
Dalia : Why do we call them fossil fuels ?
Renad : Because the plants and(3) .... lived a very long time ago.
Dalia : How can people use fewer fossil fuels ?
Renad : I think they can install solar panels on their roof at home so they can generate more renewable energy.
Dalia : It's fantastic.

5 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words by using the following guiding elements.

Your day

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

Guiding words :

- wake up
- catch bus
- finish school
- brush teeth
- eat breakfast
- go home



....

....

....

....

....

....

Notes for parents

4. Ask your child to read and complete the dialogue with the correct word from the box.
اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويكمل المحادثة بالكلمة الصحيحة من الصندوق أعلاه
5. Ask your child to write a text of (50) words using the given guiding words.
اطلب من طفلك أن يكتب نص مكون من حوالى (٥٠) كلمة مستخدمًا الكلمات الإرشادية

Lesson 3

• Reading
• Renewable energy



Vocabulary

★ Listen and repeat. استمع وردد.

Key vocabulary

wave power	طاقة الأمواج	solar power	الطاقة الشمسية
wind power	طاقة الرياح	tidal power	طاقة المد والجزر

Extra vocabulary

road	طريق	solar panels	ألواح شمسية
rock	صخرة	trip	رحلة قصيرة
sunshine	شروق الشمس	excited	متحمس
different	مختلف	workers	عمَّال
electricity	كهرباء	engineer	مهندس
electrical energy	طاقة كهربائية	soon	قريبًا
dusty	ملئ بالغبار	mechanical energy	طاقة ميكانيكية
renewable energy	طاقة متجددة	solar farm	محطة شمسية

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular

Present		Past
turn	يحوِّل	turned
destroy	يدمرّ	destroyed
transfer	يحول / ينقل	transferred

Irregular

Present		Past
be	يكون	was - were
see	يرى	saw
build	يبني	built
burn	يحرق	burnt
tell	يخبر	told

- Help your child listen to the words and repeat them. - ساعد طفلك أن يستمع إلى الكلمات ويرددهم

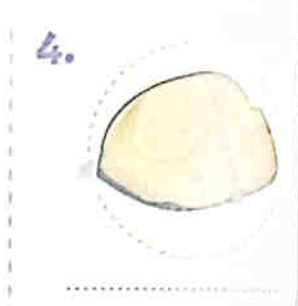
Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

most of the time	معظم الوقت	make electricity	ينتج كهرباء
ask a question	يسأل سؤال	to learn more about	للتعلم أكثر عن
put hands up	يرفع اليد	the perfect place	المكان المثالى
easy to look after	سهل الاعتناء به	change from one kind to another	يتغير من نوع إلى آخر
turn into	يتحول إلى		



Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

- Look and write the words.

1.  ....
2.  ....
3.  ....
4.  ....

Look and read. انظر واقرأ.

Pop Quiz | تدرب على ٢٩ من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع

Solar panels in the Desert ألواح شمسية فى الصحراء

Seleem walks to school every day. The road is next to the desert(1). It is usually hot, sunny and dusty(2) on the road. Last year, there was nothing in the desert. Sometimes Seleem saw a lizard(3), but most of the time, he just saw rocks and sunshine(4). Now things are different. He sees lots of workers(5) and trucks in the desert. They are building a solar farm. At school, Seleem's teacher asks the class a question. "What is renewable energy ?"

Check Vocabulary
- (1) صحراء
- (2) ملئ بالغبار
- (3) سحلية
- (4) ضوء الشمس
- (5) عمال

Notes for parents
- Ask your child to look at the pictures and write the words.
- Help your child look and read the text.

- اطلب من طفلك ان ينظر إلى الصور ويكتب الكلمات
- ساعد طفلك أن ينظر ويقرأ النص

يمشى سليم إلى المدرسة كل يوم. الطريق بجانب الصحراء. وعادة ما يكون الجو حار، مشمسًا وملىء بالغبار على الطريق. السنة الماضية لم يكن هناك شىء فى الصحراء. وكان سليم أحيانًا يرى سحلية، ولكن فى معظم الأوقات كان يرى فقط الصخور وضوء الشمس. الآن اختلفت الأمور فهو يرى الكثير من العمال والشاحنات فى الصحراء. هم يبنون محطة الطاقة الشمسية. فى المدرسة، يسأل مدرّس سليم الفصل سؤال "ما هى الطاقة المتجددة" ؟

Seleem puts his hand up. "Renewable energy is from a resource that won't run out." he said. "Very good," said Mr Ali. "We need to make electricity[6]. We can burn fossil fuels[7] like oil and gas, but they will run out. We can also make electricity from renewable resources like the wind and water. Tomorrow we will go on a short school trip to learn more about renewable energy here in Aswan".

Check Vocabulary

(6) كهرباء

(7) وقود حفرى

(8) مهندسين



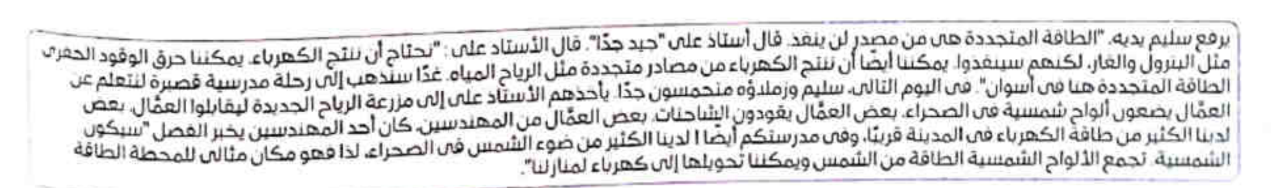
The next day, Seleem and his class are very excited. Mr Ali takes them to the new solar farm. They meet the workers. Some of the workers are putting solar panels in the desert. Some workers are driving trucks. Some workers are engineers[8]. One of the engineers tells the class, 'We will have more electricity in the city soon, and in your school too! We have so much sunshine in the desert, so it is the perfect place for a solar farm. The solar panels collect energy from the sun and we can make that into electricity for our homes".

Answer the following questions :

Learn 1. Why is the desert a good place for a solar farm ?
Because there is so much sunshine in the desert.

Practice 2. How can we make electricity ?

....



يرفع سليم يديه. "الطاقة المتجددة هى من مصدر لن ينفد. قال أستاذ على "جيد جدًا". قال الأستاذ على: "نحتاج أن ننتج الكهرباء. يمكننا حرق الوقود الحفرى مثل البترول والغاز، لكنهم سينفدوا. يمكننا أيضًا أن ننتج الكهرباء من مصادر متجددة مثل الرياح المياه. غدًا سنذهب إلى رحلة مدرسية قصيرة لنتعلم عن الطاقة المتجددة هنا فى أسوان". فى اليوم التالى، سليم وزملاؤه متحمسون جدًا. يأخذهم الأستاذ على إلى مزرعة الرياح الجديدة ليقابلوا العمّال. بعض العمّال يضعون ألواح شمسية فى الصحراء. بعض العمّال يقودون الشاحنات. بعض العمّال من المهندسين. كان أحد المهندسين يخبر الفصل "سيكون لدينا الكثير من طاقة الكهرباء فى المدينة قريبًا، وفى مدرستكم أيضًا ! لدينا الكثير من ضوء الشمس فى الصحراء، لذا فهو مكان مثالى للمحطة الطاقة الشمسية. تجمع الألواح الشمسية الطاقة من الشمس ويمكننا تحويلها إلى كهرباء لمنازلنا".

Read and identify the solar energy. اقرأ وتعرف على الطاقة الشمسية.

Advantages المميزات

Solar panels are easy to look after.
الألواح الشمسية سهلة العناية بها.



Electricity from solar power is cheap.
الكهرباء من الطاقة الشمسية رخيصة الثمن.

Disadvantages العيوب

Solar farms need a very big space.
مزارع الطاقة الشمسية تحتاج إلى مساحة كبيرة جدًا.



Solar panels are expensive.
الألواح الشمسية باهظة الثمن.



We can't make solar power on a rainy day.
لا يمكننا أن نصنع الطاقة الشمسية في يوم ممطر.



Listen and read. استمع واقرأ.

We can't destroy[1] energy. We can only change it from one kind of energy to another kind. This is called transfer of energy. When we use solar panels[2] to collect sunlight[3], the solar energy is turned into electrical energy. When you use this electrical energy[4] for a television, it is now mechanical energy[5].

Check Vocabulary
- (1) يدمر
- (2) الواح شمسية
- (3) ضوء الشمس
- (4) طاقة كهربائية
- (5) طاقة ميكانيكية

Choose the correct answer :

Learn 1. We can't .... energy.
a. use b. cell c. destroy d. need

Practice 2. We use solar panels to collect ....
a. water b. sunlight c. wave d. tidal

Notes for parents
- Ask your child to read and identify the advantages and disadvantages of solar energy.
- Help your child listen and read text.

- اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويتعرف على مميزات وعيوب الطاقة الشمسية
- ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ النص

لا يمكننا أن ندمّر الطاقة. يمكننا فقط تحويلها من أحد أنواع الطاقة إلى نوع آخر. هذا يسمى بتحويل الطاقة. عندما نستخدم الألواح الشمسية لتجميع ضوء الشمس، تتحول الطاقة الشمسية إلى طاقة كهربائية. عندما تستخدم هذه الطاقة الكهربائية للتلفاز، هي الآن طاقة ميكانيكية.

Dictation

لإتقان مهارة الكتابة استخدم كارت المعاصر من نهاية الكتاب

Read and spell	Complete	Write
wave power	w _ ve p _ _ er	
wind power	w _ _ d pow _ _	
solar panels	_ _ lar p _ _ els	
tidal	t _ d _ l	
dusty	du _ _ y	
run out	_ u _ o _ t	
rock	ro _ _	
sunshine	sun _ _ in _	
electricity	_ le _ tric _ _ y	
excited	ex _ _ t _ d	
workers	w _ _ ke _ s	
destroy	d _ _ tr _ y	
burn	b _ _ n	

• Help your child read, spell , complete and write the words.

- ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ، يتهجى، يكمل ويكتب الكلمات

General Exercises on Lesson 3

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

• Understand • Apply • Create

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Wave power is when energy is captured from ....
   a. tidal b. sun c. waves d. water
2. .... power uses wind turbines to generate electricity.
   a. Wave b. Wind c. Solar d. Tidal
3. Solar power uses light from the ....
   a. wind b. wave c. water d. sun
4. We can generate .... from the wind power.
   a. wave b. oil c. electricity d. water

2 Listen and complete.

1. Solar panels are ....
2. We can't make solar power on a .... day.
3. Solar farms need a very big ....
4. Solar panels are .... to look after.

3 Read and complete the text from the words in the box.

electrical – mechanical – sunlight – oil

When we change one kind of energy into another kind of energy it is called transfer of energy. Solar panels collect (1) .... The solar panels turn the solar energy into (2) .... energy. When you use this energy to turn on a light, it becomes (3) .... energy.

4 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. make - from - We - electricity - can - renewable resources.

....

2. need - space - big - Solar farms - a very.

....

Notes for parents

1. Ask your child to listen and circle the correct answer. اطلب من طفلك أن يستمع ويضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.
2. Ask your child to listen and complete the sentences. اطلب من طفلك أن يستمع ويكمل الجملة.
3. Ask your child to read and complete the text with the correct word from the box. اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويكمل النص بالكلمة الصحيحة من الصندوق.
4. Ask your child to order the words and write the sentences correctly. اطلب من طفلك أن يرتب الكلمات ويكتب الجمل بطريقة صحيحة.

Lesson 4

- Reading
- Language



Vocabulary

Listen and repeat. استمع وردد.

Key vocabulary

experience	خبرة	career	مهنة
talent	موهبة	promotion	ترقية
skill	مهارة	presentation	عرض - تقديم

Extra vocabulary

project	مشروع	practice	ممارسة
nervous	عصبي / متوتر	knowledge	معرفة
twins	توأم	computer programming	برمجة الحاسب الآلي
ability	قدرة		
training	تدريب	wind farm	مزرعة رياح
wind turbine	توربينات (محركات الرياح)	senior manager	مدير أول
option	خيار	university	جامعة
calm	هادئ	junior engineer	مهندس مبتدئ
interviewer	محاور	interview	مقابلة شخصية

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular

Present		Past
present	يقدم	presented
practice	يمارس	practiced

Irregular

Present		Past
forget	ينسى	forgot
hear	يسمع	heard
teach	يُدرس	taught

• Help your child listen to the words and repeat them.

- ساعد طفلك أن يستمع إلى الكلمات ويرددهم

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

do a project on	يقوم بمشروع عن	do a job	يقوم بوظيفة
neither of	لا أحد من	do naturally	يقوم بأداء شئ بشكل طبيعى
each of	كلاً من	apply to	يقدم طلبًا ل
at the end of	فى نهاية	train for	يتدرب لمدة

⭐ Read and identify the definitions. اقرأ وتعرف على التعريفات.

Word	Definition
experience خبرة	knowledge or practice of doing something معرفة وممارسة لعمل شىء ما
skill مهارة	the ability to do something well after practice and training القدرة على فعل شئ ما بشكل جيد بعد التدرب والتمرين
talent موهبة	something that you do well naturally شىء ما تفعله بشكل جيد بالفطرة
career مهنة	all of the different jobs that a person does in their life الوظائف المختلفة التى يعملها الشخص فى حياتهم
to train someone أن تدرب شخص ما	to teach someone how to do a job أن تعلم شخص ما كيف يؤدى وظيفة معينة
promotion ترقية	when you get a higher position where you work عندما تحصل على مكانة أعلى فى المكان الذى تعمل به



05 Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

- **Read and choose the correct word between brackets.**

1. Sandy would like to have a (talent - skill - career) in medicine.
2. After two years, Amr got a / an (skill - experience - promotion) to senior manager.
3. Huda's sister has three years' (experience - job - skill) as an accountant (محاسب).

Notes for parents

- Help your child read and identify the definitions.
- Ask your child to read and choose the correct word between brackets.

- ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويتعرف على التعريفات.
- اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويختار الكلمة الصحيحة مما بين الأقواس.

Language

Nouns and corresponding possessive adjectives

الأسماء وصفات الملكية المقابلة لها.

1 Pronouns

الضمائر

Subject Pronouns	Possessive Adjectives
I	my
He	his
She	her
It	its
We	our
You	your
They	their

She presented her project.

2 Rules of using nouns and possessive adjectives

1. When the noun is a boy (He) → we use (his)
2. When the noun is a girl (She) → we use (her)
3. When it isn't important, or we don't know if the noun is a boy or a girl (someone / no one / person) → we use (their)
4. When the noun is plural (They) → we use (their)

Notice : تعامل هذه الكلمات (Someone - Each - No one - Neither) معاملة المفرد والفعل الذى يليها يكون مفرد بينما الضمير الذى يعود عليها يكون جمع.

- Both → their
- Neither of → their
- Each of → their

* Help your child use nouns and possessive adjectives.

- ساعد طفلك أن يستخدم الأسماء صفات الملكية.



Pop Quiz on Language

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Neither of the boys has done .... homework.
   a. their b. his c. ours d. her
2. Some of the children held .... mother's hand.
   a. his b. its c. their d. her
3. The little boy who lives next door played with .... toys.
   a. their b. him c. her d. his

2 Complete by writing a pronoun that agrees with each subject.

1. A person needs to see .... dentist twice a year.
2. He went to see .... favorite basketball team.
3. Sama drank .... coffee.
4. The boat lost .... way in the storm.



Listen, read and role-play. استمع، اقرأ وتبادل الأدوار.





Hello, Mariam. Thank you for coming to this interview today.

مرحبًا يا مريم. شكرًا لقدومك إلى هذه المقابلة اليوم.





Hello.

مرحبًا.



First of all, do you have any experience for this job ?

أولًا قبل كل شيء، هل لديك أي خبرة فى هذه الوظيفة ؟



Yes, I do. I studied engineering at Cairo University. And I worked at a wind farm in Kenya for 3 years.

نعم، لدى. درست الهندسة فى جامعة القاهرة وعملت فى محطة طاقة الرياح فى كينيا لمدة ٣ سنوات.

Notes for parents

1. Ask your child to choose the correct answer.
2. Ask your child to complete by writing a pronoun that agrees with each subject.

- Help your child listen to the dialogue and let him/her read what he/she listens to correctly, then ask him/her to role-play it with his/her colleagues.

1. اطلب من طفلك أن يختار الإجابة الصحيحة
2. اطلب من طفلك أن يكمل بكتابة الضمير المناسب لكل فاعل

- ساعد طفلك فى الاستماع إلى المحادثة ودعه يقرأ ما يسمعه بطريقة صحيحة، ثم اطلب منه أن يتبادل الأدوار مع زملائه



Oh, that's good. Do you have any special skills ?

آوه ! هذا جيد. هل لديك أى مهارات خاصة ؟



I think so. I am very good at problem solving. I like to think of different ways to solve a problem, and then decide on the best option with my team. I also have good computer programming skills. I learned them at college.

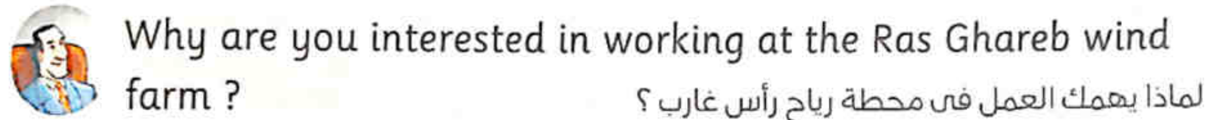
أعتقد ذلك. أنا جيدة جدًا فى حل المشكلات. أحب التفكير فى طرق مختلفة لحل مشكلة ما، ثم اتخاذ القرار بشأن الخيار الأفضل مع فريقى. أنا أيضًا لدى مهارات برمجة جيدة لقد تعلمتهم فى الكلية.

And do you have any special talents ? وهل لديك أى مواهب خاصة ؟



Well, I have always been a calm person. I was just born that way. حسنًا، لقد كنت دائمًا شخصًا هادئًا. لقد نشأت بهذه الطريقة.

Why are you interested in working at the Ras Ghareb wind farm ?



لماذا يهمك العمل فى محطة رياح رأس غارب ؟

I want to continue my career as a wind turbine engineer. I've worked at a turbine factory in Spain, and as you know at a wind farm in Kenya, so this would be my third job. This job will help me build my career.

أريد أن أكمل مسيرتى المهنية كمهندسة لتوربينات الرياح. لقد عملت فى مصنع توربينات فى أسبانيا، وكما تعلم فى محطة رياح كينيا، فهذه ستكون وظيفتى الثالثة. هذه الوظيفة ستساعدنى فى بناء مسيرتى المهنية.



Excellent. Well, we have to train you first. That will take 1 month, and then you can start working. How does that sound ?

ممتاز. حسنًا، علينا أن ندربك أولًا. سيستغرق ذلك شهرًا واحدًا، وبعد ذلك يمكنك البدء فى العمل. كيف يبدو هذا ؟



That sounds good. هذا يبدو جيدًا.



Do you have any questions about the job ?

هل لديك أى أسئلة حول الوظيفة ؟



Yes, I do. Is there a possibility of a promotion ?

نعم، لدى. هل هناك إمكانية للترقية ؟



Yes, there is. You will start as a junior engineer. After two years, you can get a promotion and become a senior engineer.

نعم، هناك. سوف تبدأين كمهندسة مبتدئة، بعد عامين، يمكنك الحصول على ترقية وتصبحين مهندسة أولى.

General Exercises on Lesson 4

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

• Understand • Apply • Create

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d.

1. Mariam studied .... at Cairo University.
   a. farming b. nursing c. teaching d. engineering
2. Mariam worked at a .... farm in Kenya.
   a. solar b. wind c. wave d. animal
3. Mariam is a .... person.
   a. tired b. angry c. calm d. nervous
4. Mariam worked at a turbine factory in ....
   a. Spain b. Cairo c. Kenya d. England

2 Choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d.

1. Yassin left .... book on the desk.
   a. its b. his c. their d. her
2. The two dinosaurs looked at .... food.
   a. her b. their c. they d. his
3. My mother ate .... salad.
   a. she b. theirs c. him d. her
4. No one of the students go to .... classes.
   a. them b. they c. his d. their
5. One of my uncles has changed .... address.
   a. his b. their c. its d. her
6. Mr and Mrs Ali bought a plant for .... house.
   a. they b. their c. his d. her

3 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. their - to - They - project - presented - the class.

   ....

2. train - month - will - for - Mariam - one.

   ....

3. Ras Ghareb - farm - the - is - Where - wind ?

   ....

Notes for parents

1. Ask your child to listen and circle the correct answer.
2. Ask your child to choose the correct word
3. Ask your child to order the words and write the sentences correctly

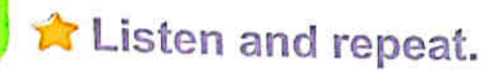


اطلب من طفلك أن يستمع ويضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة
اطلب من طفلك أن يختار الإجابة الصحيحة
اطلب من طفلك أن يرتب الكلمات ويكتب الجمل بشكل صحيح

Lessons
5&6

• Teamwork





Vocabulary ⭐ Listen and repeat. استمع وردد.

Key vocabulary

responsible	مسئول	supportive	مدعم / مؤيد
collaborate	يتعاون	flexible	مرن / قابل للتكيف
attitude	اتجاه / تصرف / موقف	reliable	موثوق به / جدير بالثقة
application	طلب		

Extra vocabulary

sensitive	حساس	brainstorm	عصف ذهنى
problem solver	حلال المشكلة	solution	حل
email	بريد إلكترونى	positive	إيجابى
sender	الراسل	teamwork	عمل جماعى
dear	عزيزى	imagination	خيال
signature	إمضاء / التوقيع	address	عنوان
conclusion	خاتمة	eco-friendly	صديق للبيئة
advertisement	إعلان	sincerely	بإخلاص
magazine	مجلة	section	قسم
individual	فردى	hiring engineers	توظيف مهندسين
contractions	الاختصارات	designer	مصمم
spaceship	سفينة فضاء		

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular

Present		Past
complete	يكمل	completed
admit	يعترف	admitted
communicate	يتواصل	communicated
design	يصمم	designed

Irregular

Present		Past
feel	يشعر	felt
get	يحصل على	got
find	يجد	found
meet	يقابل	met

• Help your child listen to the words and repeat them.

- ساعد طفلك أن يستمع إلى الكلمات ويرددهم

Important expressions and prepositions	تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة		
work in a team	يعمل فى فريق	agree on	يوافق على
share with	يشارك مع	get upset	ينزعج
rely on	يعتمد على / يثق فى	look forward to	يتطلع إلى
listen to	يستمع إلى	apply for the job	يتقدم بطلب وظيفة
ask for help	يطلب المساعدة	run on	يعمل بواسطة
get worried about	يصبح قلقًا بشأن		

 **Listen and read.** استمع واقرأ.

Pop Quiz | تدرب على ٢٩ من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع

How to Be a Good Team Member كيف تكون عضو جيد فى فريق

Teamwork[1] is very important for the success[2] of a project. Here are 5 points to remember when you're working in a team.

Check Vocabulary
(1) عمل جماعى
(2) نجاح
(3) مشاعر
(4) يعتمد على
(5) عصف ذهنى
(6) حلول

1. Communicate Share your ideas and feelings[3] with the other team members. You should be open about how you're feeling about a project. Remember to be sensitive to how others might feel. You should be polite too.

2. Collaborate Actively work together with your team members to get the best results. You might have a good idea, but make sure to listen to others' ideas too.

3. Be responsible Remember to complete your part of a project. Your team members are relying on[4] you to do your part. If you're finding your role difficult, ask for help.

4. Solve problems Instead of getting worried about problems, be a problem solver. Brainstorm[5] many different solutions[6] to the problems with your team members and agree on the best solution.

Notes for parents
- Help your child listen and read the text.

- ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ النص

العمل الجماعى هام جدًا لنجاح أى مشروع. إليك ٥ نقاط تذكرها عندما تقوم بالعمل مع فريق.
١ التواصل: شارك أفكارك ومشاعرك مع أعضاء الفريق الآخرين. يجب أن تكون منفتحًا بشأن شعورك تجاه المشروع. تذكر أن تكون حساسًا تجاه شعور الآخرين. يجب أن تكون مهذبًا أيضًا.
٢ التعاون: اعمل بنشاط مع أعضاء فريقك للحصول على أفضل النتائج. قد تكون لديك فكرة جيدة ولكن احرص أيضًا أن تستمع إلى آراء الآخرين.
٣ كن مسئولًا: تذكر أن تكمل الجزء الخاص بك من المشروع. فأعضاء الفريق يعتمدون عليك للقيام بدورك. إذا كنت تجد دورك صعبًا اطلب المساعدة.
٤ حل المشكلات: بدلًا من القلق بشأن المشكلات كن حلالًا للمشكلة. قم بإجراء عصف ذهنى حول العديد من الحلول للمشكلات مع أعضاء فريقك واتفق على أفضل الحلول.

5. Have a positive attitude There might be some difficult times when working together. Stay calm and don't get upset. If you are positive, you'll help yourself and the other team members be more successful.

Read and tick (✓) or (x) :

Learn 1. Teamwork is very important for the success of a project. (✓)

Practice 2. Collaborate means to share ideas with others. ( )



Writing skill

How to write an email to apply for a job.

1. Start with Dear, ...
2. Say what you want to write about in the main part.
3. Add the email address to the sender.
4. End your email with "Yours sincerely,"

How to write an email

To : عنوان البريد الإلكترونى للمرسل إليه

From : عنوان البريد الإلكترونى للمرسل

Subject : موضوع الرسالة

Greeting and name : Dear اسم المرسل إليه

Introduction المقدمة

main part الجزء الرئيسى

I look forward to hearing from you soon. conclusion الخاتمة

ending Yours sincerely,

signature Adam Nader

* Help your child identify how to write an email.

- ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على كيفية كتابة رسالة بريد إلكترونى

٥. ليكن لديك اتجاه إيجابى: قد تكون هناك بعض الأوقات العصيبة عند العمل معًا. ابقى هادئًا ولا تنزعج. إذا كنت إيجابيًا فستساعد نفسك وأعضاء الفريق الآخرين أن تكونوا أكثر نجاحًا

Read and identify. اقرأ وتعرف.

To apply for a job

message
https://yahoo.com

To : rashahesham@mail.com
Cc :
Subject : job application

Dear Ms. Rasha,

I am writing because I saw your advertisement for the Tidal Power Engineer in New Technologies magazine. I would be very interested in working for you as a tidal power engineer. I studied engineering at Cairo University and I am very interested in renewable energy sources.

I could travel to Giza for an interview or meet online at any time from Sunday to Thursday.
I look forward to hearing from you soon.

Yours sincerely, → ending النهاية

Adam Nader → signature التوقيع

Greeting and name التحية و الاسم

conclusion الخاتمة

main part الجزء الاساسى

Choose the correct answer :

Learn 1. When writing the greeting, you say ....
a. Dear Rasha, b. Ms. Rasha

Practice 2. Who is writing the email ?
a. Ms. Rasha b. Adam Nader

Notes for parents

- Help your child read and identify a formal letter.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويتعرف على خطابًا رسميًا

عزيزتى السيدة رشا اكتب لأننى رأيت إعلان لوظيفة مهندس طاقة المد والجزر فى مجلة «نيو تكنولوچى» سوف أكون مهتمًا جدًا بالعمل معك كمهندس لطاقة المد والجزر لقد درست الهندسة فى جامعة القاهرة وأنا مهتم جدًا بمصادر الطاقة المتجددة بمكننى السفر إلى الجيزة لإجراء مقابلة أو لقاء عبر الإنترنت فى أى وقت من الأحد إلى الخميس اتطلع إلى سماع الأخبار قريبًا
مع خالص تقديرى
ادم نادر

General Exercises on Lessons 5 & 6

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

• Understand • Apply • Create

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Amir finds it difficult to make ....
   a. design b. project c. work d. friends
2. If things are difficult at work, he gets ....
   a. happy b. excited c. upset d. hungry
3. He is not good at .... to his team members' ideas.
   a. listening b. seeing c. touching d. walking
4. He works for a design ....
   a. station b. company c. street d. hospital

2 Listen and complete.

1. In a team, you need people who are ....
2. People need to .... while working with other people.
3. You should have a .... attitude if things are difficult.
4. You should communicate well with other team ....

3 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. too – be – You – should - polite.

....

2. and – Stay – get – upset – don't – calm.

....

3. job – What – for – type – is – of – it ?

....



1. Ask your child to listen and circle the correct answer. اطلب من طفلك أن يستمع ويضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة
2. Ask your child to listen and complete the sentences with the correct word. اطلب من طفلك أن يستمع ويكمل الجمل بالكلمة الصحيحة
3. Ask your child to read and order the words then write the sentences correctly. اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويرتب الكلمات ثم يكتب الجمل بطريقة صحيحة

4 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

worried - Share - complete - successful

Teamwork is a very important skill for the success of any team. (1)........................ your ideas and feelings with the other team members. Remember to (2)........................ your part of a project well. Your team members are relying on you to do your part. Instead of getting (3)........................ about problems, be a problem solver.

5 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements.

How to be a good team member



Guiding questions :

1. How can teamwork be important for success ?
2. What should you do in a teamwork ?



....

....

....

....

....

Notes for parents

4. Ask your child to read and complete the text with the words from the box.

· اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويكمل النص بالكلمات من الصندوق

5. Ask your child to write a text of (50) word about the given topic using the given guiding questions.

· اطلب من طفلك أن يكتب نص عن الموضوع المعطى له من خلال الإجابة على الاسئلة المعطاة له

Test your skills Unit 5



If you got 🔴 you need to revise the unit again on the next page.

قم بتقييم نفسك بالعلامات الموضحة وإذا حصلت على 🔴 غير جيد قم بمراجعة الوحدة مرة أخرى في الصفحة التالية



My Dictation

1 Read and write the meaning.

اقرأ وأكتب المعنى.

A. renewable ....
resource ....
fossil fuels ....
experience ....
promotion ....

B. .... فحم
.... تغير المناخ
.... الطاقة الشمسية
.... طاقة المد والجذر
.... كهرباء

My Language

2 Read and circle the correct answer.

اقرأ وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. Reem goes to .... school every day.
   ◯ she ◯ their ◯ her
2. They have got a dog. .... name is Simba.
   ◯ Her ◯ Its ◯ His
3. He always .... hard in his exams.
   ◯ tries ◯ try ◯ tried
4. She .... many things to do.
   ◯ having ◯ have ◯ has

My Reading

3 Read and tick (✓) the correct answer.

اقرأ وضع علامة (✓) أمام الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. .... are materials that we get from nature.
   ◯ Natural resources
   ◯ Non-renewable resources
2. Crude oil turned into ....
   ◯ petroleum ◯ fuel
3. Ahmed has applied for a .... as an electrical engineer.
   ◯ skill ◯ job
4. You will have to .... for two months to learn everything you need to know.
   ◯ promotion ◯ train

My Writing

4 Write two advantages of solar energy. اكتب ميزتين للطاقة الشمسية.

....
....

5 How to be a good team member. Mention two.

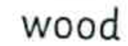
كيف تكون عضوًا جيدًا في الفريق. أذكر اثنين.

....
....

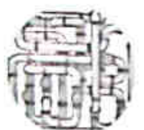
◯ قم بتقييم نفسك بالعلامات الموضحة.

Review on unit 5



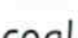
wood soil stone

metal petroleum water

plastic wind power solar power

coal fossil

Renewable resources

- soil
- wood
- water



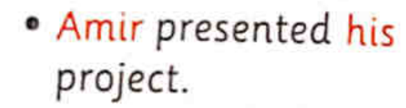
Non-renewable resources



- plastic 
- metal 
- petroleum 

Resources in our world: Vocabulary, Science, Language, Values





- Amir presented his project.
- Both children presented their projects on Tuesday.
- A baby cries when she's hungry.
- Magdy finishes his homework.

There are 5 points to remember when you're working on a team.

1. Be responsible
2. Collaborate
3. Solve problems
4. Communicate
5. Have a positive attitude



Notes for parents

- Help your child review unit 5.

ساعد طفلك في مراجعة الوحدة الخامسة



هذا الجزء يمكنك من ربط الكلمات التى درستها بجمل
ليساعدك على التمكن من مهارة القراءة والكتابة

1. Reading & writing skills :

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
Natural resources	materials	Natural resources are materials that we get from nature.
	renewable	Renewable resources can be replaced when they run out.
	sun - wind	The sun, wind and falling water are renewable resources.
	non-renewable	When we use all of non-renewable resources up, we can't get any more.
	metals	Metals and petroleum are non-renewable resources.
Renewable energy	source - run out	Renewable energy is from a source that won't run out.
	electricity - wind	We can make electricity from renewable resources like the wind and water.
	solar farm	The desert is the perfect place for a solar farm.
	solar panels	We use solar panels to collect sunlight.
	electrical energy	The solar energy is turned into electrical energy.
	cheap	Electricity from solar power is cheap.
Teamwork	success	Teamwork is very important for the success of a project.
	share - ideas	Share your ideas and feelings with the other members.
	best results	Actively work with your team to get the best results.
	calm - upset	Stay calm and don't get upset.
	solver - solutions	Be a problem solver. Brainstorm many solutions.
My day	wake up	I wake up for school at 7 o'clock.
	face - breakfast	I wash my face. I eat my breakfast.
	school	I go to school at 7:30.
	bus - home	I catch the bus to go home.
	homework	I do my homework.
	movie	We watch a movie after dinner.

2. How to make a sentence :

٢.تعلم كيف تكون وترتب جملة

١ الجمل الخبرية

1. oil – fuel – into – Crude – turned – is.
2. are – types – metal – There – different – of .

	فاعل	فعل	. باقى الجملة
1			
2			

٢ الجملة الأمرية

1. that – do – Don't.
2. your – Build – career.

	Don't	مصدر الفعل	. باقى الجملة
1			
2			

٣ الجمل الأستفهامية

(أ) السؤال بـ (كلمة استفهام .. ؟)

1. fossil – your family – fuels – Why – use – does ?
2. are – resources – What – natural ?

	كلمة الاستفهام	فعل مساعد	فاعل	فعل أساسى	? باقى الجملة
1					
2					

(ب) السؤال بـ (هل .. ؟)

1. made – Is – of – wood – it ?
2. in your classroom – find – Can – minerals – you – any ?

	فعل مساعد	فاعل	فعل أساسى	? باقى الجملة
1				
2				



١- عناصر تساعدك على تنظيم أفكارك للتعامل مع مهارة الكتابة متبوعة بنموذج.

Resources in our world

Natural Resources

Natural resources are materials that we get from nature.

Example

Wood, stone, soil, water, plastic, metal and petroleum are examples of natural resources.

Uses

We use stone to construct buildings.

We use water to drink.

We use wood to make tables.

Renewable

Renewable resources can be replaced when they run out.

Non-renewable

These are things like plastic and metals. Once we have used all of them up, we can't get any more.

Opinion

Natural resources are very important and we should use them in a good way.

Read and learn. اقرأ وتعلم.

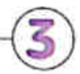
Natural resources are materials that we get from nature. Wood, stone, soil, water, plastic, metal and petroleum are examples of natural resources. We use stone to construct buildings and bridges. We use water to drink. We use wood to make tables and chairs. Renewable resources can be replaced when they run out. Non-renewable resources can not be replaced when they run out. Natural resources are very important and we should use them in a good way.

٢- تعتبر مهارة الكتابة من المهارات الأساسية للتعبير عن فكرة أو موضوع لذا يجب استخدام جمل وأفكار مترابطة. قم بقراءة هذه الجمل لتساعدك على التعامل مع مهارة الكتابة (٢٤ جملة).



Solar panels

Solar panels are expensive.[1] We can't make solar power on a rainy day.[2] Solar panels collect sunlight.[3] Also, solar farms need a very big space.[4] However, solar panels are easy to look after them.[5] Electricity from solar power is cheap.[6]



Fossil fuels

Fossil fuels are non-renewable resources.[7] Oil, coal and natural gas are fossil fuels.[8] Crude oil is taken out of the ground.[9] It is processed into petroleum which we use in our cars, buses, and airplanes.[10] Coal is taken from deep inside the Earth[11]. It is used to generate electricity.[12] Coal and natural gas are used in our homes for heating and cooking.[13]



Working in a team

Aya works for an engineering company.[14] She likes her job and her team members.[15] She's positive, helpful and kind to everyone.[16] She's always polite, too.[17] She works hard, but she often worries about problems that she can't solve.[18] Sometimes she doesn't finish her part of a project.[19]

4 To apply for a job

To : Omarhossam@gmail.com
From : Dinaali83@yahoo.com
Subject : job application
Dear Mr Omar,

I am writing because I saw your advertisement for the Solar Panel Engineer on the Renewable Technologies Website.[20] I would be very interested in working for you as a solar panel engineer.[21] I studied engineering at Cairo University and I worked as a junior engineer on the Benban Solar Park for one year.[22] I could travel to Cairo for an interview or meet online at any time from Monday to Friday.[23] I look forward to hearing from you soon.[24]

Yours sincerely,
Dina Ali

Test 9 on Unit 5

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

• Understand • Apply • Create

A. Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Renewable resources can be .... when they run out.
   a. replaced b. made c. placed d. raised
2. Potatoes are a renewable resource because we can .... more.
   a. grow b. help c. play d. melt
3. .... is a renewable resource.
   a. Plastic b. Metal c. Petroleum d. Meat
4. Farmers can .... more animals for us to eat.
   a. need b. make c. raise d. help

2 Listen and complete.

1. Some of the workers are putting solar .... in the desert.
2. Mr Ali takes Saleem and his class to the new solar ....
3. Some workers are driving ....
4. The desert is the .... place for a solar farm.

B. Reading

3 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box.

renewable - non-renewable - plastic - petroleum

Nader : Good morning, Ghada.
Ghada : Good morning, Nader.
Nader : What are (1) .... resources ?
Ghada : The resources that we can't get any more.
Nader : Is plastic non-renewable ?
Ghada : Yes, because plastic is made from (2) ....
Nader : How about wood ?
Ghada : No, wood is a (3) .... resource.

1. Ask your child to listen and circle the correct answer.
2. Ask your child to listen and complete the sentences.
3. Ask your child to read and complete the dialogue with words from the box.

- اطلب من طفلك أن يستمع ويضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة
- اطلب من طفلك أن يستمع ويكمل الجمل
- اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويكمل المحادثة بالكلمات الصحيحة من الصندوق أعلاه

4 Read the following text and answer the questions below.

Nancy wakes up for school at 7 o'clock. First, she washes her face. Then she eats her breakfast and brushes her teeth. She goes to school at 7:30. School finishes at 2 o'clock. She catches the bus to go home. Then she does her homework. Sometimes she helps her mom make dinner. Her brother Younis washes and dries the dishes with his father. Her family watches a movie after dinner. Before going to bed, she kisses her mom and dad saying goodnight.

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. This text is about ....
   a. Nancy's father b. Nancy's school
   c. Nancy's mom d. Nancy's day
2. Nancy catches the .... to go home.
   a. train b. car c. taxi d. bus

B. Answer the following questions.

3. When does Nancy wake up for school ?
   ....
4. What a good thing does Nancy do before going to bed ?
   ....

5 The reader

A Read and write T (True) or F (False).

	T	F
1. Zeinab's friends don't like Khayameya.		
2. Lobna invents things all the time.		

B Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Grandpa makes the patterns with three .... of cotton.
   a. floors b. bags c. layers d. slices
2. Doha makes amazing ....
   a. art b. math c. Arabic d. science

Notes for parents

4. Ask your child to read the text and answer the questions. اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ النص ويجيب عن الأسئلة
5. Ask your child to read and answer the questions according to the events of the story. اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويجيب عن الأسئلة طبقًا لأحداث القصة

C. Writing

6 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Both children did a good job in .... presentation.
   a. your b. their c. our d. her
2. Rana .... up for school at 7 o'clock.
   a. wake b. wakes c. to wake d. have woken
3. Tamer did .... science project on global warming.
   a. his b. her c. their d. our
4. My mom .... to my grandparents on Saturdays.
   a. go b. going c. goes d. to go

7 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. her project - She - presented - class - to - the.
....
2. resources - are - natural - What ?
....

8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words by using the following guiding elements.

Advantages and disadvantages of solar energy

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

Guiding words :

- expensive
- electricity
- big space
- easy

....
....
....
....
....

6. Ask your child to choose the correct answer.
- اطلب من طفلك أن يختار الإجابة الصحيحة
7. Ask your child to read, order the words and write the sentences correctly.
- اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ، يرتب الكلمات ويكتب الجمل بطريقة صحيحة
8. Ask your child to write a text of (50) words using the given guiding words.
- اطلب من طفلك أن يكتب نص مكون من حوالى (٥٠) كلمة مستخدمًا الكلمات الارشادية.

Test 10 on Unit 5

Collected From Governorates Exams

اختبـار مجمـع مـن مختلف المحافظات

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

• Understand • Apply • Create

A. Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Teamwork is very important for the .... of a project.
   a. interview b. success c. career d. signature
2. You should .... your ideas with other team members.
   a. catch b. communicate c. share d. train
3. If you find your role .... , ask for help.
   a. easy b. difficult c. sensitive d. flexible
4. You should listen to other's ....
   a. resources b. results c. ideas d. purposes

(Alexandria - El Gomrok 2022 / Asyut - Abu Tig 2022)

2 Listen and complete.

1. We can't .... energy.
2. We can .... energy from one kind to another kind.
3. We use .... to collect sunlight.
4. The solar energy is turned into .... energy.

(Souhag - Tahta 2022 / Beni Suef - Biba 2022)

B. Reading

3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

panels - electricity - perfect - solar

Mr Ali takes Seleem and his class to the new (1).................... farm. They meet the workers. Some of the workers are putting solar panels in the desert. Some workers are driving trucks. Some workers are engineers. One of the engineers tells the class, "We will have more (2).................... in the city soon, and in your school too" We have so much sunshine in the desert, so it is the (3).................... place for a solar farm. The solar panels collect energy from the sun and we can make that into electricity for our homes".

(New valley - Kharga 2022)

Notes for parents

1. Ask your child to listen and circle the correct answer.
2. Ask your child to listen and complete the sentences.
3. Ask your child to read and complete the text with words from the box.

- اطلب من طفلك أن يستمع ويضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة .
- اطلب من طفلك أن يستمع ويكمل الجمل
- اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويكمل النص بالكلمات الصحيحة من المربع.

4 Read the following text and answer the questions below.

Amir works for a design company. It is a very busy office and he works hard. He is never late for work. He always finishes his part of a project. He has lots of ideas, but he isn't good at listening to his team members' ideas. Amir finds it difficult to make friends. He often gets upset when things are difficult at work.

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. Amir work in a ....
   a. factory   b. company   c. bank   d. workshop
2. Amir finds it .... to make friends.
   a. fun   b. easy   c. boring   d. difficult

B. Answer the following questions.

3. When does Amir get upset at work ?
   ....
4. Is Amir a good team member ?
   ....

(Giza - Dokki 2022)

5 The reader

A Read and write T (True) or F (False).

	T	F
1. Zeinab's friend Rasha, is good at science.		
2. Grandpa welcomed people who wanted to learn.		

(Sharqia - Abu kebir 2022/Beheira - Damanhur 2022)

B Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Khayameya school is travelling all ....
   a. summer   b. winter   c. autumn   d. spring
2. Grandpa's .... are not good to sew now.
   a. hands   b. ears   c. legs   d. eyes

(Fayoum - Sinnuris 2022/Monufia - Monuf 2022)

4. Ask your child to read the text and answer the questions. - اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ النص ويجيب عن الأسئلة
5. Ask your child to read and answer the questions according to the events of the story. - اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويجيب عن الأسئلة طبقًا لأحداث القصة

C. Writing

6 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. I .... up for school at 6 o'clock. *(Damietta - Faraskur 2022)*
   a. wakes b. wake c. waking d. woke
2. My brother does .... homework after school.
   a. his b. her c. she d. him
   (Aswan - Edfu 2022)
3. Tarek never .... to school on foot. *(Sohag - Tema 2022)*
   a. go b. goes c. went d. going
4. Omar and Ali bought a present for .... mum.
   a. his b. her c. their d. them
   (Suez - North Suez 2022)

7 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. buildings - use - We - stone - construct - to. *(Gharbia - El Santa 2022)*
   ....
2. make - can - electricity - we - How ? *(Giza - El Ayyat 2022)*
   ....

8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words by using the following guiding elements.

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

Write an email to your friend Samar about "renewable energy". Your name is Sama and your email address is samasami@yahoo.com. Your friend's email address is samarali@yahoo.com.

Guiding words :

source – electricity – solar farm – solar panels – cheap

To : ....
From : ....
Subject : ....
....
....
....
....

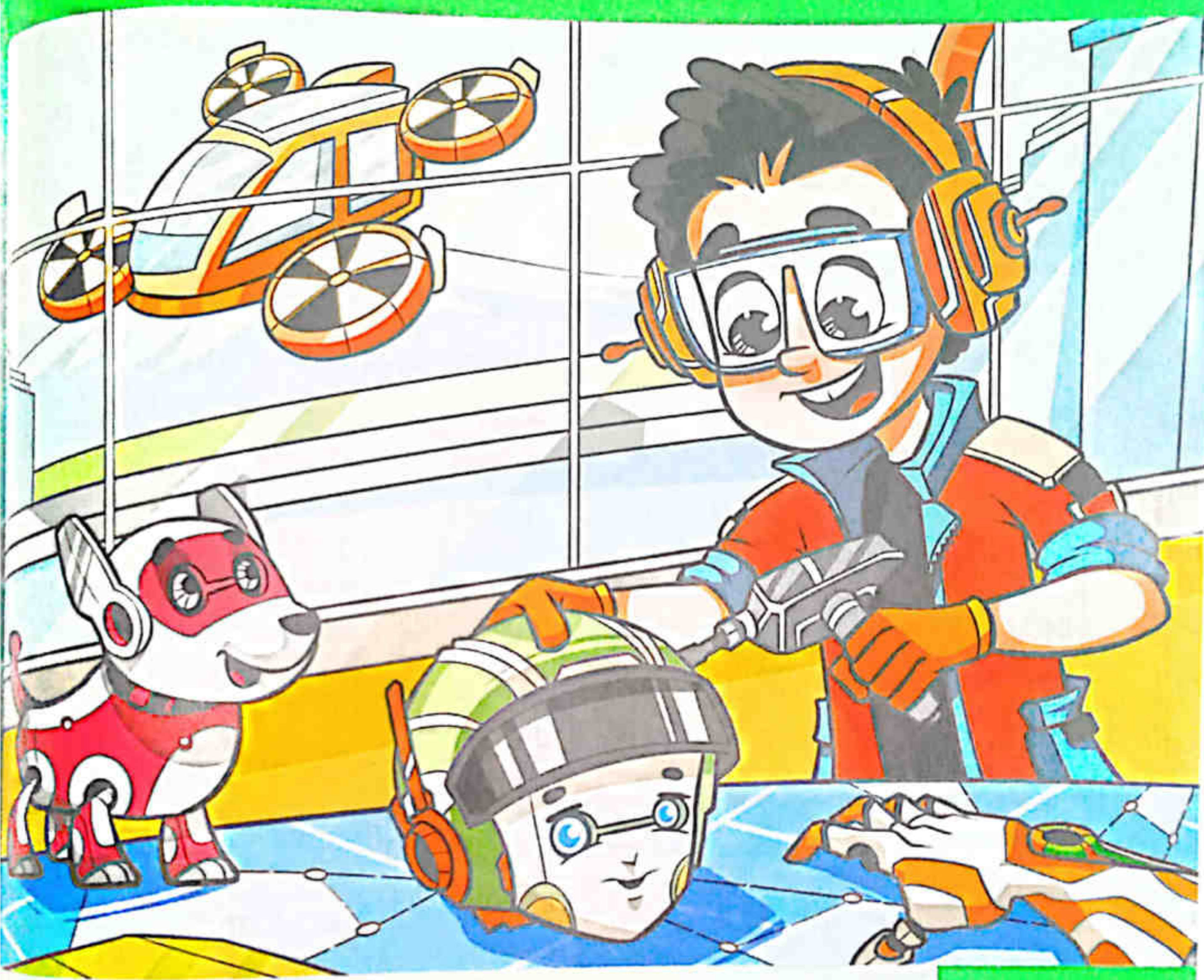
(Cairo - New Cairo 2022)

Notes for parents

6. Ask your child to choose the correct answer. اطلب من طفلك أن يختار الإجابة الصحيحة
7. Ask your child to read, order the words and write the sentences correctly. اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ، يرتب الكلمات ويكتب الجمل بطريقة صحيحة
8. Ask your child to write a text of (50) words using the given guiding words. اطلب من طفلك أن يكتب نص مكون من حوالي (٥٠) كلمة مستخدمًا الكلمات الارشادية

Unit 6 Let's work

هيا نعمل



لإتقان الوحدة

- استخدام كارت **المعاصر** للقراءة والكتابة.
- Test your skills في نهاية الوحدة.
- كراسة **المعاصر** للمهارات.
- كراسة **المعاصر** التفاعلية.
- التقييمات الشهرية في الكراسة التفاعلية.

Aims of unit six :

In this unit I will .....

- talk about different kinds of transportation.
  - اتحدث عن الأنواع المختلفة لوسائل النقل.
- make predictions about the future.
  - اتوقع عن المستقبل.
- understand future tech jobs.
  - افهم الوظائف التكنولوجية في المستقبل.
- use punctuation marks.
  - استخدم علامات الترقيم.
- learn to use search engines on the internet.
  - اتعلم كيفية استخدام محركات البحث عبر الانترنت.
- create strong passwords and passphrases.
  - إنشاء كلمات مرور قوية و عبارات مرور.
- write a well-organized paragraph.
  - اكتب فقرة إنشائية حسنة التنظيم.
- create a business plan.
  - إنشاء خطة عمل.

الأهداف العامة للوحدة السادسة :

في هذه الوحدة سوف.....

Lesson 1

• Transportation





استمع وردد.

Key vocabulary

water	مياه	rail	قضيب سكة حديد
road	طريق	air	هواء
pipe	ماسورة		

Extra vocabulary

desert town	مدينة صحراوية	government	الحكومة
The Suez Canal	قناة السويس	Ancient Egyptians	القدماء المصريين
suburb	ضاحية المدينة	deep	عميق
wide	عرض - عريض	comfortable	مريح
airplane	طائرة	goods	بضائع
ship	سفينة	taxi	تاكسي
boat	قارب	bus	أتوبيس / حافلة
river ferry	عبّارة نهرية	train	قطار
transportation	وسائل المواصلات	different	مختلف

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular

Present		Past
travel	يسافر	traveled
use	يستخدم	used
stop	يقف	stopped

Irregular

Present		Past
take	يستقل - يأخذ	took
sit	يجلس	sat
build	يبنى	built
understand	يفهم	understood

Notes for parents

- Help your child listen to the words and repeat them.

• ساعد طفلك أن يستمع إلى الكلمات ويرددهم.

Note : - The Suez Canal is now 193 kilometers long, 205 meters wide, and 24 meters deep. It was started in 1859 and it took ten years to finish it.
- The first train line in Egypt opened in 1854. It traveled from Cairo to Alexandria.

• إن قناة السويس اليوم أصبحت بطول ١٩٣ كيلو متر، وعرض ٢٠٥ متر، وعمق ٢٤ متر. إنها بدأت عام ١٨٥٩ وأخذت عشر سنوات حتى انتهت
• أول خط قطار فى مصر تم افتتاحه عام ١٨٥٤ كان يمر من القاهرة حتى الإسكندرية.

Important expressions and prepositions — تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

get water from	يحصل على المياه من ...
be on a train / bus	يكون على متن القطار / الأتوبيس
travel on an airplane / a ship	يسافر فى طائرة / سفينة
take a river ferry	يستقل / يركب معدية فى النهر
kinds of	أنواع من
stop in ... for	يتوقف عن .... لـ



Listen, read and role-play.

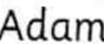
Pop Quiz | تدرب على ٢٩ من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع



Check Vocabulary

(1) العاصمة
(2) بعيد جدًا
(3) صحراء
(4) فى المستقبل
(5) يفهم



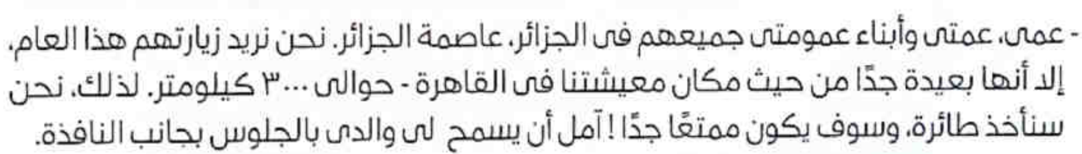




Adam

My uncle, aunt, and cousins all live in Algiers, the capital[1] of Algeria. We want to visit them this year, but it's very far away[2] from where we live in Cairo-about 3.000 kilometers. So, we'll take an airplane. It will be really fun ! I hope my parents let me sit by the window.

- عمى، عمتى وأبناء عمومتى جميعهم فى الجزائر، عاصمة الجزائر. نحن نريد زيارتهم هذا العام، إلا أنها بعيدة جدًا من حيث مكان معيشتنا فى القاهرة - حوالى ٣٠٠٠ كيلومتر. لذلك، نحن سنأخذ طائرة، وسوف يكون ممتعًا جدًا ! آمل أن يسمح لى والدى بالجلوس بجانب النافذة.





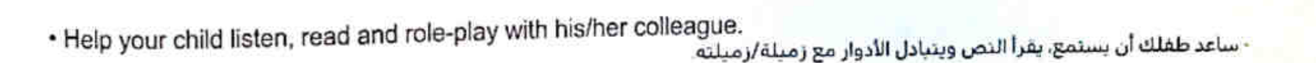




Amira

Our teacher was telling us about the new cities that people are building in the desert[3]. She said that a lot of people will be able to live there very happily in the future[4]. We didn't understand[5] how the people can get water in the desert without an oasis.

- كان معلمنا يخبرنا عن المدن الجديدة التى يبنيها الناس فى الصحراء. قالت إن الكثير من الناس سيتمكنون من العيش هناك بسعادة كبيرة فى المستقبل. لم نفهم كيف يمكن للناس الحصول على الماء فى الصحراء بدون واحة.



• Help your child listen, read and role-play with his/her colleague.

- ساعد طفلك أن يستمع، يقرأ النص ويتبادل الأدوار مع زميلة/زميلته

Our teacher explained that the government(6) will send water from Lake Nasser(7) through a pipe in the desert, just like they send oil(8). The people who live in the new towns will use the water for whatever they need !

أوضحت معلمتنا أن الحكومة سترسل المياه من بحيرة ناصر عبر أنبوب فى الصحراء، مثلما يرسلون النفط. الناس الذين يعيشون فى المدن الجديدة سيستخدمون الماء فى كل ما يحتاجون إليه !

Check Vocabulary
- حكومة (6)
- بحيرة ناصر (7)
- بترول (8)
- وسائل المواصلات (9)
- قطارات كهربائية (10)
- سفينة ملكية (11)



Maged



I'm very excited about a new kind of transportation(9) in Egypt. And it's not a car, bus, or boat. It's the new electric trains(10). The government will finish the new electric line in the future. Did you know that these trains can go 250 kilometers per hour ? That's pretty fast !

- أنا متحمس جدًا لنوع جديد من وسائل النقل فى مصر. وهى ليست سيارة أو حافلة أو قارب. إنها القطارات الكهربائية الجديدة. ستنهى الحكومة الخط الكهربائى الجديد فى المستقبل. هل تعلم أن هذه القطارات يمكن أن تقطع مسافة ٢٥٠ كيلومترًا فى الساعة ؟ هذا سريع جدًا!



Lamar



We're studying the Ancient Egyptians at school. We found out that people didn't travel over land very much in Egypt then. Almost everyone used the river for transportation. They moved their goods in different kinds of boats and ships. People also traveled up and down the river. I'll show you a picture of Tutankhamun's royal ship(11) tomorrow.

- نحن ندرس عن القدماء المصريين فى المدرسة. اكتشفنا أن الناس لم يسافروا برًا كثيرًا فى مصر فى ذلك الوقت. استخدم الجميع تقريبًا النهر للنقل. نقلوا بضائعهم فى أنواع مختلفة من القوارب والسفن. كما سافر الناس صعودًا وهبوطًا فى النهر. سأريك غدًا صورة لسفينة توت عنخ آمون الملكية.



Fares

Check Vocabulary

معابد (12)



Have you ever been to Luxor to visit the famous ancient temples(12) in the Valley of the Kings ? I always wanted to go because I love archaeology. So, my dad said we could drive there in our new van for our vacation. It took us a whole day, but we stopped for lunch and dinner in different towns. It was really interesting!

- هل سبق لك أن زرت مدينة الأقصر لزيارة المعابد القديمة الشهيرة فى وادى الملوك ؟ كنت أرغب دائمًا فى الذهاب لأننى أحب علم الآثار، لذلك قال والدى أنه يمكننا القيادة هناك فى شاحنتنا الجديدة لقضاء إجازتنا. استغرق الأمر منا يومًا كاملًا. لكننا توقفنا لتناول طعام الغداء والعشاء فى مدن مختلفة. كان مثيرًا للاهتمام حقًا !

Language



1 The Present Perfect Tense زمن المضارع التام

Usage الاستخدام

 To talk about experience.

 للتحدث عن الخبرة.

Formation التكوين



Subject		Auxiliary		Verb
I / They / You / We / اسم جمع	+	have	+	P.P. التصريف الثالث
He / She / It / اسم مفرد		has		

ex. I have traveled to Spain.



Subject		Auxiliary		Verb
I / They / You / We / اسم جمع	+	have not (haven't)	+	P.P. التصريف الثالث
He / She / It / اسم مفرد		has not (hasn't)		

ex. He has not (hasn't) seen the coral reefs.

• Help your child know how to use present perfect tense.

- ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف كيف يستخدم زمن المضارع التام.



Yes / No question

- السؤال بـ "هل"

Have / Has + subject الفاعل + P.P. التصريف الثالث ?

For short answer : للإجابة المختصرة :

Affirmative : yes, الفاعل + have / has.

Negative : No, الفاعل + haven't / hasn't.

ex. Have you ever been to the desert ?

- Yes, I have.
- No, I haven't.

Read and identify. اقرأ وتعرف.

Infinitive	Past Simple	Past participle
be	was / were	been
break	broke	broken
come	came	come
do	did	done
eat	ate	eaten
make	made	made
see	saw	seen
take	took	taken
write	wrote	written
go	went	gone

Key words

غالبًا ما يأتى المضارع التام مع :

just	حالاً/توًا	yet	حتى الآن
already	بالفعل	since	منذ
never	أبدًا	for	لمدة
ever	من قبل		

2 Prepositions of transport حروف الجر الخاصة بوسائل المواصلات

⭐ We use (by) with means of transportation. تستخدم (by) مع وسائل النقل.

- by bus
- by train
- by airplane

⭐ لاحظ عدم وجود فاصل بين (by) ووسيلة المواصلات.

⭐ When there is (a , an or the) before the means of transportation, we use :

عندما توجد (a , an أو the) قبل وسيلة المواصلات نستخدم :

1. on with the means that we can stand in.

⭐ تستخدم "on" مع الوسائل التي يمكننا الوقوف بداخلها :

- on an airplane
- on a train
- on a bus

2. in with the means that we can't stand in.

⭐ تستخدم "in" مع الوسائل التى لا يمكننا الوقوف بداخلها :

- in a car
- in a taxi

05 min

Pop Quiz on Language

1 Read and tick (✓) for the correct answer.

1. .... you finished your homework ?
   ◯ Has ◯ Have ◯ Does
2. I have .... all of the apple juice.
   ◯ finishing ◯ finish ◯ finished
3. He has .... too hard today.
   ◯ working ◯ worked ◯ work
4. That smells really good. Have you .... this cake ?
   ◯ bake ◯ baked ◯ baking

2 Read and complete the sentences with (by - on - in).

1. I walk to school, but if it's raining, I go .... bus.
2. I travel to Alexandria .... a car.
3. Do you travel .... train or .... a bus ?

• Help your child identify the prepositions of transport. - ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على حروف الجر الخاصة بوسائل المواصلات

1. Ask your child to read and tick (✓) for the correct answer. - اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويضع علامة (✓) أمام الإجابة الصحيحة
2. Ask your child to read and complete the sentences with the correct preposition. - اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويكمل الجمل بحرف الجر الصحيح

General Exercises on Lesson 1

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

• Understand • Apply • Create

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Everyone used the .... for transportation.
   a. sea   b. desert   c. river   d. ocean
2. People moved their goods in boats and ....
   a. trucks   b. ships   c. vans   d. cars
3. Tutankhamun had a royal ....
   a. ship   b. ferry   c. boat   d. yacht
4. People didn't travel over .... very much in Egypt.
   a. air   b. land   c. water   d. rail

2 Listen and complete.

1. There are ancient .... in the Valley of the Kings.
2. We could drive there in our new .... for our vacation.
3. We stopped for lunch and ....
4. I love ....

3 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

government - fast - train - travel

I'm very excited about a new kind of transportation in Egypt. And it's not a car, bus, or boat. It's the new electric (1) .... The (2) .... will finish the new electric line in the future. Did you know that these trains can go 250 kilometers per hour ? That's pretty (3) ....

Notes for parents

1. Ask your child to listen and circle the correct answer.
2. Ask your child to listen and complete the sentences with the correct answer.
3. Ask your child to read and complete the text with the correct word from the box.

- اطلب من طفلك أن يستمع ويضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.
- اطلب من طفلك أن يستمع ويكمل الجمل بالإجابة الصحيحة.
- اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويكمل النص بالكلمة الصحيحة من الصندوق.

4 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. often - by train - don't - I - travel.

....

2. on - a bus - Have - ever - you - been ?

....

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. I travel to Alexandria .... train.
   a. at b. by c. in d. on
2. Have you ever .... in a car ? - Yes, I have.
   a. to be b. be c. been d. being
3. .... he slept in the class ?
   a. Have b. Has c. Did d. Does
4. The children have .... to school.
   a. went b. gone c. go d. going

6 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements.

Types of transportation

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

Guiding words :

- travel
- airplane
- rail
- road
- air
- pipe
- train
- ferry

4 Ask your child to order the words and write the sentences correctly.
- اطلب من طفلك أن يرتب الكلمات ويكتب الجمل بطريقة صحيحة.

5 Ask your child to choose the correct answer.
- اطلب من طفلك أن يختار الإجابة الصحيحة

6 Ask your child to write a text of (50) words using the given guiding words.
- اطلب من طفلك أن يكتب نص مكون من حوالى (٥٠) كلمة مستخدمًا الكلمات الارشادية

Lesson
2

• Language



Vocabulary

⭐ Listen and repeat. استمع وردد.

Key vocabulary

robot	إنسان آلى	Mars	كوكب المريخ
future	مستقبل	vacation	اجازة

Extra vocabulary

flying taxi	سيارة الأجرة الطائرة	bridge	كوبرى
podcast	ملف صوتى	roof	سقف
self-driving car	سيارة ذاتية القيادة	career	مهنة
education	تعليم	humans	البشر
royal ship	سفينة ملكية	prepay	يدفع مقدمًا
preview	عرض مسبق	pre-school	ما قبل المدرسة
tech	تكنولوچى	fuel	وقود
government	حكومة	host	مستضيف

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular

Present		Past
travel	ينتقل	traveled
study	يذاكر	studied

Irregular

Present		Past
drive	يقود	drove
buy	يشترى	bought
fly	يطير	flew
show	يوضح	showed / shown

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

travel to ...... for ...... - يسافر إلى ...... من أجل	travel in - يسافر فى
by the window - بجانب النافذة	on a ship - على مُتن سفينة
	live on - يعيش على

Notes for parents

• Help your child listen to words and repeat them. • ساعد طفلك أن يستمع إلى الكلمات ويرددها

Language

The future simple tense زمن المستقبل البسيط

Usage To make predictions about the future.

لتوقع تنبؤات عن المستقبل.



1 Affirmative (positive) statements الجمل الخبرية المثبتة

Subj. + will ('ll) + inf. باقى الجملة ....

ex. She will travel on a ship.





2 Negative statements الجمل الخبرية المنفية

Subj. + will not (won't) + inf. باقى الجملة ....

ex. Omar won't sit by the window.





3 Interrogative صيغة الاستفهام

A Yes / No question - السؤال بـ "هل"

Will + subj. + inf. باقى الجملة .... ?

For short answer :

Affirmative : yes + subj. + will.

Negative : No + subj. + won't.

ex. - Will they take a train to Aswan ?

* Yes, they will. * No, they won't.

B Wh- question : السؤال بكلمة استفهام :

wh- word + will + subj. + inf. باقى الجملة .... ?



ex. - How will you travel to France ?

I will travel on an airplane.

- Help your child use the future tense to make predictions. - ساعد طفلك أن يستخدم زمن المستقبل فى عمل تنبؤات
- Help your child identify how to ask with Yes/No question or wh-question in the future tense. - ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على كيفية السؤال بهل أو بكلمة استفهام فى زمن المستقبل

will = 'll   will not = won't

Key words

tomorrow غداً	next ... التالي ...
in the future في المستقبل	in 2025, 2026, ... في عام ٢٠٢٥، ٢٠٢٦، ......
on time في الوقت	

Read and identify these contractions. اقرأ وتعرف على تلك الاختصارات.

1. I will → I'll	4. We will → We'll
2. He will → He'll	5. They will → They'll
3. She will → She'll	6. You will not → You won't

This is called a contraction; two words are joined together and a letter, or some letters are dropped.
هذا ما يسمى الإختصار وفيه يتم دمج كلمتين معًا مع حذف حرف أو بعض الحروف.

Note : تستخدم (How) للسؤال عن وسيلة المواصلات.
- How will you travel to Aswan ? - On a river ferry.

How to make a sentence using the future tense

1 Statement :

1 Subj.	2 Will / Won't	3 inf.	4 باقى الجملة .
I	will	take	a flying taxi to school.

2 Question :

1 Will	2 Subj.	3 inf.	4 باقى السؤال ?
Will	you	travel	to the Moon one day ?

Notes for parents

• Help your child learn how to make a sentence using the future tense. ساعد طفلك أن يكون جملة مستخدمًا زمن المستقبل.

Pop Quiz on Language

1 Read and complete with the correct form.

1. He won't .... (doing) his homework today.
2. .... (Do) you get up early tomorrow morning ? - Yes, I will.
3. A : "The phone's ringing". B : Ok, I will .... (answered) it.
4. Class 1A will .... (has) a test next Monday.
5. The doctor will .... (is) with you in a moment.

2 Read and tick (✓) the correct answer.

1. He .... arrive on time.
   - ◯ will
   - ◯ is
2. It's late. I think I .... a taxi.
   - ◯ will take
   - ◯ takes
3. It .... tomorrow.
   - ◯ snows
   - ◯ will snow
4. Will you .... to the club on Saturday ?
   - ◯ go
   - ◯ going
5. People will .... on the moon in the future.
   - ◯ lives
   - ◯ live

3 Read and complete the sentences with the future simple form.

1. .... me do homework ? (you / help)
2. I .... on that swing. (not / play)
3. Perhaps we .... Paris next month. (visit)
4. A : Will you visit your uncle ? B : No, I .... (not / will)

1. Ask your child to read and complete the sentences with the correct form.
- اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويكمل الجمل بالصيغة الصحيحة.
2. Ask your child to read and tick (✓) the correct answer.
- اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويضع علامة (✓) للإجابة الصحيحة.
3. Ask your child to read and complete the sentences with the future simple form.
- اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويكمل الجمل بصيغة المستقبل البسيط.



PUNCTUATION MARKS

1 The question mark (?) : علامة الاستفهام:



- When we write a question, we use (?) a question mark at the end of a question.

عندما نكتب سؤال، نضع علامة الاستفهام فى نهاية السؤال.

• Are you OK ?

• What's your name ?

2 The exclamation point (!) : علامة التعجب:



- To show strong feelings or emotions.

تستخدم علامة التعجب (!) عند التعبير عن شعور قوى.

• I'm very excited !

- To express shock, surprise or anger.

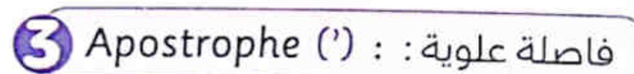
للتعبير عن صدمة، مفاجأة أو غضب.

• Watch out !

• What a fantanstic birthday gift !

- At the end of strong command. تستخدم فى نهاية أمر قوى :

• Shut up ! • Stop !



3 Apostrophe (') : فاصلة علوية:



- For contraction of a word. لإختصار كلمة.

• She'll travel on a ship.

Contraction : Apostrophes show that a letter or more than one letter has been removed.

تظهر الفواصل العليا أنه تم إزالة حرف أو أكثر من حرف

Notes for parents

• Help your child identify how to use the punctuation marks. ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على كيفية استخدام علامات الترقيم

4 Comma (,) : الفاصلة السفلية :

- To join two ideas in a sentence.

نستخدم الفاصلة السفلية لربط فكرتين ببعضهم البعض فى جملة.

- We want to visit Aswan this year, but it's very far away from where we live in Cairo.

5 The period (.) : النقطة :

- We use it at the end of a sentence.

نستخدمها فى نهاية الجملة الخبرية.

- I like ice cream.
- He is young.

Learn

We use "pre" at the start of words to mean "before". For example, predict means to say something before it happens.

pre-school ما قبل المدرسة   prepay يدفع مقدمًا

Pop Quiz on Writing

1 What punctuation mark should end the following sentences with? Choose and write.

1. Wow ☐ You won a gold medal in the Olympics.
   a. (!) exclamation point   b. (?) question mark
2. The children were told to bring the following items : a pen, a pencil ☐ a ruler and an exercise book.
   a. (.) period   b. (,) comma

2 Read and correct the punctuation marks.

1. Will you learn to drive a car !

....

2. The train is so fast ?

....

1. Ask your child to choose the correct missing punctuations.
2. Ask your child to read and correct the punctuation marks.

- اطلب من طفلك أن يختار علامات الترقيم الناقصة الصحيحة.
- اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويصحح علامات الترقيم.

General Exercises on Lesson 2

• Understand • Apply • Create

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. I .... you move your things tomorrow.
   a. helping b. have helped c. help d. will help
2. The office will .... you an email on Monday.
   a. sent b. send c. sends d. sending
3. I .... some new clothes this week.
   a. will get b. had got c. got d. getting
4. Will my mom .... some cookies for us later ?
   a. making b. makes c. made d. make
5. He will .... tomorrow.
   a. came b. come c. comes d. to come
6. .... they finish their homework before six o'clock ?
   a. Won't b. Won't be c. Will be d. Will
7. I will .... the living room.
   a. clean b. cleaned c. cleaning d. to clean
8. Will you see the movie tonight ? - Yes, I ....
   a. won't b. will c. won't be d. will be

2 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. on - an airplane - will - travel - I .

....

2. they - to Aswan - Will - take - a train ?

....

Notes for parents

1. Ask your child to choose the correct answer.
2. Ask your child to order the words and write the sentences correctly.

اطلب من طفلك أن يختار الإجابة الصحيحة.
اطلب من طفلك أن يرتب الكلمات ويكتب الجمل بطريقة صحيحة.




Vocabulary

Listen and repeat. استمع وردد.

Key vocabulary

tech = technology	تكنولوجيا	search engine	محرك البحث
link	رابط	ad (advertisement)	إعلان
browser	متصفح	option	خيارات
specific	محدد	search box	صندوق البحث

Extra vocabulary

automobile	ذاتى الحركة/سيارة	User Experience	تجربة المستخدم
experience	خبرة	high-speed train	القطار السريع
robotic engineer	مهندس روبوت	last	أخير
autonomous machine	آلة تعمل ذاتيًا	space craft	سفينة فضاء
developer	مُتعهد/ مطور	safe	آمن
factory	مصنع	VR headset	جهاز الواقع الافتراضى
brainstorm	يقوم بالعصف الذهنى	result	نتيجة
agriculture	زراعة	manufacturing	صناعة
excitement	إثارة	application	تطبيق

Abbreviations اختصارات

- tech → technology
- UX → user experience
- VR → virtual reality
- ad → advertisement

• Help your child listen to the words and repeat them.

- ساعد طفلك أن يستمع إلى الكلمات ويرددهم.

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular Present		Regular Past	Irregular Present		Irregular Past
create	يبدع	created	do	يفعل	did
design	يصمم	designed	wear	يرتدي	wore
cover	يغطي	covered	see	يرى	saw
test	يختبر	tested			
try	يحاول	tried			

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

• short for	- اختصار لـ ...	• much better	- أفضل كثيرًا
• in the middle	- في المنتصف	• look up	- يبحث عن

⭐ Read the definitions. اقرأ التعريفات.

Word	Definition
search engine (noun) محرك البحث	is a website that helps you find web pages from other websites هو موقع إلكتروني يساعدك في العثور على صفحات إلكترونية من مواقع أخرى
look up (verb) يبحث عن كلمة في القاموس	search for يبحث عن
link (noun) رابط	a connection to a website or app online اتصال بموقع أو تطبيق عبر الإنترنت
browser (noun) متصفح	is a software application that you use to look at web pages on the internet هو تطبيق برمجي تستخدمه للنظر في الصفحات الإلكترونية عبر شبكة الاتصال العالمية
ad (noun) إعلان	short for advertisement اختصار للإعلان
specific (adj) محدد	particular to one thing خاص بشيء واحد

Notes for parents

- Help your child read the given definitions. - ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ التعريفات المعطاة.

- Note : There are more than a billion web pages on the internet. يوجد أكثر من بليون صفحة إلكترونية على الإنترنت.



Listen and read. استمع واقرأ.

Pop Quiz | تدرب على ٩٩ من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع



Hello and welcome to the podcast(1) Life On Future Earth. I'm your host(2), Gameela Galal, and today we'll be talking about three techjobs that people will do in the future.

أهلًا ومرحبًا بكم في النشرة الصوتية عن الحياة المستقبلية على الأرض. أنا مضيفتك، جميلة جلال، وسنتحدث اليوم عن ثلاث وظائف تقنية سيقوم بها الناس في المستقبل.

Check Vocabulary

(1) نشرة صوتية
(2) مضيف
(3) مصمم كل ما يخص منتج معين
(4) جهاز الواقع الافتراضي

The first job is a UX Designer(3). UX is short for User Experience. User Experience Designers create a positive experience between you, the user, and the technology that you use, like web pages, apps, and machines like washing machines. UX Designers are interested in the experience that you have with technology. They make sure that it is safe, friendly, and useful for all users.

الوظيفة الأولى هي مصمم UX. UX اختصار لتجربة المستخدم. ينشئ مصممو تجربة المستخدم تجربة إيجابية بينك وبين المستخدم والتكنولوجيا التي تستخدمها، مثل صفحات الويب والتطبيقات والآلات مثل الغسالات. يهتم مصممو UX بالتجربة التي لديك مع التكنولوجيا. يتأكدون من أنه آمن وودي ومفيد لجميع المستخدمين.

Then we have VR developers. VR is short for Virtual Reality. Do you like playing video games ? Have you ever tried playing a virtual reality game ? To do this, you have to wear a special VR headset(4). that you wear on your head. It covers your eyes like glasses. VR developers have to create the new world you see when you put on these headsets. They also create the experience you have when using VR. But there are more uses for VR than just exciting games. Museums will use them. And universities will teach future doctors and nurses with them too.

ثم لدينا مطورو VR. VR هو اختصار للواقع الافتراضي. هل تحب لعب ألعاب الفيديو ؟ هل سبق لك أن حاولت لعب لعبة على الواقع الافتراضي ؟ للقيام بذلك، عليك ارتداء سماعة رأس VR خاصة ترتديها على رأسك. تغطي عينيك مثل النظارات. يتعين على مطوري الواقع الافتراضي إنشاء العالم الجديد الذي تراه عندما ترتدي هذه السماعات. كما أنهم ينشئون التجربة التي تحصل عليها عند استخدام الواقع الافتراضي. ولكن هناك استخدامات للواقع الافتراضي أكثر من مجرد ألعاب مثيرة. المتاحف سوف تستخدمها وستقوم الجامعات بتعليم أطباء وممرضات المستقبل معهم أيضًا.

• Help your child listen and read the podcast.

- ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ النشرة الصوتية.

Robotics engineers are the people who design autonomous machines[5] - that's just another word for robots. They also test the robots that they design to make sure that they are good at what they do. We will use these robots to do jobs that are too dangerous or difficult for humans to do. For example, we will use robots to build new automobiles or even high-speed trains. They will probably be used in agriculture and manufacturing too.

Well, that's all for today. Thank you for listening and remember to listen to our next show when I'll talk about the future of medicine.

Check Vocabulary
آلات تعمل ذاتيًا (5)

مهندسو الروبوتات هم الأشخاص الذين يصممون آلات مستقلة وهى مجرد كلمة أخرى للروبوتات. كما أنهم يختبرون الروبوتات التى يصممونها للتأكد من أنها جيدة فى ما يقومون به. سوف نستخدم هذه الروبوتات للقيام بوظائف خطيرة للغاية أو يصعب على البشر القيام بها. على سبيل المثال، سوف نستخدم الروبوتات لبناء سيارات جديدة أو حتى قطارات عالية السرعة. من المحتمل أن تستخدم فى الزراعة والتصنيع أيضًا. حسنًا، هذا كل شىء لهذا اليوم. شكرًا لك على الاستماع وتذكر الاستماع إلى برنامجنا التالى عندما أتحدث عن مستقبل الطب.

Read and tick (✓) or (✗) :

Learn **1.** UX is short for User Experience. ✓



Practice **2.** VR headsets are only used for playing games. ◯



★ Listen and read. استمع واقرأ.

Pop Quiz | تدرب على ٩٩ من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع

Narrator :

Do you ever use search engines[1] to look up information[2] online ? Most of us do. We sometimes think that these tools can find anything for us, but they work better when we help them. It's sometimes difficult to find the right information because there is so much information online and so many links. Here are some important things to keep in mind to help you search safely and successfully.

Check Vocabulary
محرك البحث (1)
معلومات (2)

الراوى: هل سبق لك استخدام محركات البحث للبحث عن المعلومات عبر الإنترنت ؟ معظمنا يفعل. نعتقد أحيانًا أن هذه الأدوات يمكن أن تجد أى شىء لنا، لكنها تعمل بشكل أفضل عندما نساعدها. يصعب أحيانًا العثور على المعلومات الصحيحة نظرًا لوجود الكثير من المعلومات على الإنترنت والعديد من الروابط. فيما يلى بعض الأشياء المهمة التى يجب وضعها فى الاعتبار لمساعدتك فى البحث بأمان ونجاح.

Notes for parents

• Help your child listen and read the text.

• ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ النص.

First of all, use the safe search option in your browser[3]. Maybe an adult already did this for you. If not, you do it. It will protect you from information that is not safe. You can also use search engines that are made for children. They will help you find web pages that are the best ones for you.

Check Vocabulary

- متصفح (3)
- أطفال (4)
- صفحات إلكترونية (5)
- إعلانات (6)
- الراعى (7)
- خيارات (8)

أولًا قبل كل شئ، استخدم خيار البحث الآمن فى متصفحك. ربما قام شخص بالغ بهذا بالفعل من أجلك. إذا لم يحدث، أنت تفعل ذلك. سيحميك من المعلومات غير الآمنة. يمكنك أيضًا استخدام محركات البحث المخصصة للأطفال. سوف يساعدونك فى العثور على صفحات الويب الأفضل بالنسبة لك.

You can add the words for kids[4] to your search. This will make sure that you find web pages[5] that are the most interesting ones for you. For example, if you want to find out about high-speed trains, type in 'high-speed trains for kids'. You'll be surprised how great your results are !

يمكنك إضافة كلمات (معلومات للأطفال) لبحثك. سيؤدى هذا إلى التأكد من العثور على صفحات الويب التى هى الأكثر إثارة للاهتمام بالنسبة لك على سبيل المثال، إذا كنت تريد التعرف على القطارات عالية السرعة، فاكتب "القطارات عالية السرعة للأطفال". ستندهش من روعة نتائجك !

When the search engine shows you your results, you will probably see some ads[6] too. They are sometimes the first links at the top. They can also be on the right. These are not the links you're looking for, so ignore them. You might also see the word 'sponsor[7]'. This means that it is also an ad.

عندما يعرض لك محرك البحث نتائجك، من المحتمل أن ترى بعض الإعلانات أيضًا. هم فى بعض الأحيان الروابط الأولى فى الأعلى. يمكن أن يكونوا أيضًا على اليمين. هذه ليست الروابط التى تبحث عنها، لذا تجاهلها. قد ترى أيضًا كلمة "الراعى". هذا يعنى أنه إعلان أيضًا.

Make sure to read the options in the search box. For example, when you type in 'agriculture', the search box will show you a list of options[8] such as 'agriculture meaning, agriculture jobs, and agriculture Egypt'. Choose the option that you need, and not just the first one you see.

تأكد من قراءة الخيارات فى مربع البحث. على سبيل المثال، عندما تكتب "الزراعة"، سيظهر لك مربع البحث قائمة بالخيارات مثل "معنى الزراعة، وظائف الزراعة، والزراعة مصر. اختر الخيار الذى تريده، وليس الخيار الأول الذى تراه فقط.

Check Vocabulary
كلمات محددة (9)

Finally, use specific words[9] for your searches. If you want to find out about how people use the desert for agriculture in Egypt, type in 'agriculture Egypt desert'. To make you search even more specific, you can use quotation marks around the words. The search engine will understand that you want very specific results.

أخيرًا، استخدم كلمات محددة فى عمليات البحث الخاصة بك. إذا كنت تريد معرفة كيفية استخدام الناس للصحراء فى مصر للزراعة، فاكتب "زراعة صحراء مصر". لجعل البحث أكثر تحديدًا، يمكنك استخدام علامات الاقتباس حول الكلمات. سيتفهم محرك البحث أنك تريد نتائج محددة للغاية.

Read and choose the correct answer :

Learn 1. You should use the .... search option in your browser.
a. child b. school c. safe d. danger

Practice 2. To get the best search results, use .... words.
a. specific b. short c. long d. tall



Notes for parents

General Exercises on Lesson 3

نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب

• Understand • Apply • Create

1 Listen and complete.

1. Robotic engineers are the people who .... autonomous machines.
2. Robotic engineers test the ....
3. We will use robots to build new ....
4. Robots will be used in .... and manufacturing.

2 Read and complete the dialogue with word from the box.

ads - specific - options - safe search

Ali : I'm doing some research for my science project about renewable energy and wind farms. And I can't find what I'm looking for. Can you help me ?

Mrs Dina : Yes, of course. First, are you using the (1) .... option ?

Ali : Yes, I always use that.

Mrs Dina : Well, use (2) .... words in your search.

Ali : OK... Yes, that's much better. That has brought up lots of different webpages.

Mrs Dina : Look at the first three options in the list. These are (3) .... So don't click on those. Choose the best option for you.

Ali : Thanks, Mrs Dina.

Mrs Dina : You're welcome.

1. Ask your child to listen and complete the sentences. - اطلب من طفلك أن يستمع ويكمل الجملة
2. Ask your child to read and complete the dialogue with the correct word from the box. - اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويكمل المحادثة بالكلمة الصحيحة من الصندوق

3 Read the following text and answer the questions below.

- User Experience Designers create a positive experience between the user and the technology. They make sure that your websites, apps and smart machines are safe and easy to use.
- VR developers create a new visual world you see when you play a virtual reality game and wear a special headset. Museums will use these VR headsets so that you can experience walking around an ancient building or city.

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. You probably see things as they were in the past when you wear ....

   a. robotic engineer b. UX Designer
   c. VR headset d. high-speed train

2. Designers make sure that our apps are safe and easy to ....

   a. create b. start c. walk d. use

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Which places will start using VR headsets ?

   ....

4. Who makes sure apps and smart machines safe and easy to use ?

   ....

4 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. the best - the search box - option - Choose - in.

   ....

2. the - podcast - to - Welcome .

   ....

Notes for parents

3. Ask your child to read the text and answer the questions. اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ النص ويجيب عن الأسئلة
4. Ask your child to order the words and write the sentences correctly. اطلب من طفلك أن يرتب الكلمات ويكتب الجمل بطريقة صحيحة

Lesson 4

• CLIL : ICT
• Passwords and Passphrases



Vocabulary

Listen and repeat. استمع وردد.

Key vocabulary

password	كلمة مرور	passcode	شفرة المرور
passphrase	عبارة المرور	address	عنوان

Extra vocabulary

personal	شخصي	safer	أكثر أمان
information	معلومات	stronger	أقوى
birthday	عيد ميلاد	capital letters	حروف كبيرة
obvious	ملحوظ	favorite	المفضل
series	تسلسل	beautiful	جميل
character = symbol	رمز	pet	حيوان اليف
account	حساب	regular	معتاد - عادي - منتظم
space	مسافة	password code	شفرة لكلمة المرور

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular

Present		Past
add	يضيف	added
use	يستخدم	used
create	ينشئ	created
remember	يتذكر	remembered

Irregular

Present		Past
think	يفكر	thought
tell	يخبر	told
choose	يختار	chosen
make	يصنع	made

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

create strong password ينشئ كلمة مرور قوية	first of all قبل كل شئ
you like best أكثر ما تحبه	mean something for you لديها معنى بالنسبة لك

* Help your child listen to the words and repeat them. - ساعد طفلك أن يستمع إلى الكلمات ويرددهم

Pop Quiz | تدرب على ٩٩ من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع

Look, listen and read. انظر، استمع واقرأ.

How to Create Strong Passwords and Passphrases ?

كيف ننشئ كلمات مرور وعبارات مرور قوية ؟

Check Vocabulary

- شخصي (1)
- ملحوظ (2)
- تسلسل (3)
- رموز (4)
- حسابات (5)

First of all ... أولًا وقبل أي شيء ...

* Don't use personal[1] information like names, birthdays, phone numbers, or addresses.

- لا تستخدم المعلومات الشخصية مثل الأسماء، أعياد الميلاد، أرقام الهواتف أو العناوين.

* Don't use easy or obvious[2] words, like Password or computer, or series[3] of numbers, like 1234.

- لا تستخدم كلمات سهلة أو واضحة مثل كلمة المرور، أو كمبيوتر أو سلسلة من الأرقام، مثل ١، ٢، ٣، ٤ ...

* Don't use less than 10 characters[4].

- لا تستخدم أقل من ١٠ رموز.

* Don't use the same password for different accounts[5]. And don't tell your friends your passwords.

- لا تستخدم نفس كلمة المرور لحسابات مختلفة. ولا تخبر أصدقائك بكلمات المرور الخاصة بك.

Create a passphrase إنشاء عبارة مرور

(Passphrases are much safer than regular passwords.)

(تعد عبارات المرور أكثر أمانًا من كلمات المرور العادية.)

1. Choose four different words that you can remember : mouseferryamazingfootball

١. اختر اربع كلمات مختلفه يمكن أن تتذكرها.

2. Add spaces to make it stronger : mouse ferry amazing football

٢. ضع مسافات لجعلها أقوى.

3. Use some capital letters : mouse FERRY amazing football

٣. استخدم بعض الحروف الكبيرة.

Notes for parents

• Help your child look, listen and read the text.

• ساعد طفلك أن ينظر، يستمع ويقرأ النص

Create a personal password code إنشاء رمز لكلمة المرور الشخصية

1. Think of your favorite color : green ١. فكر في لونك المفضل :
2. Add a number : green 87 ٢. أضف رقم :
3. Add your favorite school subject : green 87 science ٣. أضف المادة الدراسية المفضلة لك :
4. Add a symbol : green 87 $ science ٤. اضف رمز :

Create a password sentence إنشاء جملة مرور

1. Think of a sentence that means something for you : My beautiful pet cat is named Bes
   ١. فكر في جملة تعني شئ ما بالنسبة لك.
2. Use the first letter of each word : MbpcinB
   ٢. استخدم الحرف الأول من كل كلمة.
3. Add numbers and characters you can remember : MbpcinB*49&
   ٣. اضف أرقام وحروف يمكنك تذكرها.

Read and Choose the correct answer :

Learn

1. Hat INSECT engine is ....
   a. a passphrase b. a personal password code
   c. a password sentence

Practice

2. IliahiC88& is ....
   a. a passphrase b. a personal password code
   c. a password sentence
3. Tennis99@english is ....
   a. a passphrase b. a personal password code
   c. a password sentence

• Help your child know how to create a strong passwords to stay safe online.
• ساعد طفلك أن يعرف كيف ينشيء كلمات مرور قوية ليبقى آمنًا على الإنترنت

General Exercises



نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

• Understand • Apply • Create

• 1 Listen and complete.

1. Don't use .... information like names.
2. Don't use easy or .... words.
3. Don't use less than 10 ....
4. Don't .... your friends your passwords.

• 2 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. passwords – some – letters – Use – capital – for.

....

2. you – remember – numbers – Add – can.

....

• 3 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements.

How to create strong passwords

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

Guiding words :

- personal information
- characters
- friends
- serious numbers
- different account
- addresses



....

....

....

....



Notes for parents

1. Ask your child to listen and complete the sentences.
2. Ask your child to order the words and write the sentences correctly.
3. Ask your child to write text of (50) words using the given guiding words.

اطلب من طفلك أن يستمع ويكمل الجمل

اطلب من طفلك أن يرتب الكلمات ويكتب الجمل بطريقة صحيحة

اطلب من طفلك أن يكتب نص مكون من حوالي (٥٠) كلمة مستخدمًا الكلمات الإرشادية

Lessons 5&6

• Reading • Writing • Project




Vocabulary

Listen and repeat. استمع وردد.

Key vocabulary

ship's captain	قبطان السفينة	container ship	سفينة حاويات
Suez Canal	قناة السويس	containers	حاويات

Extra vocabulary

machinery	مجموعة آلات	items	عناصر / أشياء
facts	حقائق	available	متاح
land	الأرض / اليابسة	business	عمل تجاري / مؤسسة
entrepreneur	مُبادر/رائد أعمال	form	شكل
economic	اقتصادي	product	منتج
freight train	قطار شحن	environmentally-friendly	صديق البيئة
classmate	زميل دراسي		

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular

Present		Past
wave	يلوح	waved
harm	يؤذي	harmed
wait	ينتظر	waited
depend	يعتمد	depended
answer	يجيب	answered
laugh	يضحك	laughed
transport	ينتقل	transported

Irregular

Present		Past
come	يأتي	came
say	يقول	said
go	يذهب	went
has / have	يمتلك	had

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

going along ..	على إمتداد ..	travel across	ينتقل عبر
a relaxing job	وظيفة مريحة	came back onto	عاد إلى
for a long time	لمدة طويلة	come from	يأتي من
travel past	يمر بـ	depend on	يعتمد على

• Help your child listen to the words and repeat them.

- ساعد طفلك أن يستمع إلى الكلمات ويرددها.



Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

• **Look and write the words.** انظر واكتب الكلمات.

1. 
....

2. 
....

3. 
....

 **Listen and read.**

Pop Quiz تدرب على ٩٩ من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع

A fun job !

Check Vocabulary
- قناة السويس (1)
- قبطان السفينة (2)
- سفينة حاويات (3)
- يلوح بيدة (4)

Heba looked out of the window of her family's house at the ships going along the Suez Canal(1). They were so big.

'It must be so fun to be a ship's captain(2) !' thought Heba. 'The ship moves so slowly. I think it's a relaxing job'.

Heba loved watching the ships. She often watched them with her friends. She liked to think about where the ships came from.



One day, Heba's father said, "My friend, Amr, works on a container ship(3). He will travel past our house today. Let's go and wave(4) at him".

Heba and her family went to the side of the Suez Canal and waited for Amr's ship. It was huge and had hundreds of containers on it.



Notes for parents
- Ask your child to look at the pictures and write the words.
- Help your child listen and read the story.

- اطلب من طفلك أن ينظر الي الصور ويكتب الكلمات.
- ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ القصة.

الوظيفة الممتعة !
نظرت هبة خارج نافذة منزل عائلتها على السفن الذاهبة على إمتداد قناة السويس. كانت السفن كبيرة جدًا «بالتأكيد سيكون الأمر ممتعًا أن تكون قبطان سفينته !» فكرت هبة «إن السفينة تتحرك ببطيء» أعتقد أنها وظيفة مريحة". أحبت هبة مشاهدة السفن هى شاهدتهم غالبًا مع أصدقائها. هى أحبت أن تفكر عن من أين تأتي السفن. في يوم ما، قال والد هبه "صديقي عمرو يعمل على سفينة حاويات. هو سيمر بجانب منزلنا اليوم. لنذهب ونلوّح له". ذهبت هبه وعائلتها إلى جانب قناة السويس وانتظروا سفينة عمرو. لقد كانت ضخمة وبها المئات من الحاويات عليها.

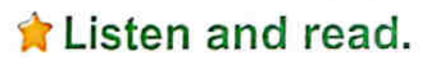
"Where is the ship going ? 'asked Heba. 'You can ask Amr next week, answered her father. He will come and visit[5] us then." When Amr came to visit Heba, she had a long list of questions to ask him. He laughed and agreed to answer them all. 'I was on the ship when it went through the canal,' he said. "Then I came back onto the land[6], and the ship went to France. It came from China. There were lots of toys and clothes[7] in the containers".
'Is it fun on the ship ?' asked Heba.
'It's very hard work !' answered Amr. 'The captain has to drive the huge[8] ship for a long time. The ship has to be straight. Sometimes it is very difficult when it is windy[9].
Would you like to come and visit a ship one day ?
'Oh, yes please ! answered Heba.

Check Vocabulary
(5) يزور
(6) يابسة
(7) ملابس
(8) ضخم
(9) عاصف

Answer the following questions :

Learn 1. Where does Heba live ?
- She lives next to the Suez Canal.

Practice 2. What are in the containers on Amr's ship ?
....



Listen and read.

Pop Quiz | تدرب على ٩٩ من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع

The Young Entrepreneurs

An entrepreneur is someone who starts a new business. In this project, you are going to work with a group of classmates and start your own business. First, you need to decide what goods you will sell, or what services you will offer. Then, you have to decide where you will sell your goods or offer your services. Finally, you will make a poster to help explain your business plan.

• Help your child listen and read the text.

- ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ النص

سألت هبة «إلى أين تذهب السفينة ؟» «يمكنك أن تسألي عمرو الأسبوع القادم»، أجاب الأب" هو سيأتي ويزورنا حينها" عندما جاء عمرو للزيارة كان لهبة قائمة طويلة من الأسئلة لكي تسأله ضحك ووافق أن يجيبهم كلهم «لقد كنت على السفينة عندما ذهبت عبر القناة.» هو قال «ثم عُدت إلى اليابسة وذهبت السفينة إلى فرنسا لقد جائت من الصين كان يوجد الكثير من ألعاب الأطفال والملابس في الحاويات» «هل المكان ممتع على السفينة ؟» سألت هبة «إنه عمل شاق جدًا !» أجاب عمرو «على القبطان أن يقود السفينة الضخمة لمدة طويلة يجب أن تسير السفينة بشكل مستقيم» أحيانًا يكون الأمر صعبًا جدًا عندما يكون الجو عاصف أتودين أن تأتي وتزوري سفينة في يوم من الأيام ؟" «أوه نعم من فضلك !» أجابت هبة

رواد الأعمال الشباب

رائد الأعمال هو الشخص الذي يبدأ عمل جديد في هذا المشروع ستعمل مع مجموعة من زملاء الدراسة وتبدأ عملك الخاص أولاً عليك أن تقرر السلع التي سوف تبيعها أو الخدمات التي ستقدمها بعد ذلك، عليك أن تقرر المكان الذي ستبيع فيه سلعك أو تقدم خدماتك أخيرًا ستقوم بعمل ملصق للمساعدة في شرح خطة العمل



How to write a paragraph كيفية كتابة فقرة إنشائية

1. Brainstorm some ideas. قم بعصف ذهنى لبعض الأفكار.
2. Do research to find out facts about the topic. قم بعمل بحث لتكتشف حقائق عن الموضوع.
3. Put your ideas in order. ضع أفكارك منظمة / مرتبة.
4. Write an introduction sentence. اكتب جملة مقدمة.
5. Write the main information of the paragraph. اكتب المعلومات الرئيسية عن الفقرة الإنشائية.
6. Write a conclusion sentence. اكتب جملة ختامية.

Read and learn. اقرأ وتعلم.

1. Write an introduction sentence to start your paragraph.
   اكتب جملة بدائية لتبدأ فقرتك الإنشائية.
2. End your paragraph with a conclusion sentence.
   إنهِ فقرتك الإنشائية بالجملة الاستنتاجية.

Notes for parents

- Help your child know how to write a paragraph.

- ساعد طفلك أن يعرف كيف يكتب فقرة إنشائية.

General Exercises on Lessons 5 & 6

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

• Understand • Apply • Create

1 Listen and complete.

1. Heba loved watching the ....
2. She often .... them with her friends.
3. She went with her father to the side of the Suez ....
4. The ships are ....

2 Read the following text and answer the questions below.

There are many ways of transporting goods and products over long or short distances.

First, we can transport goods long distances by water. Ships move slowly but they can carry large items such as automobiles and machinery.

Second, we can transport goods long distances by air. Airplanes are faster than ships so air travel is good for transporting fresh food.

Next, rail, road and pipelines are also used for transportation. Freight trains can travel across the country and trucks can travel from city to city. Pipelines are used for carrying natural resources such as oil, natural gas and water.

Finally, different forms of transportation are used for transporting different goods. The transportation we use depends on the product, the time available and the distance.

A. Choose the correct answer.

1. Trucks can travel from .... to city.
   a. city b. village c. town d. country
2. .... are used for carrying natural resources.
   a. Ships b. Airplanes c. Pipelines d. Trains

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Are airplanes better for transporting than ships ? Why ?

....

4. Give two ways of transporting goods.

....

1. Ask your child to listen and complete the sentences.
2. Ask your child to read the text and answer the questions.

- اطلب من طفلك أن يستمع ويكمل الجمل
- اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ النص ويجيب عن الأسئلة

3 Read and complete the text from the words in the box.

windy - captain - ship - sunny

Working on a ship is a very hard work. The (1) .... has to drive the huge ship for a long time. The (2) .... has to be straight. Sometimes it is very difficult when it is (3) ....

4 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. the ship - going - Where - is ?

....

2. the window - looked out - of - She.

....

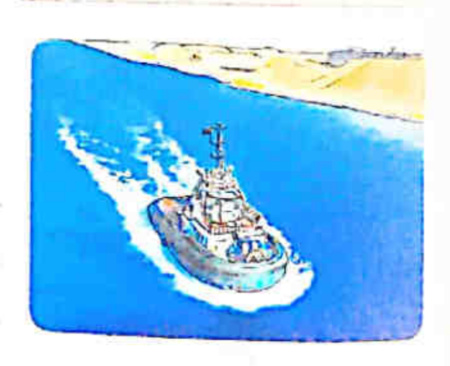
5 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements.

Suez Canal

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

Guiding words :

- ships
- jobs
- container
- captain
- hard
- straight



....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Notes for parents

3. Ask your child to read and complete the text with the correct word from the box.
- اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويكمل النص بالكلمة الصحيحة من الصندوق أعلاه.
4. Ask your child to order the words and write the sentences correctly.
- اطلب من طفلك أن يرتب الكلمات ويكتب الجمل بشكل صحيح
5. Ask your child to write a paragraph of (50) words using the given guiding words.
- اطلب من طفلك أن يكتب نص مكون من حوالى (٥٠) كلمة مستخدمًا الكلمات الإرشادية.

Test your skills Unit 6



If you got ● you need to revise the unit again on the next page.



قم بتقييم نفسك بالعلامات الموضحة وإذا حصلت على ● غير جيد قم بمراجعة الوحدة مرة أخرى من الصفحة التالية

My Dictation

1 Read and write the meaning.
اقرأ واكتب المعنى.

A.
river ferry ....
robot ....
government ....
flight ....
pipeline ....

B.
.... محرك البحث
.... نشرة صوتية
.... عبارة المرور
.... حاوية
.... قضيب سكة حديد

My Language

2 Read and correct the underlined words. اقرأ وصحح الكلمات التى تحتها خط.

1. Will you goes to the party on Sunday ?
....
2. It will snows tomorrow.
....
3. Have you wins the race ?
....
4. Yes, I haven't.
....
5. Has you ever read this book ?
....
6. Have you finish yet ?
....

My Reading

3 Read the rules and circle the correct words.
اقرأ القواعد وضع دائرة حول الكلمات الصحيحة.

When making a password

1. (Use / Don't use) names, birthdays, phone numbers or addresses.
2. (Use / Don't use) more than 8 characters.
3. (Use / Don't use) easy words or numbers like password or 1234.
4. (Tell / Don't tell) your friends your passwords.
5. (Use / Don't use) different passwords for different accounts.

My Writing

4 Punctuate the following sentence.
ضع علامات الترقيم للجملة الآتية.

i like singing but i don't like drawing

....

 قم بتقييم نفسك بالعلامات الموضحة.

Review on unit 6



How to create strong passwords :

1. Don't use personal information.
2. Don't use easy or obvious words.
3. Don't use less than 10 characters.
4. Don't use the same password for different accounts.
5. Don't tell your friends your password.

Let's work

Vocabulary | Values: Safety | Language | Writing

(Future Simple Tense)

- People will travel to Mars in 2025.
- My parents won't buy a self-driving car next year.
- Will they take a train to Aswan ?

(Present Perfect Tense)

- Have you ever been on a bus ?
- Yes, I have.
- No, I haven't

(,) joins two ideas in a sentence

(.) at the end of a sentence

(?) at the end of a question

(') for contraction of a word

(!) to show strong feelings or emotions

Notes for parents

- Help your child review unit 6

ساعد طفلك في مراجعة الوحدة السادسة



هذا الجزء يمكنك من ربط الكلمات التى درستها بجمل
ليساعدك على التمكن من مهارة القراءة والكتابة

1. Reading & writing skills :

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
Tech jobs of the future	UX designer	UX designers are interested in the experience that you have with technology.
	safe – useful	They make sure that it is safe, friendly, and useful for all users.
	VR developer	VR developers create the experience you have when using VR.
	museums	Museums will use VR.
	universities	Universities will teach future doctors and nurses with VR.
	robotics engineers	Robotics engineers are the people who design autonomous machines (robots).
	dangerous	We will use robots to do jobs that are too dangerous or difficult for humans.
	farms	People will use robots on farms, in factories and in schools.
Search safely	option - browser	Use the safe search option in your browser.
	kids - add	You can add the words for kids to your search.
	sponsor	The word sponsor means that it is an ad.
	read - sure	Make sure to read the option in the search box.
	specific words	Use specific words for your searches.
Passwords and passphrases	personal	Don't use personal information.
	easy - obvious	Don't use easy or obvious words.
	characters	Don't use less than 10 characters.
	same password	Don't use the same password for different accounts.
	friends	Don't tell your friends your passwords.
	passphrase	Passphrases are much safer than regular passwords.

2. How to make a sentence:

٢. تعلم كيف تكون وترتب جملة.



الجمل الخبرية

1. will – future – in the – solar energy – Airplanes – use.
2. so – That – fast – train – is.

	فاعل	فعل	. باقى الجملة
1			
2			



الجمل الأمرية

1. color – your – favorite - of – Think.
2. easy – obvious – Don't – or – use – words.

	Don't	مصدر الفعل	. باقى الجملة
1			
2			

٣ الجمل الأستفهامية

(أ) السؤال بـ (كلمة استفهام .. ؟)

1. passwords – do – use – When – you ?
2. you – did – Where – go ?

	كلمة الاستفهام	فعل مساعد	فاعل	فعل أساسى	? باقى الجملة
1					
2					

(ب) السؤال بـ (هل .. ؟)

1. travel – you – Will – to the – one day – Moon ?
2. traveled – on a ship – Have – you – ever ?

	فعل مساعد	فاعل	فعل أساسى	? باقى الجملة
1				
2				



١- عناصر تساعدك على تنظيم أفكارك للتعامل مع مهارة الكتابة متبوعة بنموذج.

Let's work

Internet

We all use the internet and it is so important.

The internet helps us study.

Safety

It is very important to stay safe online.

You should

You should use the safe search option in your browser.

You should create strong passwords.

You should not

You should not tell your friends your passwords.

You shouldn't talk to strangers.

Share

Share useful things and ideas.

Do not share

Do not share your personal information.

Read and learn. اقرأ وتعلم.

We all use the internet and it is so important. The internet helps us study. It is very important to stay safe online. You should use the safe search option in your browser. You should create strong passwords. You should not tell your friends your passwords. Share useful things and ideas. Do not share your personal information. Don't talk to strangers.

٢- تعتبر مهارة الكتابة من المهارات الأساسية للتعبير عن فكرة أو موضوع لذا يجب استخدام جمل وأفكار مترابطة. قم بقراءة هذه الجمل لتساعدك على التعامل مع مهارة الكتابة (٢٤ جملة).



1 Transporting goods and products

There are many ways of transporting goods and products over long or short distances.(1) First, we can transport goods long distances by water.(2) Ships move slowly, but they can carry large items such as automobiles and machinery.(3) Second, we can transport goods long distances by air.(4) Airplanes are faster than ships so air travel is good for transporting fresh food.(5) Rail, road and pipelines are also used for transportation.(6)



2 How to look up information online

Use specific words in your search.(7) Put quotation marks around the words to make it more specific.(8) The search engine will understand that you want very specific results.(9) Add the words "for kids" to your search.(10) There are special search engines for children.(11) This will bring up web pages that are suitable for you.(12)



3 How to create a personal password code

Creating a personal password code is important.(13) Think of your favorite color : green.(14) Add a number, green87.(15) Add your favorite school subject : green87 science.(16) Add a symbol : green87 $ science.(17) Now write the full code.(18)

4 Robotics engineers

Robotics engineers are the people who design autonomous machines - that's just another word for robots.(19) They also test the robots that they design to make sure that they are good at what they do.(20) We will use these robots to do jobs that are too dangerous or difficult for humans to do.(21) For example, we will use robots to build new automobiles or even high-speed trains.(22) They will probably be used in agriculture and manufacturing, too.(23) Most families will have a personal robot at home.(24)

Test 11 on Unit 6

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

• Understand • Apply • Create

A. Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Hend looked out of the ....
   a. car   b. bus   c. window   d. taxi
2. Hend was in her ....
   a. grandpa's house   b. family's house
   c. uncle's house   d. aunt's house
3. The ships were so ....
   a. small   b. big   c. wide   d. bad
4. Hend often watched the ships with her ....
   a. parents   b. friends   c. mom   d. dad

2 Listen and complete.

1. You shouldn't use .... information when you create passwords.
2. Don't use the same passwords for different ....
3. Don't use less than 10 ....
4. Don't use easy or .... words.

B. Reading

3 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box.

taxi - comfortable - went - traveled

Zeinab : Hi, Malek. How are you ?
Malek : I'm fine ! Thanks.
Zeinab : Have you ever (1) .... on a train ?
Malek : Yes, I have.
Zeinab : Where did you go ?
Malek : I (2) .... to Aswan.
Zeinab : How was the train like ?
Malek : It was fast and (3) ....

1. Ask your child to listen and circle the correct answer. - اطلب من طفلك أن يستمع ويضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة
2. Ask your child to listen and complete the sentences. - اطلب من طفلك أن يستمع ويكمل الجمل
3. Ask your child to read and complete the dialogue with the correct word from the box. - اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويكمل المحادثة بالكلمة الصحيحة من الصندوق أعلاه

4 Read the following text and answer the questions below.

Have you ever had an idea for a new video game ? Video games are not just for fun. They are big business. Creating one isn't simple. It can take years. It takes plenty of people, too! Some people work on programming the game. They build the game in a computer program. Others are artists. They draw the pictures for the game. But they don't use paper and pencil. They use a computer program. And there are people who work on the sounds you hear. It takes lots of teamwork!

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. The passage is about ....
   a. computer program b. teamwork
   c. programming d. video games
2. Some people build the .... in a computer program.
   a. game b. room c. box d. container

B. Answer the following questions :

3. How long does it take to create a game ?
   ....
4. What do the artists use to draw the pictures for a game ?
   ....

5 The reader

A Read and write T (True) or F (False).

	T	F
1. No one came to watch Grandpa and the girls.		
2. Zeinab's friends are clever.		

B Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. A lot of people went to .... about Khayameya.
   a. see b. learn c. make d. teach
2. Khayameya .... is traveling all summer.
   a. club b. school c. park d. group

Notes for parents

4. Ask your child to read the text and answer the given questions. اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ النص ويجيب عن الاسئلة المعطاه
5. Ask your child to read and answer the questions according to the events of the story. اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويجيب عن الأسئلة طبقًا لأحداث القصة

C. Writing

6 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Dad .... to England next week.
   a. travel
   b. travels
   c. will travel
   d. are traveling
2. It rains outside. I .... go to the club.
   a. am b. 'll c. won't d. have
3. What will you .... tomorrow ?
   a. do b. does c. did d. has
4. .... people use flying cars in the future ?
   a. Have b. Will c. Does d. Are

7 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. one day - the Moon - to - travel - Will - you ?

....

2. study - 'll - I - languages.

....

8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements.

Tech jobs of the future

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

Guiding elements :

- create
- autonomous machines
- apps
- developers

....
....
....
....
....
....

6. Ask your child to choose the correct answer. - اطلب من طفلك أن يختار الإجابة الصحيحة
7. Ask your child to order the words and write the sentences correctly. - اطلب من طفلك أن يرتب الكلمات ويكتب الجمل بطريقة صحيحة
8. Ask your child to write a text of (50) words using the given guiding words - اطلب من طفلك أن يكتب نص مكون من حوالى (٥٠) كلمة مستخدمًا الكلمات الارشادية

Test 12 on Unit 6

Collected From Governorates Exams

اختبار مجمع من مختلف المحافظات

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

• Understand • Apply • Create

A. Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. We can ………………… goods by water over long distances.
   a. help b. transport c. plan d. fill
2. Ships move ………………… .
   a. hard b. fast c. slowly d. high
3. ………………… can carry heavy items.
   a. Airplanes b. Bikes c. Planes d. Ships
4. Airplanes are ………………… than ships.
   a. slower b. heavier c. faster d. cheaper

(Suez - North Suez 2022 / Cairo - Helwan 2022)

2 Listen and complete.

1. My uncle ………………… in Algiers.
2. Algiers is the ………………… of Algeria.
3. Algiers is ………………… from Cairo.
4. They will go to Algiers by ………………… .

(Minia - El Idwa 2022 / Sharkia - Diyarb Negm 2022)

B. Reading

3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

transportation - travel - lands - goods

We're studying the Ancient Egyptians at school. We found out that people didn't (1) ………………… over land very much in Egypt then. Almost everyone used the river for (2) ………………… . They moved their (3) ………………… in different kinds of boats and ships. People also traveled up and down the river.

(Beheira - Rosetta 2022 / Gharbia - Kafr El Zayat 2022)

Notes for parents

1. Ask your child to listen and circle the correct answer. اطلب من طفلك أن يستمع ويضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة
2. Ask your child to listen and complete the sentences. اطلب من طفلك أن يستمع ويكمل الجمل
3. Ask your child to read and complete the text with the correct word from the box. اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويكمل النص بالكلمة الصحيحة من الصندوق أعلاه

4 Read the following text and answer the questions below.

VR is short for Virtual Reality. Do you like playing video games ? Have you ever tried playing a virtual reality game ? To do this, you have to wear a special VR headset that you wear on your head. It covers your eyes like glasses. VR developers have to create the new world you see when you put on these headsets. They also create the experience you have when using VR. But there are more uses for VR than just exciting games. Museums will use them. And universities will teach future doctors and nurses with them too.

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. VR headset covers your ....
   a. back b. face c. eyes d. body
2. .... will use VR headset in the future.
   a. Animals b. Parks c. Museums d. Forests

B. Answer the following questions :

3. What do you need to play a Virtual Reality game ?
   ....
4. What is VR ?
   ....

(Qalyubia - Khanka 2022 / Giza - Ossim 2022)

5 The reader

A Read and write T (True) or F (False). T F

1. Grandpa makes the patterns with five layers of cotton. ☐ ☐
2. Rasha likes learning new things. ☐ ☐

(Cairo - Ain shams 2022 / Sohag Tema 2022)

B Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The picture of flowers is made of thousands of small ....
   a. patterns b. cotton c. stitches d. colors
2. .... flower is Grandpa's best sewing.
   a. Daisy b. Colored c. Lotus d. Sun

(Alexandria - Montazah 2022 / Fayoum - East Fayoum 2022)

4. Ask your child to read the text and answer the given questions. - اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ النص ويجيب عن الاسئلة المعطاه
5. Ask your child to read and answer the questions according to the events of the story. - اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويجيب عن الأسئلة طبقًا لأحداث القصة

C. Writing

6 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. I think it will .... tomorrow. (Giza - Haram 2022)
   a. snows b. snow c. snowing d. to snow
2. .... you finished your project yet ? (Beheira - Edko 2022)
   a. Have b. Did c. Do d. Were
3. She .... go to school on a bus tomorrow. (Minia - El Idwa 2022)
   a. hasn't b. won't c. isn't d. don't
4. A : How will you .... to England next month ? B: By plane.
   a. traveling b. travels c. travel d. traveled
   (Sharqia - Bilbeis 2022)

7 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. is - new - the - It - train - electric. (Giza - Omrania 2022)

   ....

2. will - she - How - pass - exam - the ?

   ....

   (Ismailia - El-Qantara El-sharqiya 2022)

8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements.

"Search online safely"

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

Guiding elements :

- browser
- specific
- option
- sponsor

....
....
....
....
....
....

(Gharbia - Tanta 2022 / Sharkia - El Ibrahimiya 2022)

Notes for parents

6. Ask your child to choose the correct answer.
7. Ask your child to order the words and write the sentences correctly.
8. Ask your child to write a text of (50) words using the given guiding words.

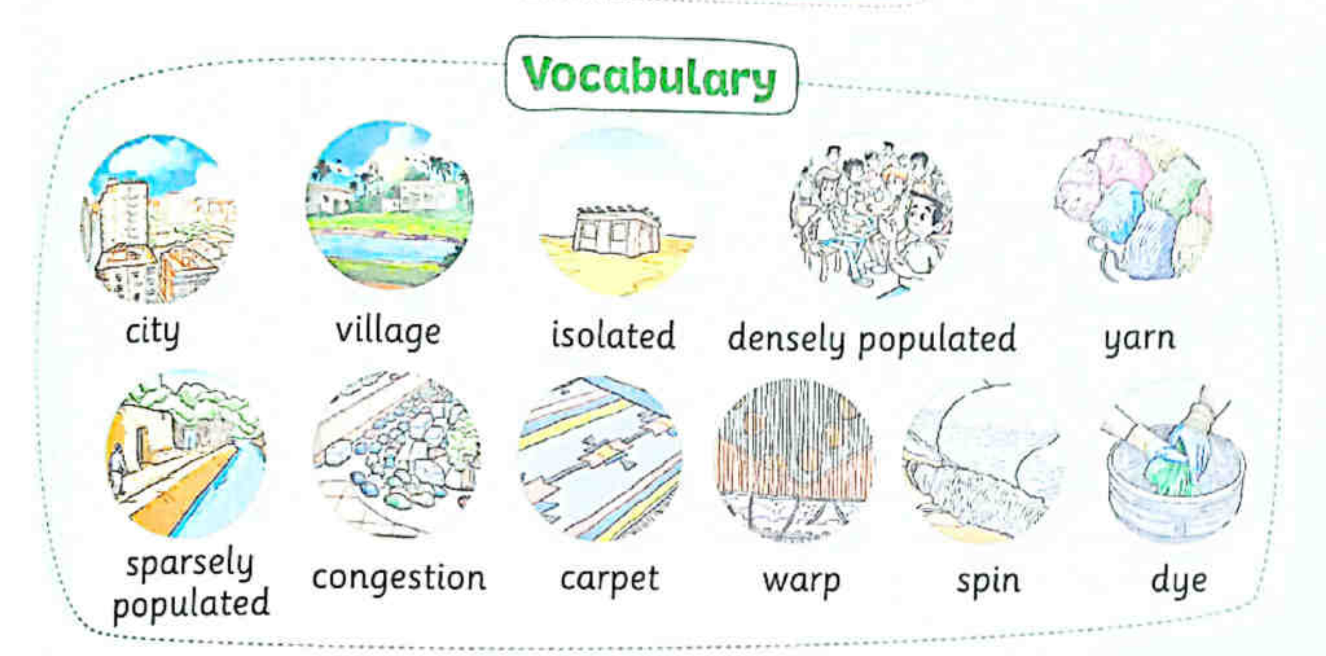
اطلب من طفلك أن يختار الإجابة الصحيحة.
اطلب من طفلك أن يرتب الكلمات ويكتب الجمل بطريقة صحيحة.
اطلب من طفلك أن يكتب نص مكون من حوالى (٥٠) كلمة مستخدمًا الكلمات الارشادية.

Review 2

General Revision on Units 4, 5 & 6

Review on Unit 4

Vocabulary



Math

• Multiplying numbers •

Multiplication tells us how many times we need to add a number to get the total.

Ex : $5 \times 3 = 15$

• Dividing numbers •

Divide means to separate some things in an equal group.

Ex : $6 \div 3 = 2$

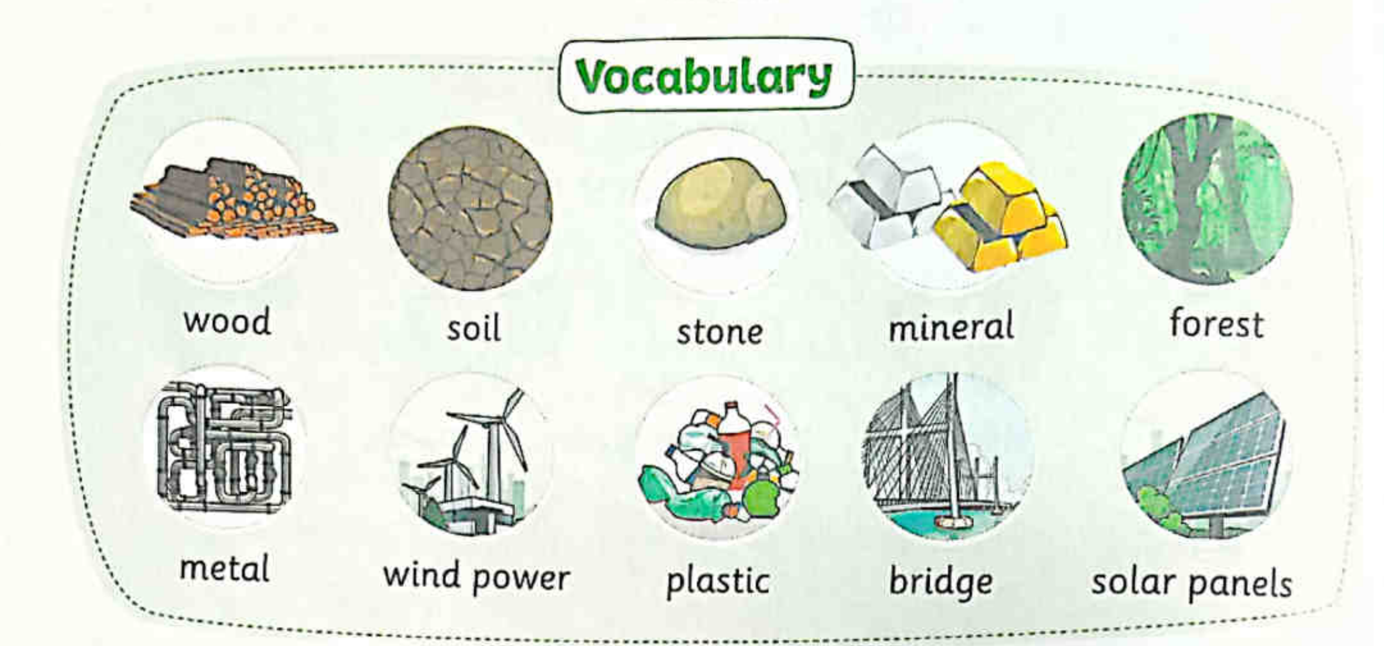
Language

The Conjunctions

- I do my homework **so that** I am ready for the exam.
- We keep quiet **while** the teacher is talking.
- I say thank you **after** someone helps me.
- They have to clean, wash and dry the wool **before** they use it.

Review on Unit 5

Vocabulary



Social studies

Renewable and non-renewable resources

Renewable resources

- meat - wood
- potatoes - soil
- stone - water

Non-renewable resources

- minerals
- petroleum
- plastic

Language

The Present Simple Tense

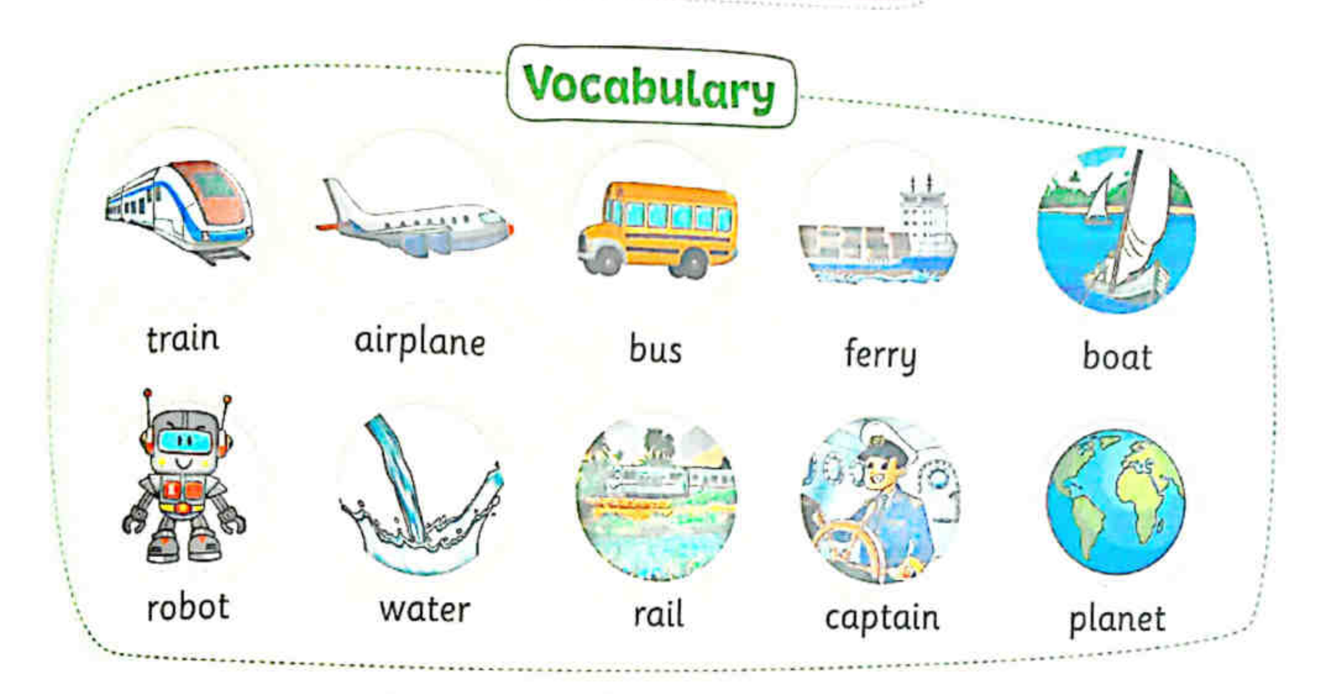
- Mariam phones her grandma every weekend.
- Tamer studies languages twice a week.

Pronouns

- Mona presented her project.
- My father ate his salad for dinner.

Review on Unit 6

Vocabulary



Punctuation marks

The question mark

- Are you OK ?

The exclamation point

- I'm very hungry !

Apostrophe

- She'll travel on a ship.

Language

The Present Perfect Tense

• Have you ever traveled on a train ?

- Yes, I have.
- No, I haven't.

Future Simple Tense

- People will travel to Mars in 2052.
- Will airplanes use solar energy in the future ?

Khayameya Summer

صيف الخيامية



BY MOIRA DUTTON

Picture Dictionary


artisan حرفى


geometric pattern نمط هندسى


layer طبقة


lotus flower زهرة اللوتس


sew يخيط


stitch غرزة


Tent Maker صانع الخيام


street شارع


measure يقيس


amazing مدهش


engineer مهندس



teacher معلم


artist رسام/فنان


art رسم


math رياضيات


Khayameya خياميه

Read and identify.

artisan : Some artisans make tables and chairs from wood. - حرفى

geometric pattern : We can sometimes see it of colorful tiles - نمط هندسى

lotus flowers : grow on rivers and lakes - زهرة اللوتس

sew : to make your own clothes - يخيط

stitch : to fix buttons - غرزة

• Help your child identify the picture dictionary.

- ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على القاموس المصور.



Story map خريطة القصة

The characters
الشخصيات


Zeinab


Grandma


Mom


Grandpa


Doha


Engy



Rasha


Lobna



The main idea الفكرة الرئيسية للقصة

- It's interesting to learn something new. من المثير للاهتمام تعلم شيء جديد.
- The artisans are engineers, artists and good at math.
الحرفيون مهندسون وفنانون جيدون في الرياضيات.

Main characters
الشخصيات الرئيسية


Zeinab


Grandpa

Notes for parents

- Help your child learn about the characters and the main idea.

- ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم عن الشخصيات والفكرة الرئيسية.



Story plot حبكة القصة



- Zeinab was bored on the summer holiday.
- Zeinab wanted to visit her grandpa.
- Zeinab and her grandfather visited the shop.



- Grandfather likes sewing lotus flowers and geometric patterns.
- Grandfather can teach Zeinab to sew Khayameya.
- Zeinab has an idea to call her friends to learn with her.



- Grandfather showed the girls how to sew Khayameya.
- Other people joined the grandfather and the girls.
- Khayameya school is traveling all summer.

• Help your child identify story plot.

- ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على حبكة القصة

Let's visit grandpa ! هيا نزور الجد !



- Zeinab was bored. It was the second week of the summer holiday.
  Zeinab said, "Let's go to visit Grandpa !"
  Her mother said, "Yes, he's sad at the moment. I think you can help him".

- كانت زينب تشعر بالملل. إنه الأسبوع الثانى فى إجازة الصيف - قالت : زينب "هيا نذهب لزيارة جدى !"
  قالت والدتها : "نعم، إنه حزين الآن. اعتقد أنك تستطيعين مساعدته".

summer holiday	إجازة الصيف	bored	ممل	visit	يزور
at the moment	فى الوقت الراهن	sad	حزين		

Zeinab reached the train station! وصلت زينب إلى محطة القطار !

• Zeinab got off the train. There was her grandfather and grandmother !
Her grandparents were very pleased to see her.



• نزلت زينب من القطار. كان يوجد الجد والجدة ! كانوا اجدادها مسرورون لرؤيتها.

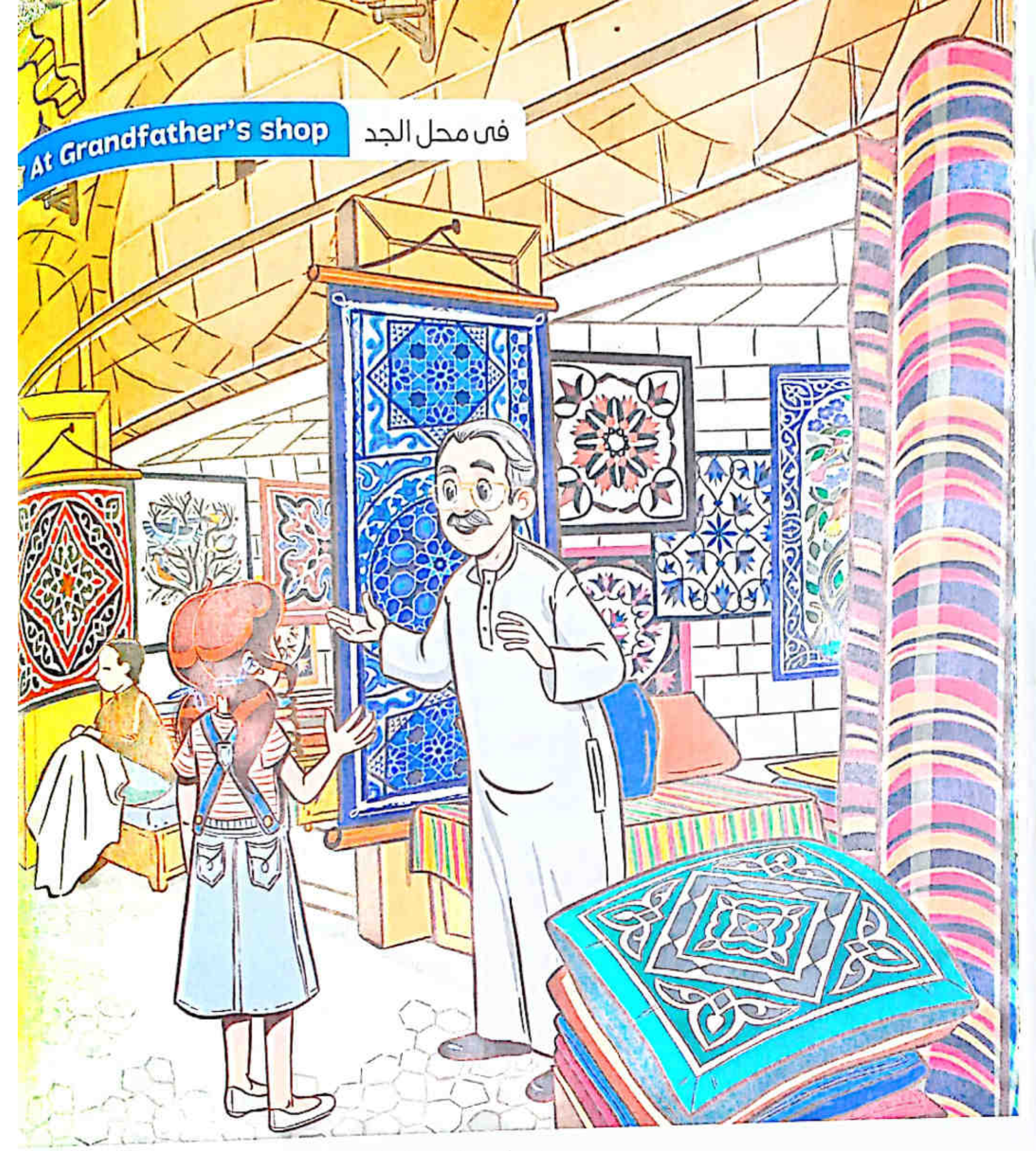
get off	ينزل من وسيلة مواصلات	pleased	مسرور	train	قطار



- After tea, Grandpa said 'My eyes are not very good now. It's difficult to work. I can't see to sew. I think I will have to stop making things.'
  Grandpa was one of the Tent Makers. He was one of the best artisans in Khayameya Street.
  Zeinab said 'Oh no ! You can't stop ! You make such beautiful things !'.

- بعد تناول الشاى، قال الجد : "عيناى لم تعد بحالة جيدة الآن. من الصعب أن أعمل. لا أستطيع أن أرى لكى أقوم بالخياطة. اعتقد اننى مضطر للتوقف عن صنع الأشياء" كان الجد واحد من صناع الخيام. فهو واحد من أفضل الحرفيين فى شارع الخيامية. قالت زينب "اوه لا" ! لا يمكنك أن تتوقف ! إنك تقوم بعمل الأشياء الجميلة !".

Tent Makers صناع الخيام	artisan حرفى	difficult صعب	sew يخيط	stop يتوقف
Khayameya Street شارع الخيامية		beautiful جميل	tea شاى	eyes عيون



- Zeinab and her grandfather visited the shop.
  Zeinab said, 'Oh look ! I love this big picture with all the flowers !' Did you make it, Grandpa ?
  'Yes, it took me nearly four months. It's made of thousands and thousands of small stitches. I measured and cut all the pieces by hand,' said Grandpa.
  'All by hand ? That's amazing !'

- زارت زينب وجدها المحل. قالت زينب، "اوه انظر ! إننى أحب هذه اللوحة الكبيرة التى بها كل هذه الزهور !" "هل قمت أنت بصنعها يا جدى ؟"
  قال الجد : "نعم، لقد أخذت منى تقريبًا أربعة أشهر. لقد صنعت من الآلاف والآلاف من الغرز الصغيرة. لقد قمت بقياس وقص كل القطع باليد" كلها باليد ؟ هذا مدهش !"

shop	محل	picture	لوحة/صورة	flowers	زهور	hand	يد
stitches	غرز	pieces	قطع	amazing			مدهش

2 The Middle منتصف القصة

Zeinab wanted to learn sewing. أرادت زينب تعلم الخياطة.



- 'What's your favorite design Grandpa ?' asked Zeinab. 'I like sewing lotus flowers and geometric patterns best, and I also like sewing birds. I used my best stitching on the patterns, but my eyes are not good now. It is sad for me.' 'I wish I could sew and help you,' said Zeinab. Her grandfather smiled. 'I can teach you. Do you want to learn ?'
  'Oh, yes please !' said Zeinab.

- "ما التصميم المفضل لك يا جدى ؟ " سألت زينب. "أنا أحب خياطة زهور اللوتس والأشكال الهندسية أكثر. واحب ايضًا خياطة الطيور. لقد استخدمت أفضل خياطتى للأنماط ولكن عيناى ليست بخير الآن. الأمر محزن بالنسبة لى." قالت زينب : " ليتنى استطيع الخياطة ومساعدتك. ابتسم جدها. أنا استطيع أن أعلمك. هل تحبى أن تتعلمين ؟ "اوه، نعم من فضلك ! قالت زينب.

favorite مفضل	design تصميم	learn يتعلم	teach يُعلم	smiled ابتسم
geometric هندسى	pattern نمط	birds طيور	lotus flowers زهور اللوتس	



• Zeinab asked, 'How did you learn to sew, Grandpa ?'
'My father taught me. When I was a child, I wanted to be an engineer or a teacher, but I changed my mind. My father taught me to sew. My grandfather taught my father before that ! I became a Khayameya artisan, and I love my job,' answered Grandpa.
Zeinab said, 'You design and measure the patterns. You choose the colors. I think you are an engineer, an artist, and good at math ! And now you are my teacher, too.

• سألت زينب، "كيف تعلمت الخياطة يا جدى ؟"
أجاب الجد قائلًا "قام ابى بتعليمى، فعندما كنت طفلًا، أردت أن أكون مهندسًا أو معلمًا، لكننى غيرت رأيى. علمنى أبى الخياطة وقام جدى بتعليم أبى قبل ذلك ! فأصبحت حرفيًا فى الخيامية، وأحب وظيفتى." قالت زينب : "وانت تصمم وتقيس الأنماط. انت تختار الألوان. أعتقد أنك مهندس، وفنان وجيد فى الرياضيات. والآن انت معلمى، ايضًا."

engineer مهندس	love يحب	job وظيفة	choose يختار	measure يقيس
teacher مدرس	artist فنان	math رياضيات	changed my mind غيرت قرارى	

Zeinab has an idea. زينب لديها فكرة.



- Zeinab said, 'Grandfather, I have an idea. My friends are very clever. I think they want to learn about Khayameya, too. Rasha is great at math and working out problems. Lobna invents things all the time and has good ideas. Doha makes amazing art and Engy can help you show us all how to sew. She makes beautiful things. Let's call them !'

- قالت زينب : "يا جدى لدى فكرة. أصدقائى ماهرون جدًا. اعتقد أنهم يريدون أن يتعلموا عن الخيامية، أيضًا. رشا رائعة فى الرياضيات وتقوم بحل المشكلات. لبنى تخترع أشياء طوال الوقت، ولديها أفكار جيدة. ضحى تصنع فن مدهش وانچى يمكنها أن تساعدك لتبين لنا كيف تقوم بالخياطة. إنها تصنع أشياء جميلة. هيا نتصل بهم !"

clever	ذكى / ماهر	work out	يحل	show	يوضح	great	رائع	invent	يخترع
call	يتصل تليفونيًا	idea	فكرة	too	أيضًا	art	رسم / فن	problems	مشكلات

3 The End نهاية القصة

Zeinab's friends arrived لقد وصلوا أصدقاء زينب



Zeinab's friends arrived. 'We're here ! Let's learn something new'. Grandfather said, 'Welcome girls. Thank you for coming ! We make the patterns with three layers of cotton and put them together like this...'

• لقد وصلوا أصدقاء زينب. "نحن هنا ! هيا نتعلم شىء جديد".
قال الجد : "مرحبًا يا فتيات. شكرًا لكم على المجيء ! نحن نصنع الأنماط من ثلاثة طبقات من القطن ونضعهم معًا هكذا...."

arrived وَصَل	new جديد	welcome مرحبًا	layers طبقات	together معًا



- Grandfather said, 'Zeinab you have such clever friends ! What a good idea !' Rasha answered, 'We like learning new things, and we have a great teacher !'

- قال الجد : "يا زينب أنتِ لديكِ أصدقاء أذكياء ! يا لها من فكرة جيدة !" أجابت رشا ، "نحن نحب تعلم الأشياء الجديدة ولدينا معلم رائع !"

new things	أشياء جديدة	great	عظيم / رائع



- Other people came to watch. They said, 'That looks fun. Can we try ?'. Zeinab's grandfather said, 'Welcome ! Come and join us !'

- جاء أشخاص آخرين ليشاهدوا. إنهم قالوا : "هذا يبدو ممتع. هل يمكننا أن نجرب ؟. قال جد زينب : "مرحبًا ! تعالوا وانضموا الينا!"

watch يشاهد	people أشخاص	looks fun يبدو ممتعًا	join us! انضم إلينا!



- Grandpa said, 'Zeinab, look at all these people ! They all want to learn about Khayameya ! I'm so happy !'

- قال الجد : "انظرى يا زينب إلى كل هؤلاء الأشخاص ! جميعهم يريدون أن يتعلموا عن الخيامية ! أنا سعيد جدًا !"

The Khayameya School ! مدرسة الخيامية!



- Zeinab said, ‘Lots more people want to learn too. People in many places all around Egypt want you to teach them. Khayameya School is traveling all summer ! Next, we are going to Ismailia, then Tanta and Marsa Matrouh ! What a wonderful summer holiday ! Thank you, Grandpa !’
Grandpa laughed, ‘No, thank you Zeinab !’

- قالت زينب، الكثير من الناس يريدون أن يتعلموا أيضًا. الناس فى أماكن متعددة حول مصر يريدونك لتدرس لهم. مدرسة الخيامية تسافر طوال الصيف ! ثم، سنذهب للإسماعيلية، ثم طنطا ومرسى مطروح ! يا لها من إجازة صيف رائعة ! شكرًا لك يا جدى! ضحك الجد، " لا، شكرًا لك يا زينب!"

more أكثر	places أماكن	around حول	wonderful رائع	laughed ضحك

Learn



Read and identify. اقرأ وتعرف.

1. 

This woman is learning how to sew.

2. 

He's making a stitch with a needle and some cotton.

3. 

These tiles make a pretty geometric pattern.

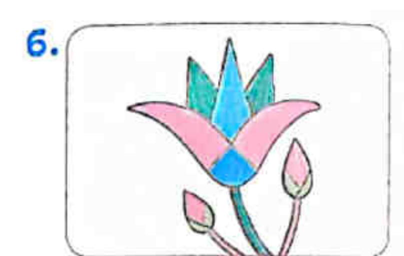


4. 

This cake has three layers of cake and cream.

5. 

Youssef is a skilled artisan.

6. 

What color are these beautiful lotus flowers ?

2 Look, read and learn. انظر، اقرأ وتعلم.



1. The pattern on this shirt is made of very small stitches.
2. There are lots of beautiful geometric patterns inside the mosque.
3. My parents bought a portrait from an artisan in the market.
4. Can you see the pink lotus flowers on the river ?
5. There's a layer of jam in the middle of this cake.
6. Grandma likes to sew flowers on her granddaughter's dresses.

Notes for parents

1. Help your child read the sentences and identify.
2. Help your child look at the pictures, read the sentences and learn.

- ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ الجمل ويتعرف.
- ساعد طفلك أن ينظر إلى الصور، يقرأ الجمل ويتعرف.

General Exercises on Story

1 Read and write T (True) or F (False).

	T	F
1. Lots of people wanted to learn at Khayameya School.	◯	◯
2. Zeinab's friends aren't clever to learn about Khayameya.	◯	◯
3. Grandpa's father taught him how to sew.	◯	◯
4. Zeinab doesn't like to learn sewing.	◯	◯
5. Grandpa's eyes aren't good now.	◯	◯
6. Zeinab asked her mom to visit her friends.	◯	◯
7. Mom thinks that Zeinab can help her grandpa.	◯	◯
8. Grandpa can see well to sew now.	◯	◯
9. Grandpa was one of the teachers in Khayameya Street.	◯	◯
10. Grandpa was one of the best artisans in sewing.	◯	◯
11. Zeinab asked her Grandpa to stop sewing Khayameya.	◯	◯
12. Zeinab visited her Grandpa's shop.	◯	◯
13. Zeinab loved the picture of flower best at the shop.	◯	◯
14. Grandpa can't teach Zeinab.	◯	◯
15. Grandpa wanted to be a doctor when he was young.	◯	◯
16. Grandpa designs and measures the patterns.	◯	◯
17. Grandpa doesn't like his job.	◯	◯
18. Grandpa likes sewing lotus flowers and geometric patterns best.	◯	◯
19. Zeinab's friend, Rasha, is good at math.	◯	◯
20. Grandpa makes the patterns with five layers of cotton.	◯	◯
21. Zeinab had an idea that to call her friends so that they learn about sewing.	◯	◯

1. Ask your child to read the sentences and write (T) for the correct sentences and (F) for the wrong sentences.
- اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ الجمل ويكتب (T) للجمل الصحيحة و(F) للجمل الخاطئة.

22. Rasha likes learning new things. ◯ ◯

23. Grandpa welcomed people who wanted to learn. ◯ ◯

24. Grandpa was sad when he taught people at Khayameya School. ◯ ◯

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Grandpa .... and cut all the pieces by hand.
   a. visited b. measured c. put d. had
2. Zeinab wishes to .... and help her Grandpa.
   a. sew b. saw c. play d. read
3. Khayameya School is traveling all ....
   a. winter b. spring c. fall d. summer
4. Lots more people want to .... sewing Khayameya.
   a. learn b. write c. read d. travel
5. Zeinab had a good ....
   a. toy b. flower c. idea d. pattern
6. Grandpa makes patterns with three ....
   a. layers b. colors c. flowers d. birds
7. Grandpa likes sewing .... patterns.
   a. science b. geometric c. English d. art
8. Grandpa is sad because he can't .... well.
   a. hear b. taste c. touch d. see
9. Zeinab had .... friends.
   a. tall b. bad c. naughty d. clever
10. Zeinab loved a big .... on the wall of the shop.
    a. table b. picture c. street d. tree

Notes for parents

2. Ask your child to choose the correct answer.

• اطلب من طفلك أن يختار الإجابة الصحيحة.

11. Zeinab wanted to visit her ....

a. Grandpa b. friends c. teachers d. uncle

12. Zeinab was .... at the second week of the summer holiday.

a. happy b. excited c. bored d. angry

13. Zeinab's mom thinks that .... can help Grandpa.

a. Zeinab b. Rasha c. Grandma d. people

14. Zeinab and her mom went to her Grandparents by ....

a. car b. bus c. train d. plane

15. Grandpa is one of the best .... in Khayameya Street.

a. artisans b. workers c. helpers d. engineers

16. It's difficult for Grandpa to work because of his ....

a. hearing b. taste c. touch d. sight

17. The picture of flowers is made of thousands of small ....

a. patterns b. cotton c. stitches d. colors

18. Grandpa measures and cuts all the pieces by ....

a. scissors b. knife c. hand d. machines

19. Doha made .... art.

a. amazing b. boring c. bad d. wrong

20. .... flower is Grandpa's best sewing.

a. Daisy b. Colored c. Lotus d. Sun



21. Grandpa can .... Zeinab to learn sewing.

a. give b. punish c. help d. order

22. Grandpa's .... are not good to sew now.

a. hands b. ears c. legs d. eyes

23. Grandpa wanted to be an .... or a teacher when he was young.

a. engineer b. vet c. police officer d. actor



Listening Texts

نصوص الاستماع الخاصة بكتاب الشرح

Unit 1

Lesson 1

• Listen and circle the correct answer :

We use our digestive system when we eat and drink. We chew and swallow food, then it goes to our stomach. In the stomach, a special liquid changes the food into energy and nutrients that we need in our bodies.

• Listen and complete

Our skeleton is made up of all the bones in our body. These make us strong and protect our organs. Muscles are attached to our bones, and they lift and turn bones to make us move.

Lesson 2

• Listen and circle the correct answer :

We use our senses every day to help us understand the world around us. We use our eyes to see and our ears to hear. We smell with our nose, taste with our tongue, and we can feel with our skin. Our senses are working all the time and they take in a lot of information.

• Listen and complete

People who are deaf or have difficulty hearing well can learn sign language. This is a language where we use our hands, faces and bodies to communicate. Sign language is different in each country. People use sight instead of hearing to understand what people are saying.

Lesson 3

• Listen and circle the correct answer :

It's Saturday, so there's no school. Mom wants to tidy the lounge. My brother Adam wants to run and play in the park. I want to do something creative. I would like to draw or paint a picture.

Lesson 4

• Listen and circle the correct answer :

The Paralympic Games is an international competition for athletes with disabilities. Like the Olympics, it takes place every four years, and is held in a different country each time. Parasports is an important area in sports, and Egypt has many athletes who take part in these competitions .

Lessons 5 & 6

• Listen and circle the correct answer :

It's fun to play video games sometimes, but it's good to be active as well. Sitting still for a long time isn't good for your health. Sometimes people eat more unhealthy snacks when they are watching TV or playing on the computer. Try not to develop unhealthy habits.

Test 1 on Unit 1

• Listen and circle the correct answer :

Our skeleton is very important for all of us. It is made up of all the bones in our body. The bones make us strong. They protect our organs. Muscles are also very important. They are attached to our bones. They lift and turn our bones to make us move.

• Listen and complete :

We need fats for a healthy nervous system and these include nuts, oily fish, oil and butter. Carbohydrates like bread, rice, and pasta give us energy. Sugar

also gives us energy, but too much sugar isn't good for us. Sugar is in cakes, cookies, and candy, so try not to have too much of these. Eat a good diet with lots of different fresh food, and you'll be healthy.

Test 2 on Unit 1

• Listen and circle the correct answer :

Our body has many systems that work at the same time. Our digestive system works when we eat and drink. We chew and swallow food then it goes to the stomach. A special liquid changes the food into energy and nutrients that we need in our bodies. We use our respiratory system when we breathe. We breathe in air through our nose and it goes to our lungs.

• Listen and complete :

Some people cannot see or hear, so they have different ways to communicate. People who are deaf or have difficulty hearing can learn sign language. It is a complete language, like English, Arabic or Spanish, and there are different versions of it around the world. Sign language in Egypt is different from sign language in the USA.

Unit 2

Lesson 2

• Listen and circle the correct answer :

In 2012, scientists discovered a tiny chameleon in Madagascar. People think it is the smallest reptile in the world, at just 30 millimeters long! But even that is bigger than a frog in Papua New Guinea. It's 7mm long, so it is the smallest vertebrate that we have discovered.

Lesson 3

• Listen and circle the correct answer :

Invertebrates are cold-blooded. They live on land and in water. Some invertebrates, such as crabs, have a hard shell for protection. Others, like jellyfish, have soft bodies. Some invertebrates can swim very well, such as the octopus and the squid.

Lesson 4

• Listen and circle the correct answer :

Scientists think that there are nearly 400,000 different types of plants. Most of these have flowers, which come in many different colors. The bright flowers attract insects they carry pollen from one flower to another flower. This helps the flowers to reproduce.

• Listen and complete :

There are lots of interesting things to see under the sea! Some fish are very brightly colored, and so are some plants. In a coral reef, having bright colors can help fish to hide from predators. The coral is very bright and has different colors, so the fish can hide from bigger fish. In addition, many predators don't eat prey that are brightly colored. Bright colors can be a warning that the animal is poisonous.

Lessons 5 & 6

• Listen and circle the correct answer :

Most mammals live on land, but some mammals such as whales and dolphins live in the sea. However, bats are the only mammals that can fly. Bats live in groups in trees or caves. They sleep during the day and hunt for food at night. They can fly very fast at night because they can see using a special skill called echolocation.

- **Listen and complete :**

Zoos are places of scientific research. People can see and learn about wild animals in zoos. Zoos protect endangered animals. But I think animals are kept in the wrong habitats. Animals are separated from their family groups. Animals aren't free to live a natural life. Animals can become stressed and unhappy.

Test 3 on Unit 2

- **Listen and circle the correct answer :**

Reptiles are cold-blooded. This means that they have to spend time in the sun to keep warm. Most reptiles have four legs. They don't have hair or fur, they have scales. In addition, all reptiles lay eggs. Most reptiles live on land. Some can live in rivers or the sea, such as turtles, but they come onto land to lay their eggs.

- **Listen and complete :**

Mammals have hair or fur on their bodies. They are warm-blooded and they feed their babies with milk and most of them give birth to their babies. They don't lay eggs. Humans are mammals. Most mammals live on land, but some live in the sea, such as whales and seals. Bats are the only mammals that can fly.

Test 4 on Unit 2

- **Listen and circle the correct answer :**

Fish live in water and take in oxygen through their gills; they can't breathe air. They are cold-blooded and they lay eggs. They also have scales and they use fins to move. There are thousands of different types of fish in all water habitats - saltwater, freshwater and wetlands.

- **Listen and complete :**

In the natural world, there are some enormous animals, and some tiny ones! The biggest animal on land is a mammal. The biggest animal in the world is also a mammal, but it lives in the sea. It's the blue whale. The whale shark is the biggest fish in the world. It's smaller than the blue whale, at about 12 meters long.



Unit 3

Lesson 1

- **Listen and circle the correct answer :**

A community is a group of people who live and work together in the same area. A community is more than your house, family, or your neighborhood. My community includes my family, my friends, and my school. When you act in a way that is good for your community, this is good citizenship. This means that you work hard to help other people, and behave in a kind and fair way. I am always polite and helpful at school.

Lesson 2

- **Listen and circle the correct answer :**

How do we know so much about the history of Egypt ? Egyptians at that time used scribes to write down everything that happened. Scribes were very important people. They worked for the ruling dynasties. They wrote in hieroglyphs, which are pictures or symbols that can mean one word or many ideas. We can see these hieroglyphs today in tombs and museums. Children learnt to become a scribe at school. Scribes wrote on stone, or on paper made from papyrus reeds.

• Listen and complete :

Egypt is a country with a very long and interesting history. People started to live near the Nile about 9,000 years ago, in 7000 BCE. At first, there were two separate areas. Lower Egypt was in the north, where the Nile joins the sea. Upper Egypt was in the south, where the Nile flows through the deserts of Africa.

Lesson 3

• Listen and circle the correct answer :

I'm Nadia, and I live in Aswan Governorate. It is a beauitful city. It's the farthest south in Upper Egypt. Its capital is Aswan. In 1970, engineers finished the Aswan High Dam. It is a very important project.

• Listen and complete

New Valley Governorate is 440,098 km^2 in size. It is a very large area but New Valley doesn't have a big population. The population is about 245,000. The capital of New Valley Governorate is Kharga. Kharga is an oasis town in the south of this region.

Lessons 4 & 5

• Listen and choose the correct answer :

Music was important in ancient Egypt. We know this because scribes made pictures of musicians playing instruments, and Ancient Egyptians put instruments into pyramids.

• Listen and complete

There is a long history of traditional crafts in Egypt. Two of the most popular crafts are khayameya and carpet making. In the past, tent makers created khayameya to decorate huge tents for wedding and other family occasions. Khayameya patterns are beautifully designed using different colors. Today you can buy khayameya in many traditional stores and markets.

Test 5 on Unit 3

• Listen and circle the correct answer :

Carpet making is another Egyptian craft. A skilled person can work quickly, but it takes many years to learn how to make an Egyptian carpet. The patterns are bright and colorful and each carpet is made carefully, using Egyptian wool. Qashqai and Shirazi carpets are famous for their complicated patterns in red and blue.

• Listen and complete

I'm Omar. I live in Alexandria Governorate. It is in the north of Egypt. It is important because lots of ships sail in and out of the port. The city of Alexandria used to be the capital city of Egypt.

Test 6 on Unit 3

• Listen and circle the correct answer :

Folk musicians from Upper Egypt play Saidi music. This type of music uses string instruments such as violins. Farther south is the home of Nubian music. The most popular instruments in Bedouin music are the shabbaba and the rebaba.

• Listen and complete :

Braille is a code which uses combinations of dots to represent letters, number, punctuation marks or whole words. People who are blind or have difficulty seeing can use this to read. They use touch instead of sight.

Unit 

Lesson 1

• Listen and circle the correct answer :

Hi there. I'm Zein. I'm going to tell you about my village. It's sparsely populated - only about 700 people live here. It's also a very traditional place. It's in the desert so it's an isolated place, too. We have a lot of services close to my family's home though, like shops, workshops, and my school.

• Listen and complete :

My name's Fareeda and I want to tell you about where I live. I live in Greater Cairo. It's a metropolitan area and densely populated. There are more than 20 million inhabitants, so it's a very busy place. There are a lot of cars so there's also congestion. If you are a pedestrian, you have to be very careful.

Lesson 3

• Listen and complete :

Before the artisans can weave the carpets, they have to make the warp. The warp is the structure of the carpet. They make the warp using spun Egyptian cotton. Later, they use the warp and the dyed wool to make beautiful carpets. The artisans make the carpets by hand using a machine called a loom. They add the different colored yarn to make geometric patterns.

Lessons 5&6

• Listen and circle the correct answer :

Dina lives in Alexandria. It's a beautiful city on the Mediterranean Sea. As you might know, It's the second largest city in Egypt with a population of more than 5 million people. It has an important port and there is a lot of industry there, too.

• Listen and complete

Smart growth is a way to plan new areas of a city. Smart growth planners want to protect the environment and improve the lives of people living in them. Here are some of the ideas behind smart growth. People can walk to work or school. There's good public transportation and no cars. There are green spaces for people to enjoy.

Test 7 on Unit 4

• Listen and circle the correct answer :

My name's Dina. I'm eleven years old. I live with my family. We are a big family. There are seven people in my family. We live in Alexandria. It's a beautiful city on the Mediterranean Sea. We have a lot of services. My favorite place is Montaza Palace. I visit it with my family once a month.

• Listen and complete

I learn how the artisans make the carpets. First, they collect the wool from sheep. They have to clean, wash, and dry the wool before they can use it. Artisans spin the wool to make it into yarn. Then, they need to dye the yarn-that is how it gets its color. The artisans only use natural vegetable dyes, although some other workshops use synthetic dyes.

Test 8 on Unit 4

• Listen and circle the correct answer :

I'm Rahma. I live in a big city. It's an urban environment. Many people live in my city so it's densely populated. There are a lot of cars and buses so it is a very busy city. It takes a long time to go to school. It is not easy to travel around but I like my city.

- **Listen and complete**

There are many reasons to develop cities where they do. One of the main reasons is for food and transportation. A lot of cities are developed near bodies of water. These can be rivers, lakes or oceans. Water is very important for cities. For one thing, they have animals in them, like fish and birds, which give people food to eat.

Unit 5

Lesson 1

- **Listen and circle the correct answer :**

Natural resources are materials that we get from nature. People use these materials for different purposes. We use stone to construct buildings, bridges, and sometimes schools too. Forests, and the wood we get from them, are another important natural resource. There are many different types of metal, which are types of minerals. Gold and silver are two common ones and they are all natural resources.

Lesson 2

- **Listen and circle the correct answer :**

Gameela wakes up for school at 7 o'clock. First, she washes her face and brushes her teeth. Then, she eats her breakfast. She goes to school at 7:30. School finishes at 2 o'clock. She catches the bus to go home. Then, she does her homework. Sometimes, she helps her mom make dinner. Her brother Younis washes and dries the dishes with his father. Her family watches a movie after dinner. Before going to bed, she kisses her mom and dad and says goodnight.

- **Listen and complete :**

Fossil fuels are non-renewable resources. Crude oil is turned into petroleum. Fossil fuels were plants and animals that lived before the dinosaurs. There are serious problems with fossil fuels : global warming and climate change.

Lesson 3

- **Listen and circle the correct answer :**

Wave power is when energy is captured from waves. It can then generate electricity. Wind power uses wind turbines which turn the wind energy into electricity. Solar power uses light from the sun to generate electricity.

- **Listen and complete :**

Solar panels are expensive and we can't make solar power on a rainy day. Also, solar farms need a very big space. However, solar panels are easy to look after, and electricity from solar power is cheap.

Lesson 4

- **Listen and choose the correct answer :**

Mariam studied engineering at Cairo University. She worked at a wind farm in Kenya for 3 years. She worked at a turbine factory in Spain. She is very good at problem solving. She has good computer programming skills. She has always been a calm person.

Lessons 5 & 6

- **Listen and circle the correct answer :**

Amir works for a design company. It's a very busy office and he works hard. He is never late for work and he always finishes his part of a project. He has lots of ideas, but he isn't good at listening to his team members' ideas.

Amir finds it difficult to make friends and he often gets upset when things are difficult at work.

• Listen and complete :

Teamwork is very important for the success of a project. In a team you need members who are responsible so they take the work seriously. They need to collaborate while working with other members to get the best results. They need to be problem solvers instead of getting worried about problems. They need to have a positive attitude if there are difficult times while working. They need to communicate well with other team members.

Test 9 on Unit 5

• Listen and circle the correct answer :

Renewable resources can be replaced when they run out. So, potatoes are a renewable resource because we can grow more. Meat is also a renewable resource because farmers can raise more animals for you to eat. Wood is renewable, too. Then there are non-renewable resources. These are things like plastic, metals, and petroleum. Once we have used all of them up, we can't get any more here on Earth.

• Listen and complete :

Mr Ali takes Saleem and his class to the new solar farm. They meet the workers there. Some of the workers are putting solar panels in the desert. Some workers are driving trucks. Some workers are engineers. One of the engineers tells the class more about electricity. We have so much sunshine in the desert, so it is the perfect place for a solar farm.

Test 10 on Unit 5

• Listen and circle the correct answer :

Teamwork is very important for the success of a project. Share your ideas and feelings with the other team members. You should be open about how you're feeling about a project. Remember to be sensitive to how others might feel. You should be polite too. You should listen to other's ideas. If you find your role difficult, ask for help.

• Listen and complete :

We can't destroy energy. We can only change it from one kind of energy to another kind. This is called transfer of energy. When we use solar panels to collect sunlight, the solar energy is turned into electrical energy. When you use this electrical energy for a television it is now a mechanical energy.

Unit 6

Lesson 1

• Listen and circle the correct answer :

We're studying the Ancient Egyptians history at school. We found out that people didn't travel over land very much in Egypt then. Almost everyone used the river for transportation. They moved their goods in different kinds of boats and ships. People also traveled up and down the river. I'll show you a picture of Tutankhamun's royal ship tomorrow.

• Listen and complete

Have you ever been to Luxor to visit the famous ancient temples in the Valley of the Kings ? I always wanted to go because I love archaeology. So, my dad said we could drive there in our new van for our vacation. It took us a whole day,

but we stopped for lunch and dinner in different towns. It was really interesting!

Lesson 3

• Listen and complete :

Robotics engineers are the people who design autonomous machines - that's just another word for robots. They also test the robots that they design to make sure that they are good at what they do. We will use these robots to do jobs that are too dangerous or difficult for humans to do. For example,we will use robots to build new automobiles or even high-speed trains. They will probably be used in agriculture and manufacturing too.

Lesson 4

• Listen and complete :

To create strong passwords, don't use personal information like names, birthdays, phone numbers, or addresses. Don't use easy or obvious words, like password or computer, or series of numbers, like 1234.
Don't use less than 10 characters.
Don't use the same password for different accounts and don't tell your friends your passwords.

Lessons 5 & 6

• Listen and complete :

Heba loved watching the ships. She often watched them with her friends. She liked to think about where the ship came from. She went with her father to the side of the Suez Canal. The ships are huge. It was fun.

Test 11 on Unit 6

• Listen and circle the correct answer :

Hend looked out of the window of her family's house. She looked at the ships going along the Suez Canal. The ships were so big. The ships moved slowly. She wants to be a ship's captain. She thinks it's a relaxing job. Heba loved watching the ships. She often watched them with her friends. She liked to think about where the ships came from.

• Listen and complete :

To create strong passwords, you shouldn't use personal information like names, birthdays, phone numbers, or addresses. Don't use easy or obvious words, like password or computer, or series of numbers, like 1234. Don't use less than 10 characters. Don't use the same password for different accounts. You shouldn't tell your friends your password.

Test 12 on Unit 6

• Listen and circle the correct answer :

There are many ways of transporting goods and products over long or short distances. First, we can transport goods long distances by water. Ships move slowly but they can carry large items. Second, we can transport goods long distances by air. Airplanes are faster than ships so air travel is good for transporting fresh food.

• Listen and complete :

My uncle, aunt, and cousins all live in Algiers, the capital of Algeria. We want to visit them this year, but it's very far away from where we live in Cairo-about 3.000 kilometers. So, we'll take an airplane. It will be really fun ! I hope my parents let me sit by the window.



Answers of paragraphs

إجابات الفقرات الإنشائية الخاصة بكتاب الشرح

Unit 1

Lesson 2

Our different senses

We have five senses. We use them to do many things. We can use our eyes to see. We can hear with our ears. We can smell with our nose. We can feel with our skin. We use our tongue to taste. All our senses are very important.

Lesson 3

What I like to do at the weekend

At the weekend, I like to do many things. I'd like to go to the park. I can run and play there. I'd like to paint some pictures. I'd like to help mum tidy the room. I'd like to go to the club and practise football. Sometimes, I'd like to do creative things.

Lesson 4

A swimming champion

Aya Ayman Abbas is one of the best swimmers. She is a swimming champion who has won a lot of medals. She has won the Egypt Cup three times. She was the first female Egyptian Paralympic swimmer in Rio in 2016. She has won a lot of gold, silver and bronze medals in different competitions.

Lessons 5 & 6

How to be healthy

It is important to stay healthy. There are many tips for a healthy life. We should eat the right food. We should eat all kinds of food , with lots of vitamins and minerals. We should eat fruit and vegetables, too. We shouldn't eat too much sugar because it is unhealthy. We should do exercise and do any sport like football. It is important to sleep early and get up early.

Test 1 on Unit 1

The Paralympic Games

The Paralympic Games is an international competition. It is for athletes with disabilities. It takes place every four years like the Olympics. It is held in a different country each time. There are many Egyptian Paralympic athletes. They have taken part in different competitions. They have won many gold, silver and bronze medals.

Test 2 on Unit 1

Respiratory system

There are different systems in our body. The respiratory system is a very important system. It helps us to do many things. We use our respiratory system when we breathe. We use our nose to breathe in the air, and it goes to our lungs. In the lungs, the oxygen in the air is passed to the blood. Our heart pumps this blood around our body.

Unit 2



Lesson 2

Reptiles

Reptiles are cold - blooded. They have to spend some time in the sun to keep warm . Most reptiles have four legs. They don't have hair or fur. They have

scales. All reptiles lay eggs. Reptiles live in different places. Most of them live on land. Some reptiles live in rivers or sea such as turtles.

Lesson 2

Animals in the world

There are many different animals in the world. Some of them are big. Others are small. The biggest animal on land is the elephant. The biggest animal in the world lives in the sea. It is the blue whale. The biggest fish in the world is the whale shark. The smallest bird is the bee hummingbird. The biggest bird is the ostrich. Ants are small, but they are much stronger than humans.

Lesson 3

Insects and snails

Invertebrates are animals without a backbone. Some invertebrates have hard shells such as snails. Snails move very slowly. Insects are also invertebrates. They have six legs. Grasshoppers are the most amazing insects. They can jump very high. The spider is not an insect. It has eight legs. It is called an arachnid. Spiders can move very quickly.

Lesson 4

The color wheel

There are many different colors in the color wheel. There are some colors called primary colors. There are colors called secondary colors. Some people describe colors as warm colors and cold colors. The warm colors are linked to joy, strength, power, energy and passion. The cold colors are linked to rest, quietness, sweetness and sadness. We can mix some colors together to get another color.

Test 3 on Unit 2

Birds

Birds are warm - blooded, but they don't have fur. They don't have hair. All birds have feathers and they have wings, too. Most birds can fly well. They lay eggs. Their eggs are hard. Also, birds have beaks. These beaks are made of bones. The beaks are of different shapes because birds eat different food. Some birds eat meat, some eat nuts and others eat seeds.

Test 4 on Unit 2

Having a pet

It's fun to watch pets. It's good to learn about how to look after them. You can learn about their species. Some animals such as dogs need to walk which is good exercise. They need a lot of care and attention. It can be expensive to have a pet. Animals can be noisy. Some animals can cause a mess. Some animals bite.

Unit 3

Lesson 1

My community

My community is a group of people who live and work together in our area. I live with my family in an apartment. There are many special things about my community. There are different places, ideas and activities. In our community, we can do many good things. We help each other and do many acts of kindness. We are polite and helpful.

Lesson 2

Scribes

Scribes were very important in the history of Egypt. They were the people

who wrote down everything that happened in the past. They worked for the ruling families or who were called dynasties. They wrote in the ancient Egypt language, hieroglyphs. They drew pictures or symbols that meant one word. They wrote on stone or on paper called papyrus. Children learnt to become a scribe at school.

Lessons 4 & 5

Music in Upper Egypt

Egypt has many different styles of music. It has also lots of traditional folk music. Folk musicians from Upper Egypt play Saidi music. This type of music uses string instruments such as violins and the oboe. Singing and drumming are also famous there. In the farther south, there is the Nubian music. The Nubian music is now popular all over Egypt.

Test 5 on Unit 3

Folk dancing in Egypt

Folk dancing has a long history in Egypt. It is linked to the folk music of different areas. There are many forms of folk dancing. The most famous one is Nubian dancing. People move their arms and feet to the rhythm of the music. There is also Raqs Assaya. It is the most famous dance from the Saidi musical tradition. In other forms of dancing, people wear special costumes.

Test 6 on Unit 3

Ancient Egypt

Egypt is a country with a very long and interesting history. There were two separate areas, Lower Egypt and Upper Egypt. Lower Egypt was in the north. Upper Egypt was in the south. One pharaoh, Mena joined these two parts to unite the country of Egypt. Egypt controlled the Nile so boats could sail on it.

Unit 4

Lesson 2

My village life

I live in a nice village. It is by the Nile. It is sparsely populated. Only about 600 people live in my village. My father is a farmer. He grows crops. He also raises animals. There are many services. There are shops where we can buy our needs. There is also a club. We play football there. There is also a hospital with many clever doctors.

Test 7 on Unit 4

City you live in

I live in a big city. This city is called Alexandria. There are about 6 million people live in my city. It is densely populated. Although it is crowded and has many people, there are many services. There are clubs, gardens and beaches. People can enjoy all these services all the time. I enjoy going to the club to practice my favorite hobbies.

Test 8 on Unit 4

Carpet making

Carpet making is a traditional Egyptian craft. To make a carpet first, they collect the wool from sheep. The artisans spin the wool to make it into yarn after they clean it. Then they need to dye the yarn using vegetable dyes or synthetic dyes. The artisans make the carpets by hand using a machine called a loom.

Unit 5

Lesson 1

Natural resources

Natural resources are materials that we get from nature. We use them for many different purposes. There are two main forms of natural resources. Some resources are called renewable. Renewable resources can be naturally replaced when they run out. The sun, wind and falling water are examples of them. There are also non-renewable resources. They are things that we can't get any more once we have used them up.

Lesson 2

My day

My day starts at 7 o'clock when I get up. I wash my face and brush my teeth. I have my breakfast with my family at home. I take the bus to my school. When I finish my school day, I go home at 3 o'clock. I have my lunch. At 4 o'clock, I do my homework. In the evening, I watch TV or play computer games. I go to bed at 9 o'clock.

Lessons 5 & 6

How to be a good team member

There are many things you should do or have to be a good team member. Teamwork is very important for the success of any project. You should share ideas and feelings with other team members. You should be responsible and remember to complete your part of the project. If there is a problem or a difficult situation, stay calm and don't get upset. You should always be positive.

Test 9 on Unit 5

Advantages and disadvantages of solar energy

Solar energy has become very important for some countries. It is the energy that we get from the sun using solar panels. It has some advantages and some disadvantages. Its advantages can be that solar panels are easy to look after. Also, the electricity from it is cheap. On the other hand, the disadvantages are that solar farms need a very big space. Solar panels are expensive and we can't make solar power on rainy days.

Test 10 on Unit 5

To : samarali@yahoo.com

From : samasami@yahoo.com

Subject : renewable energy

Dear Samar

I am writing to you to tell you about renewable energy. Renewable energy is from resources that will not run out. We can make electricity from renewable resources like the wind and water. We can also use sunshine in the desert to make electricity. The solar panels collect energy from the sun. We can use it to make electricity for our home because it is cheap. You can search for more information.

Yours,

Sama



Unit 6

Lesson 1

Types of transportation

There are many forms of transportation. They include planes, trains, ships, buses, cars and bikes. People use planes to travel from place to place when it is far. They use plane to transport goods too. They also use ships, but planes are faster and more comfortable. Now, there are electric trains and metros. People use cars, buses and taxis to travel around their cities.

Lesson 4

How to create strong passwords

It is important to stay safe when we use the internet or go online. It is important to create a strong password. To do that there are many tips. Don't use your personal information like names, phone numbers or addresses. Don't use obvious words. You should use more than 10 characters. You shouldn't tell your friends your passwords. Don't use the same password for different accounts.

Lessons 5 & 6

The Suez Canal

The Suez Canal is very important. There are many ships go through it every day. It links the whole world. In the Suez Canal, the ships move slowly. The ships have to be straight. There are many ships that carry huge containers. The captains of these ships must be clever. The Suez Canal is also important for the Egyptian people because it gives many jobs to them.

Test 11 on Unit 6

"Tech jobs of the future"

One of the important tech jobs of the future is a UX Designer. User Experience Designers create a positive experience between the user and the technology that the one uses, like web pages, apps and machines like washing machines. Another important tech job is robotics engineers. They are the people who design autonomous machines. They also test the robots that they design.

Test 12 on Unit 6

"Search online safely"

Here are some important things to keep in mind to help you search safely. Use the safe search option in your browser. When the search engine shows you your results, you will probably see some ads. You might also see the word sponsor, this means that it is also an ad. Finally use specific words for your searches.



GUIDE

MASTER YOUR SKILLS

By a group of supervisors

Parents' Guide دليل ولى الأمر



تصريح وتحت إشراف

وزارة التربية والتعليم والتعليم الفنى

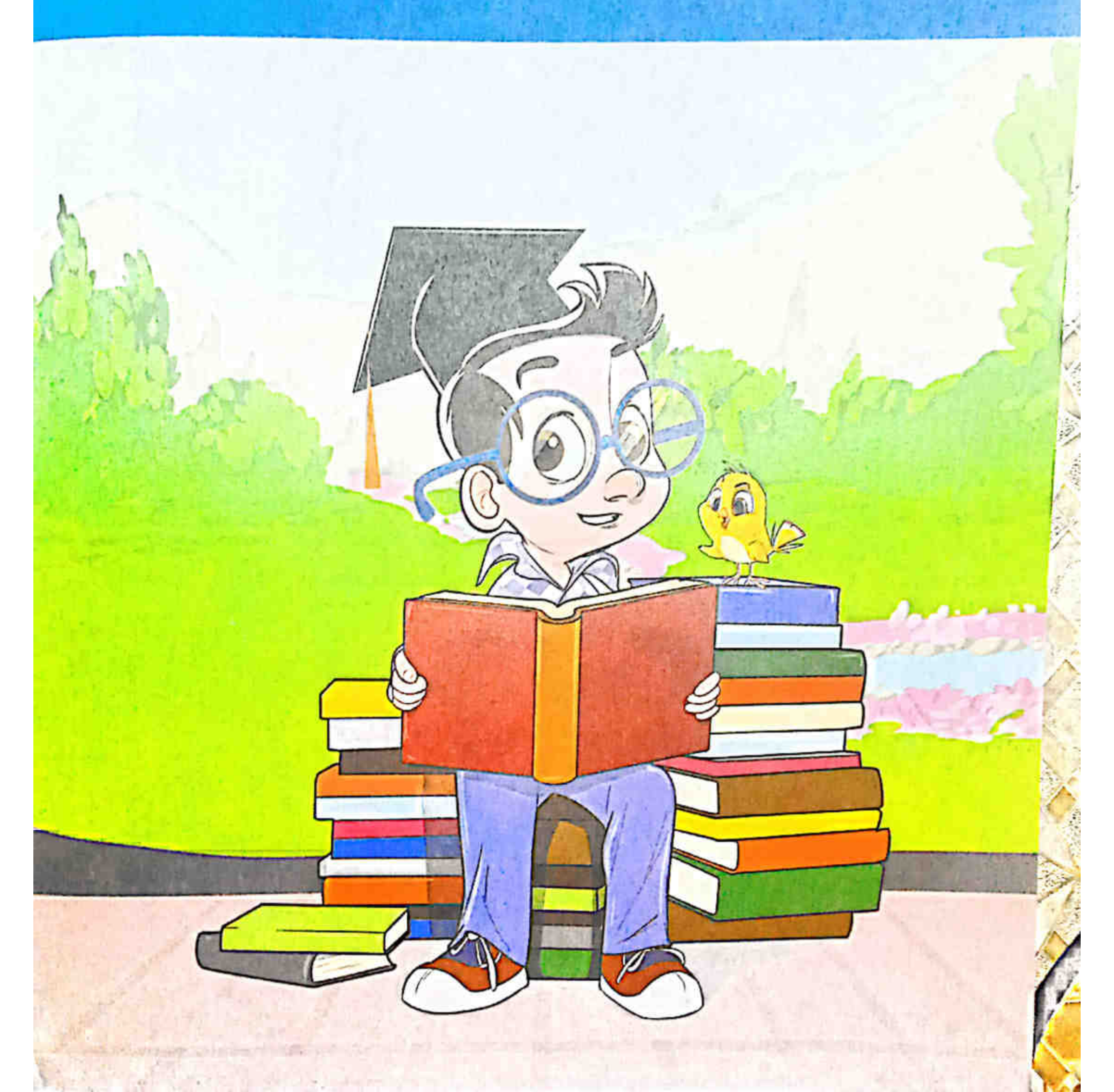
MINISTRY OF EDUCATION AND TECHNICAL EDUCATION

4th Primary
2023
FIRST TERM

الصف الرابع الابتدائى
للمدارس الرسمية و الخاصة لغات
الفصل الدراسى الأول

Part 1

Language



1 This is .... / These are ....

A This is singular noun .

هذا يكون اسم مفرد .

• تستخدم (This is) للإشارة للمفرد القريب.



B These are plural noun .

هؤلاء يكونوا اسم جمع .

• لاحظ أنه عند جمع الاسم المفرد نضيف (S) فى نهايته.

friend → friends   cousin → cousins





2 Possessive adjectives ٢. صفات الملكية





3 To express possession ٣. للتعبير عن الملكية



A have

للتعبير عن ملكيتي أو عدم ملكيتي لشيء ما :

Positive الإثبات

I	**have**	two legs.



Negative النفـي

I	**don't have**	a beak.





I **have** two arms.
أنا لدي ذراعين.



I **have** one head.
أنا لدي رأس واحدة.

B has

تستخدم للتعبير عن الملكية مع المفرد :

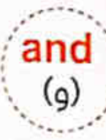
It (A camel)	has	two eyes.

A snake **has** no legs.
الثعبان ليس لديه أرجل.

A camel **has** four legs.
الجمل لديه أربعة أرجل.

4 Conjunction is a word that joins words and sentences.

٤. أداة الربط : هى كلمة تربط الكلمات والجمل معًا.

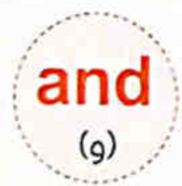








A To join ideas لربط أفكار متوافقة





نستخدم (and) إذا كانت الجملتان متوافقتين :



They had falafel and salad for breakfast.



B To say a result لذكر النتيجة

so (لذلك)

نستخدم (so) عند ذكر النتيجة لفعل شي ما :



He's hungry **so** he gets some food.

C To show contrast لتوضيح التناقض



but (لكن)

تستخدم (but) عند توضيح التناقض :



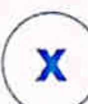
They wanted to paint pictures at the park, **but** it was raining.

5 The Present Simple Tense ٥. زمن المضارع البسيط

He , She , It , اسم مفرد  **the main verb + (s) ......**

- She gets up at 7 o'clock.

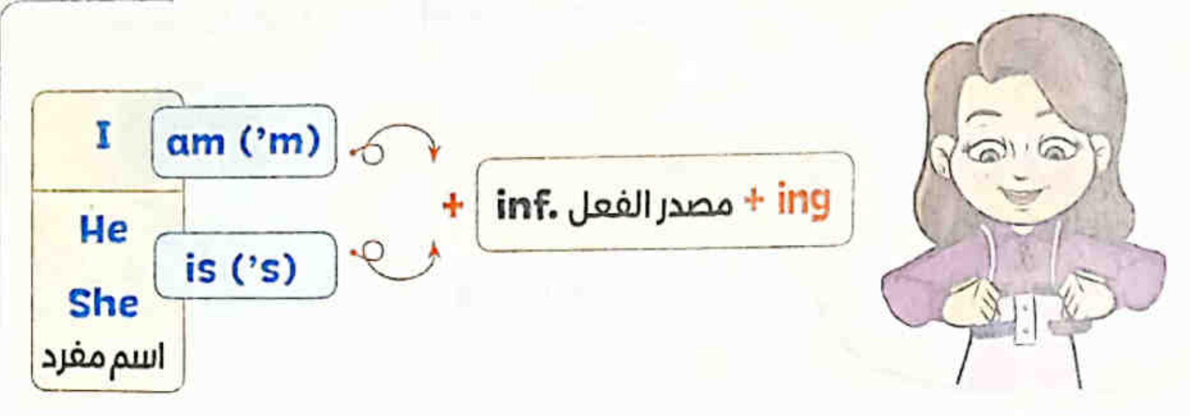
He , She , It , اسم مفرد + the main verb ending in

     **+ (es) .....**

sh ch ss x o

- He goes home at two thirty.

6 The Present Continuous Tense ٦. زمن المضارع المستمر



She is collecting magnets.



They are taking photos.

7 The Simple Past Tense ٧. زمن الماضي البسيط



A Regular Verbs الأفعال المنتظمة

In the simple past tense, we change regular verbs by adding -ed or -d.

فى زمن الماضى البسيط، نحول الفعل المنتظم بإضافة ed- أو d- .



I cooked dinner for my grandparents.

أنا طهيت العشاء لأجدادى.



B Irregular Verbs الأفعال غير المنتظمة

There are many irregular verbs.

هناك العديد من الأفعال الغير منتظمة، تُحفظ كما هي.

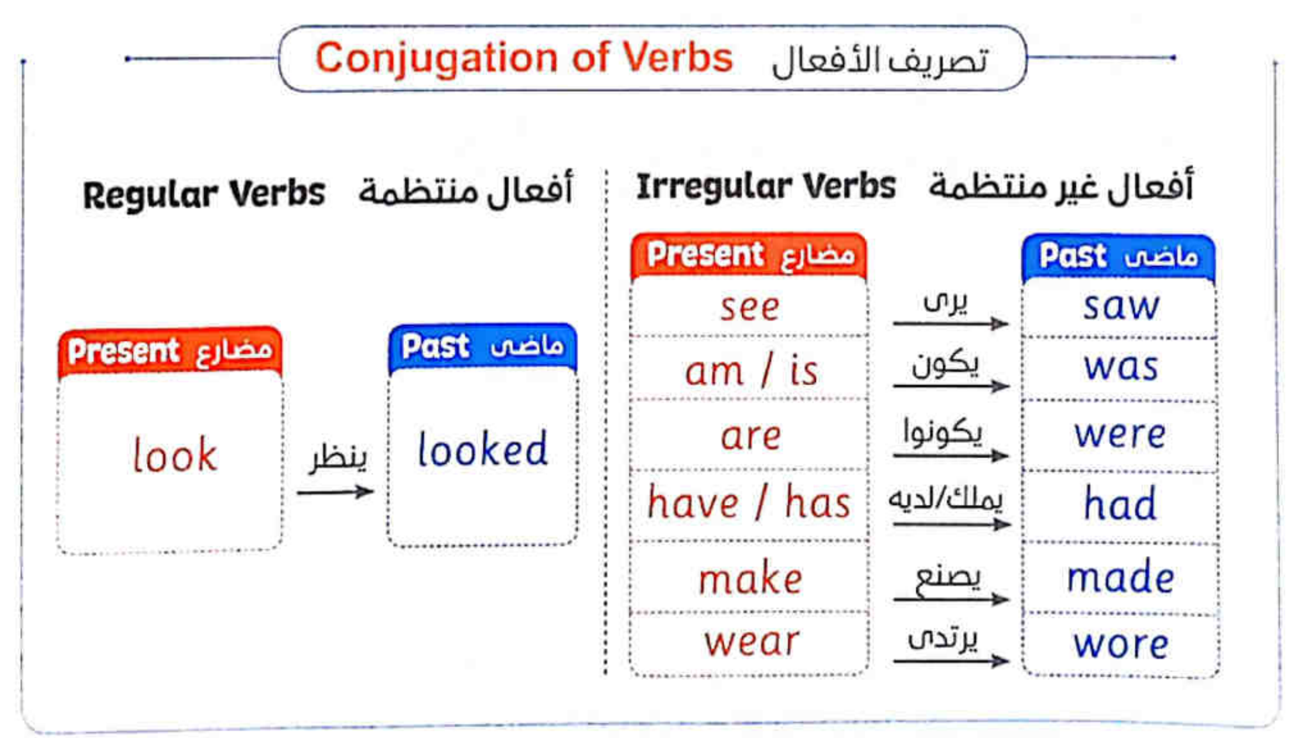
I had a great day at the museum yesterday.

قضيت يوم رائع في المتحف أمس.

I was excited yesterday.

كنت متحمسة أمس.

Conjugation of Verbs تصريف الأفعال



Regular Verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضي
look	ينظر →	looked

Irregular Verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضي
see	يرى →	saw
am / is	يكون →	was
are	يكونوا →	were
have / has	يملك/لديه →	had
make	يصنع →	made
wear	يرتدي →	wore

8 Ask and answer questions about objects

٨. السؤال والإجابة عن الأشياء

A We use (What is this ?) to ask about singular object.

- نستخدم (What's this ?) للسؤال عن شئ مفرد.

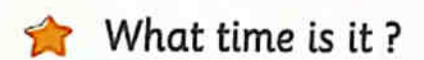
What's this ?	It's a jacket.

B We use (What are these ?) to ask about plural objects.

- نستخدم (What are these ?) للسؤال عن أشياء جمع.

What are these ?	They are mountains.

9 To ask about and tell the time ٩. السؤال عن الوقت والإجابة عليه



- What time is it ?
- It's ...number... o'clock.



- It's...الدقائق + الساعة...... .



10 When ... ? متى .... ؟ ١٠. السؤال عن وقت حدوث شيء ما







Hamza's birthday is on July 29th.

عيد ميلاد حمزة في ٢٩ من شهر يوليو.



11 Asking about places
١١. السؤال عن المكان



Where is  ? She is in the  .

Where is + (اسم مفرد) ? أين يكون / تكون ..... ؟

تستخدم (Where is ...... ?) للسؤال عن مكان شخص / شئ مفرد.

☆ **Prepositions of places :** حروف الجر الخاصة بالمكان

in في | under تحت | on على | behind خلف

12 Asking about what someone did in the past
١٢. السؤال عن ما فعله شخص ما في الماضي نستخدم :

What did + Subj. (فاعل) + do .... ?

Subj. (فاعل) + verb in the past (الفعل في زمن الماضي) + باقي الجملة.

- I visited my grandmother.

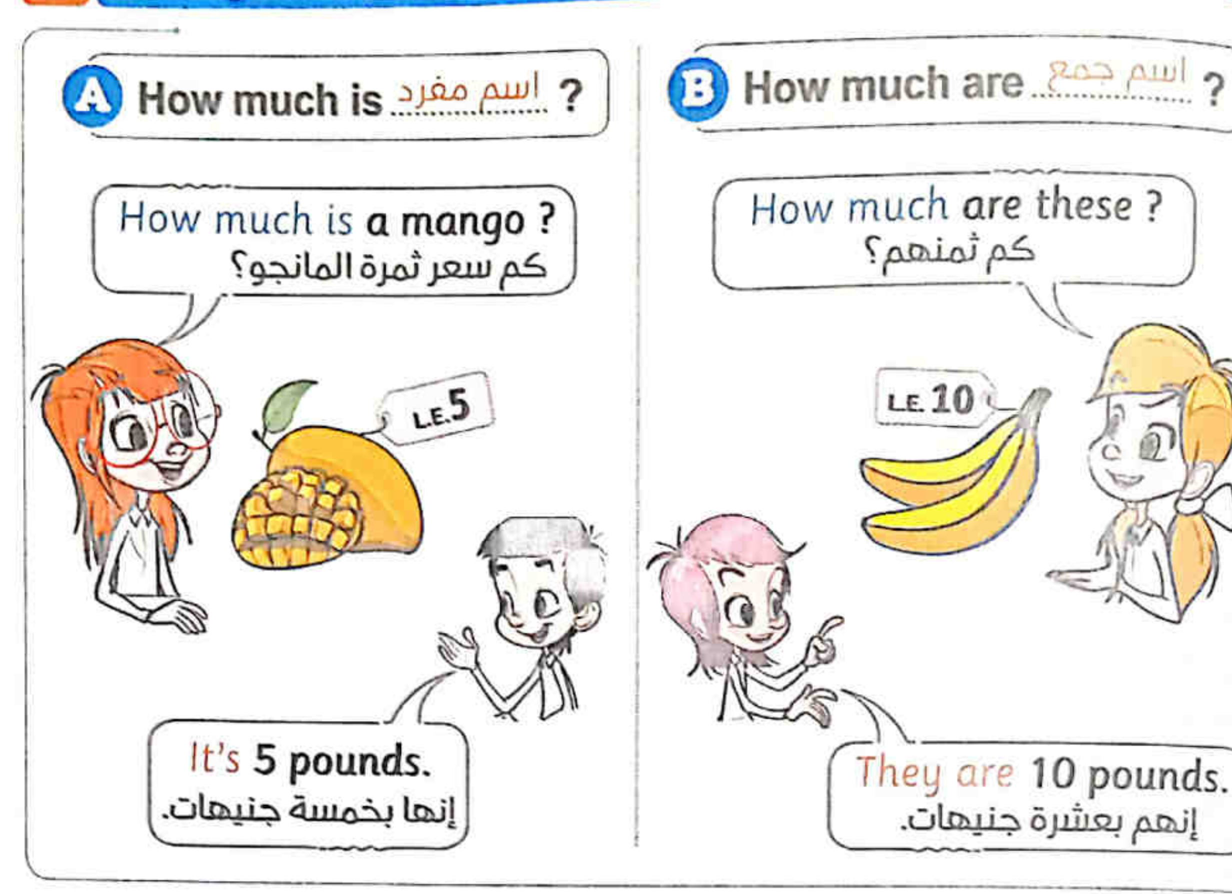
13 To ask about the country where someone is from
١٣. للسؤال عن الدولة التي منها شخصًا ما :



14 Asking about the price ١٤. السؤال عن السعر

A How much is ...اسم مفرد... ?

B How much are ...اسم جمع... ?



15 How many ١٥. تستخدم للسؤال عن العدد

How many + plural noun (اسم جمع يعد) + are there ? كم عدد ... ؟

وللإجابة نستخدم :

- There are يوجد + number عدد + plural noun اسم جمع يعد.
= There are + number.

When you offer something politely :: عندما تعرض شيء بطريقة مهذبة

Would you like a / an .... ? هل تود .... ؟

- عند الإجابة بالموافقة نستخدم (Yes, please.).
- عند الإجابة بعدم بالموافقة نستخدم (No, thank you.).



Writing Skill

1. Punctuation marks
2. How to write
3. Writing skill

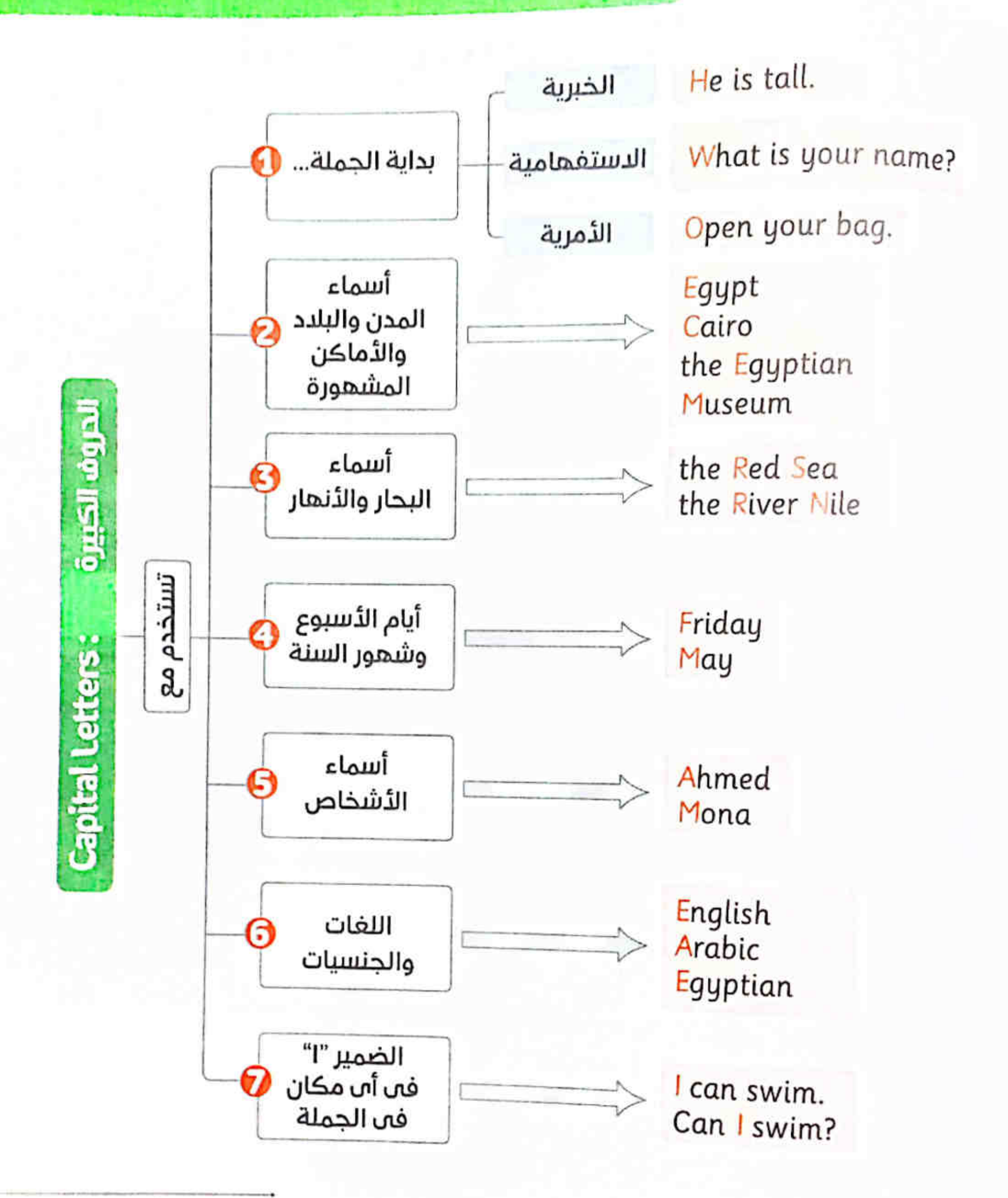
*** Notes for parents :**

- Help your child improve his / her writing skill.

• ساعد طفلك فى تحسين مهارة الكتابة لديه / لديها.

1. Punctuation Marks

١. علامات الترقيم



Notes for parents

- Help your child know how to use punctuation marks.

- ساعد طفلك ان يعرف كيف يستخدم علامات الترقيم.
- علامات الترقيم هى :
- وضع علامات الترقيم مثل (? - . - ! - ,).
- معرفة متى نستخدم الحروف الكبيرة (capital letters).
- يجب اتباع الترقيم اثناء الكتابة وذلك لتسهيل وتوضيح معنى الكلام المكتوب.

Full stop / period

توضع النقطة فى نهاية الجملة الخبرية والأمرية.

- I am Kareem.
- Open the door, please.

.

Question mark

توضع علامة الاستفهام فى نهاية السؤال.

How are you ?

?

Exclamation mark / point

تستخدم علامة التعجب فى حالة الترحيب أو التعجب.

- Wow !
- Don't run !
- Hello !
- Oh !
- Help !
- Hi !

!

Apostrophe

١. تستخدم الفاصلة العليا (') فى الاختصارات مثل

(is = 's / are = 're / have = 've)

- It's a puppet.

٢. تستخدم مع ('s) الملكية.

- That is Heba's car.

'

Comma

١. تستخدم الفاصلة السفلية (,) بعد Yes أو No.

- Yes, I am.
- No, I am not.

٢. تستخدم للفصل بين مجموعة من الأشياء من نوع واحد.

- I met Samya, Heba and Nabila.

٣. توضع الفاصلة (,) بعد المخاطب فى أول الجملة وقبل المخاطب فى آخر الجملة.

- Come here, Noha.
- Noha, come here.

٤. توضع قبل كلمة (please) فى آخر الكلام وبعد (please) أول الكلام.

- Please, keep quiet.
- Pass the cake, please.

٥. تستخدم مع الروابط الآتية عندما تأتى فى أول الجملة فقط.

- as soon as, after, before, although, even though, while, ... etc.
- After I get up, I will wash my face.
- Although he is strong, he can't lift the box.

أما عندما تكون الروابط فى منتصف الجملة لا تستخدم الفاصلة السفلية.

- I will wash my face after I get up.
- He can't lift the box although he is strong.

,



1 Choose the sentence that has the correct punctuation marks.

اختر الجملة التى بها علامات الترقيم الصحيحة.

1. a. louis braille invented the braille code
   b. Louis Braille invented the braille code.
   c. Louis Braille invented the Braille code.

2. a. Cairo, Alexandria, Giza and Port Said are the largest cities in Egypt.
   b. cairo, alexandria, giza and port said are the largest cities in egypt.
   c. Cairo, Alexandria, giza and Port Said are the largest cities in egypt.

3. a. What is your favorite food.
   b. What is your favorite food ?
   c. What is your favorite food !

2 Use the correct punctuation mark in the sentences.

استخدم علامة الترقيم الصحيحة فى الجمل.

comma (,) - question mark (?) - full stop (.) -
exclamation mark (!) - apostrophe (')

1. Mrs Azza reads Braille because she can't see well ....
2. Please .... get out of the room.
3. My mother .... s hat is red.
4. What a beautiful toy ....
5. I love to eat all fruits like apples .... mangoes and pineapple.

Unit 1

1 Rewrite the sentences with capital letters.

أعد كتابة الجمل بالحروف الكبيرة.

1. the english roses in london in august smelled sweet.
   ....
2. the pyramids are the most famous landmark in giza.
   ....
3. american sign language is different to spanish sign language.
   ....
4. we visited luxor in june and went to the karnak temple.
   ....

2 Correct the mistakes. Each sentence has one or two mistakes.

صحح الأخطاء. كل جملة بها خطأ واحد أو خطأين.

1. Mr and Mrs Bahgat stayed in Aswan at the Weekend.
   ....
2. Many Temples were built by King Ramses II.
   ....
3. Tamer went to Luxor in february to see his Grandparents.
   ....

Unit 2

Read and write (.) or (?).

اقرأ وأكتب (.) أو (؟).

1. Which groups of vertebrates are cold-blooded
2. Giraffes are the tallest animals in the world
3. Are insects vertebrates or invertebrates
4. What are the three primary colors
5. A shark is a predator
6. If you add black to a color, it becomes darker

Unit 3

1 Look and trace. انظر وتتبع.

1. Mena united the north and south to form Egypt.
2. A governorate can be a city, or a city and countryside.

2 Read and put correct punctuation marks in the correct places.

اقرأ وضع علامات الترقيم فى اماكنها الصحيحة.

! ? . , '

1. Music was important in Ancient Egypt ....
2. Where can you buy Khayameya ....
3. Those books belong to me and Layla. They .... re ours.
4. What a beautiful community ....

Unit 4

1 Punctuate the following sentences. ضع علامات الترقيم للجمل الآتية.

1. this is a metropolitan area

....

2. hello, I m waleed s dad.

....

2 Trace and Color the comma (,). تتبع ولون الفاصلة السفلية (,).



1 Look and trace. انظر وتتبع.

1. Fossil fuels are non-renewable resources.
2. We use solar panels to collect sunlight.

2 Punctuate the following sentences. ضع علامات الترقيم للجمل الآتية.

1. renewable energy is clean and it doesn t run out

....

2. who isn t a good problem solver

....

Unit 6

1 Look and trace. انظر وتتبع.

1. People will go to the Moon for holidays.
2. My little sister's name is Nour.

2 Punctuate the following sentences. ضع علامات الترقيم للجمل الآتية.

1. read the options in the search box carefully

....

2. large ships and ferries can t travel far

....

2. How to write

٢. كيف تكتب

لا تقتصر مهارة الكتابة علي استخدام القلم للكتابة في سطور فارغة ولكن مهارة الكتابة هي فن التعبير عن الافكار.

اجعل طفلك دائمًا يستمتع بمهارة الكتابة ولا تجعلها ثقلاً عليه.

كيف تتعامل مع كراسة المعاصر لتنمية مهارة الكتابة

١ أتبع الخطوات التالية :

- الخطــوة الأولــى : تهيئة الطالب للتعامل مع مهارة الكتابة باستخدام المفردات والوظائف اللغوية لكل وحدة.
- الخطــوة الثانيــة : التدرب على المفردات اللغوية للوحدة.
- الخطــوة الثالثــة : التدرب على الوظائف اللغوية للوحدة.
- الخطــوة الرابعــة : التدرب على كتابة جمل مرتبطة بالمفردات والوظائف اللغوية التي تم دراستها.

٢ قيم نفسك :



- هل تتذكر المفردات اللغوية التي درستها في الوحدة؟
- هل تتذكر الوظائف اللغوية التي درستها في الوحدة؟
- هل لديك القدرة علي كتابة وقراءة الكلمات والجمل الخاصة بالوحدة ؟





Step 1 Warm up

الخطوة الأولى: تهيئة الطالب للكتابة.

يقوم الطالب بقراءة هذه الجمل التى تساعده على استرجاع ما درسه فى الوحدة.



When we swallow food, it goes to our stomach.



There are two halves or hemispheres in our brain.

Step 2 Word practice

الخطوة الثانية: التدرب على المفردات اللغوية.

يقوم الطالب بالتدرب على المفردات اللغوية الخاصة بالوحدة.

• **Choose and write the word :** اختر واكتب الكلمة

respiratory - skeleton - digestive



1. Our .... is made up of all the bones in our body.



2. When we eat and drink, we use our .... system.

Step 3 Grammar practice

الخطوة الثالثة: التدرب على القواعد اللغوية.

يقوم الطالب بالتدرب على القواعد اللغوية الخاصة بالوحدة.

• **Choose and write the word :** اختر واكتب الكلمة

climb - climbs - always

1. I .... watch cartoons.
2. She sometimes .... a tree.

Step 4 Writing practice

الخطوة الرابعة: ممارسة الكتابة.

يقوم الطالب بالتدرب على الكتابة وربط المفردات والوظائف اللغوية معًا.

• **Look and write a sentence :** انظر واكتب جملة



....

....

قم بتقييم نفسك بالعلامات الموضحة.



Unit 2

Step 1 Warm up

الخطوة الأولى: تهيئة الطالب للكتابة.



يقوم الطالب بقراءة هذه الجمل التي تساعده على استرجاع ما درسه في الوحدة.



The biggest animal in the world lives on land.



Vertebrates are animals with a backbone.

Step 2 Word practice

الخطوة الثانية: التدرب على المفردات اللغوية.

يقوم الطالب بالتدرب على المفردات اللغوية الخاصة بالوحدة.

• **Choose and write the word :** اختر واكتب الكلمة.

gills - lungs - Amphibians



1. .... can live on land and in water.

2. Fish take in oxygen through their ....

Step 3 Grammar practice

الخطوة الثالثة: التدرب على القواعد اللغوية.

يقوم الطالب بالتدرب على القواعد اللغوية الخاصة بالوحدة.

• **Choose and write the word :** اختر واكتب الكلمة.

smaller - biggest - bigger

1. The horse is .... than the chameleon.
2. The .... bird in the world can't fly.

Step 4 Writing practice

الخطوة الرابعة: ممارسة الكتابة.

يقوم الطالب بالتدرب على الكتابة وربط المفردات والوظائف اللغوية معًا.

• **Look and write a sentence :** انظر واكتب جملة



....

....

قم بتقييم نفسك بالعلامات الموضحة. ◯◯◯◯

Unit 3



Step 1 Warm up

الخطوة الأولى: تهيئة الطالب للكتابة.

يقوم الطالب بقراءة هذه الجمل التى تساعده على استرجاع ما درسه فى الوحدة.



A community is a group of people who live and work together in the same area.



Egypt is a country with a very long and interesting history.

Step 2 Word practice

الخطوة الثانية: التدرب على المفردات اللغوية.

يقوم الطالب بالتدرب على المفردات اللغوية الخاصة بالوحدة.

- **Choose and write the word :** اختر وأكتب الكلمة.

Cairo - Alexandria - Hieroglyphs



1. .... are pictures or symbols that mean one word or many ideas.



2. I'm Fares. I live in ....

Step 3 Grammar practice

الخطوة الثالثة: التدرب على القواعد اللغوية.

يقوم الطالب بالتدرب على القواعد اللغوية الخاصة بالوحدة.

- **Choose and write the word :** اختر واكتب الكلمة.

This - These - was

1. .... is my school.
2. Rania .... at the zoo last week.

Step 4 Writing practice

الخطوة الرابعة: ممارسة الكتابة.

يقوم الطالب بالتدرب على الكتابة وربط المفردات والوظائف اللغوية معًا.

- **Look and write a sentence :** انظر واكتب جملة.



قم بتقييم نفسك بالعلامات الموضحة.





Step 1 Warm up

الخطوة الأولى: تهيئة الطالب للكتابة.

يقوم الطالب بقراءة هذه الجمل التي تساعده على استرجاع ما درسه في الوحدة



Greater Cairo is densely populated.



If you are a pedestrian, you have to be very careful.

Step 2 Word practice

الخطوة الثانية: التدرب على المفردات اللغوية.

يقوم الطالب بالتدرب على المفردات اللغوية الخاصة بالوحدة

- Choose and write the word : اختر واكتب الكلمة

countryside - sparsely - metropolitan



1. Greater Cairo is a .... area.



2. My village is .... populated.

Step 3 Grammar practice

الخطوة الثالثة: التدرب على القواعد اللغوية.

يقوم الطالب بالتدرب على القواعد اللغوية الخاصة بالوحدة

- Choose and write the word : اختر واكتب الكلمة

child - children - After

1. My aunt has four ....
2. .... I return from my school, I will have lunch.

Step 4 Writing practice

الخطوة الرابعة: ممارسة الكتابة.

يقوم الطالب بالتدرب على الكتابة وربط المفردات والوظائف اللغوية معًا.

- Look and write a sentence : انظر واكتب جملة



....

....

قيم نفسك بالعلامات الموضحة.

Unit 5



Step 1 Warm up

الخطوة الأولى: تهيئة الطالب للكتابة.

يقوم الطالب بقراءة هذه الجمل التي تساعده على استرجاع ما درسه في الوحدة.



Renewable resources can be naturally replaced when they run out.



We use solar panels to collect sunlight.

Step 2 Word practice

الخطوة الثانية: التدرب على المفردات اللغوية.

يقوم الطالب بالتدرب على المفردات اللغوية الخاصة بالوحدة.

• **Choose and write the word :** اختر واكتب الكلمة

Teamwork - solar panels - Wind power



1. .... is a renewable source of energy.



2. .... is very important for the success of a project.

Step 3 Grammar practice

الخطوة الثالثة: التدرب على القواعد اللغوية.

يقوم الطالب بالتدرب على القواعد اللغوية الخاصة بالوحدة.

• **Choose and write the word :** اختر واكتب الكلمة

Neither - don't - doesn't

1. Heba .... speak French.
2. .... of my friends will attend the party.

Step 4 Writing practice

الخطوة الرابعة: ممارسة الكتابة.

يقوم الطالب بالتدرب على الكتابة وربط المفردات والوظائف اللغوية معًا.

• **Look and write a sentence :** انظر واكتب جملة



....

قم بتقييم نفسك بالعلامات الموضحة. ○○○○





Step 1 Warm up

الخطوة الأولى: تهيئة الطالب للكتابة.

يقوم الطالب بقراءة هذه الجمل التي تساعده على استرجاع ما درسه في الوحدة.



Ahmed is the ship's captain. He has worked there for 10 years.



She will travel on a ship.



Step 2 Word practice

الخطوة الثانية: التدرب على المفردات اللغوية.

يقوم الطالب بالتدرب على المفردات اللغوية الخاصة بالوحدة.

- **Choose and write the word :** اختر وأكتب الكلمة.

Passphrases - farmer - entrepreneur



1. A/An .... is someone who starts a new business.



2. .... are much safer than regular passwords.

Step 3 Grammar practice

الخطوة الثالثة: التدرب على القواعد اللغوية.

يقوم الطالب بالتدرب على القواعد اللغوية الخاصة بالوحدة.

- **Choose and write the word :** اختر واكتب الكلمة.

Has - Have - will

1. I can smell delicious food. .... you finished cooking ?
2. I .... travel to Aswan by plane.

Step 4 Writing practice

الخطوة الرابعة: ممارسة الكتابة.

يقوم الطالب بالتدرب على الكتابة وربط المفردات والوظائف اللغوية معًا.

- **Look and write a sentence :** انظر واكتب جملة.



....

....

قم بتقييم نفسك بالعلامات الموضحة. ◯◯◯◯

3. Writing Skill

٣. مهارات الكتابة

1. How to write a paragraph :

١. كيفية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية

القواعد العامة لكتابة فقرة إنشائية :

١. اترك مسافة تعادل خمسة أحرف (تقريبًا ١ سم) فى السطر الأول فقط من الموضوع.
٢. أن تبدأ كل جملة بحرف Capital.
٣. أن تضع (.) واضحة فى نهاية كل جملة.
٤. اتبع كل علامات الترقيم.
٥. ابدأ جملتك بالفاعل ثم الفعل ونوّع بدايات الجمل.
٦. استخدم الزمن الصحيح والمناسب للموضوع الذى تكتبه.
٧. عليك باستخدام الجمل البسيطة وأن يكون لكل جملة معنى واضح.
٨. اجتهد فى تحسين خطك وذلك بترك مسافة بين كل كلمة وأخرى.
٩. استخدم القواعد بالشكل الصحيح.

Write a text of FIFTY (50) words :

Birds

Birds are warm-blooded, but they don't have fur or hair. All birds have feathers, and they all have wings. Birds lay eggs which are hard. Most birds can fly, but some can't. They have beaks, which are made of bones. Their beaks are in different shapes because they eat different food; some birds eat meat, some eat nuts and some eat seeds.

Video games

It's fun to play video games sometimes, but it's good to be active as well. Sitting still for a long time isn't good for your health. Sometimes people eat more unhealthy snacks when they are watching TV or playing on the computer. Try not to develop unhealthy habits.

Folk dancing

Folk dancing has a long history in Egypt. It is linked to the folk music of different areas. Nubian dancing is lively and colorful. People move their arms and feet to the rhythm of the music. Raqs Assaya is probably the most famous dance from the Saidi musical tradition. The dancers use sticks (Assaya) and step quickly in special patterns.

2. How to write an email : ٢. كيفية كتابة رسالة بريد الكتروني

To : عنوان البريد الإلكتروني للمرسل إليه :
From : عنوان البريد الإلكتروني للراسل :
Subject : موضوع الرسالة

Dear / Hi / Hello اسم المرسل إليه,

How are you ? I'm happy to write this email to you.

موضوع الرسالة

Yours,

اسم الراسل

Write an email of FIFTY (50) words :

1

To :	noura@yahoo.com
From :	aya@yahoo.com
Subject :	My visit to Alexandria

Dear Noura,

How is your family? I want to tell you about my visit to Alexandria. Last Friday, we went to Alexandria by train. We stayed at a hotel. The hotel was near the beach. We went to the beach at 2 p.m. We had a nice time in Alexandria.

Yours,

Aya

2

To :	ali@gmail.com
From :	amr@gmail.com
Subject :	My school library

Dear Ali,

How are you ? I'm happy to write this email to you. I want to tell you about my school library. It is big. It is beside my class. It has a lot of books. I like to read at break. Tell me about your school library.

Yours,

Amr

3

To :	mohamed@yahoo.com
From :	mazen@yahoo.com
Subject :	Ice cream

Dear Mohamed,

How are you ? I like ice cream. It's my favorite dessert. My favorite flavor is chocolate. It's delicious. There's an ice cream shop near my house. I eat ice cream once a week because I know it is unhealthy. I eat a lot of fruits every day.

Yours,

Mazen



The Four Basic Skills

1. Listening
2. Speaking
3. Reading
4. Writing

I'm reading.

I'm listening.

I'm writing.

I'm speaking.

*** Notes for parents :**

- Help your child identify the skills of English language.

* ساعد طفلك فى التعرف على المهارات الأساسية للغة الانجليزية (مهارة الاستماع - التحدث - القراءة - الكتابة).

Vocabulary


digestive system


respiratory system


skeleton


heart


stomach


muscle


swallow


hearing


tongue


Braille


Braille


gold medal


bronze medal


silver medal


Paralympic Games


exercise

Language

Present simple

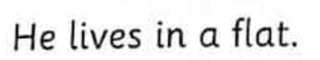
زمن المضارع البسيط

I always exercise.









He lives in a flat.



Bats are mammals.

He has a car.



Listening

☆ Listen and tick (✓). استمع و ضع علامة (✓).

1.
- heart ☐
- skeleton ☐

2.
- muscles ☐
- hair ☐

3.
- heart ☐
- blood ☐

4.
- lungs ☐
- stomach ☐

Speaking

☆ Talking about your activities at the weekend.

التحدث عن الأنشطة الخاصة بك فى عطلة نهاية الأسبوع.

What would you like to do at the weekend ?
ماذا تحب أن تفعل فى عطلة نهاية الأسبوع ؟

I would like to draw or paint a picture.
أحب أن أرسم أو ألون صورة.

Reading

Read the following text and answer the questions below.

Yesterday, I watched a program on TV. It was about how to keep our bodies healthy. Water is very important to our bodies. We should drink plenty of water every day. Exercise keeps you fit and healthy. Eat fresh fruit and vegetables that have a lot of fiber and vitamins. We need these for healthy skin, muscles, bones and teeth. Don't eat too many sweets. It's unhealthy. Eat a good diet with lots of different fresh food, and you'll be healthy.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The main idea of the text is about ....
   a. How to keep our bodies healthy
   b. How to keep our environment clean
   c. Unhealthy food
   d. Exercise
2. We can get vitamins from ....
   a. sweets b. water c. vegetables d. salt

B. Answer the following questions :

3. Is too much sugar good for us ?
   ....
4. Why do we need vitamins ?
   ....

Writing

Look and write a sentence under each picture :

use - respiratory



....

pump - blood



....

Unit 2

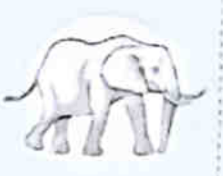
Vocabulary

vertebrates
invertebrates
cold-blooded
mammals
coral reefs
reptiles
scales
chameleon
bee hummingbird
warm-blooded
backbone
amphibians
fur
water lily

Language

Comparative

The African elephant is bigger than the Asian elephant.



Superlative

The smallest bird is the bee hummingbird.



The turtle is the slowest animal.



Listening

★ **Listen and tick (✓).** استمع و ضع علامة (✓).

1.
- reptiles ☐
- amphibians ☐

2.
- fur ☐
- gills ☐

3.
- cold-blooded ☐
- warm-blooded ☐

4.
- muscle ☐
- backbone ☐

Speaking



★ **Quiz about animals.**



- **Which are larger, leopards or cheetahs ?**

  Leopards are larger than cheetahs.



- **Which are the heaviest snakes in the world ?**

  Green anacondas.

Reading

Read the following text and answer the questions below.

Birds are warm-blooded, but they don't have fur or hair. All birds have feathers, and they all have wings. Birds lay eggs which are hard. Most birds can fly, but some can't. They have beaks, which are made of bone. Their beaks are different shapes because they eat different food; some birds eat meat, some eat nuts and some eat seeds.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The text is about ....

   a. birds b. mammals c. reptiles d. fish

2. Birds lay eggs which are ....

   a. hot b. hard c. soft d. warm

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Can all birds fly ?

   ....

4. Why are birds' beaks different ?

   ....

Writing

Look and write a sentence under each picture :

Amphibians - cold-blooded

____

birds - wings

____




community


neighborhood


colorful


scribe


pharaoh


hieroglyphs


governorate


string instruments


wind instruments


village


sports club

Language

Demonstrative pronouns

- This is a toy. (near)



- That is a toy. (far)





- These are books. (near)



- Those are books. (far)



Possessive pronouns

- This is mine.
- That car is hers.
- Those are ours.

Past simple tense

Salma was at the cinema.

Listening

Listen and tick (✓). استمع و ضع علامة (✓).

1.
- community ☐
- neighborhood ☐

2.
- governorate ☐
- lungs ☐

3.
- hieroglyphs ☐
- pharaohs ☐

4.
- rebaba ☐
- drum ☐

Speaking

 Quiz about My world.



- Where do you live ?

  - I live in Aswan.



- What part of Egypt was Upper Egypt ?

  - The South.

- How many governorates are there in Egypt ?

  - 27 governorates.



- What type of instruments is the shabbaba ?

  - It is a wind instrument.

Reading

Read the following text and answer the questions below :

How do we know so much about the history of Egypt ? Egyptians at that time used scribes to write down everything that happened. Scribes were very important people. They worked for the ruling dynasties. They wrote in hieroglyphs, which are pictures of symbols that can mean one word or many ideas. We can see these hieroglyphs today in tombs and museums. Children learnt to become a scribe at school. Scribes wrote on stone, or on paper made from papyrus reeds.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The text is about ....
   a. Ancient Egyptians b. Modern dynasties
   c. Alexandria Library d. Hurghada
2. In Ancient Egypt, ... wrote everything that happened.
   a. doctors b. farmers c. engineers d. scribes

B. Answer the following questions.

3. What language did the Ancient Egyptians write in ?

   ....

4. What did scribes write the symbols ?

   ....

Writing

Look and write a sentence under each picture :

scribes - wrote down



____

The Red Sea governorate - scuba diving



____

Unit 4

Vocabulary


city


village


densely populated

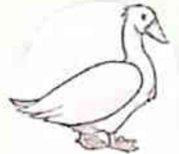

isolated


congestion


sparsely populated

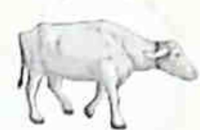

yarn


inhabitant


goose


date


donkey


buffalo


sheep


geometric patterns


dye


artisans

Language

Conjunctions

- When the yarn is dry, the artisans can weave a carpet.



- Malak and Youssef ran inside as soon as it started raining.



Listening

Listen and tick (✓). استمع و ضع علامة (✓).

1.
- densely populated ☐
- sparse populated ☐

2.
- isolated ☐
- metropolitan ☐

3.
- dye ☐
- spin ☐

4.
- a tomato ☐
- tomatoes ☐

Speaking

Quiz about city and country.

- Is your house traditional or modern ?
  - It is modern.
- Do you live in a sparsely populated area or a densely populated one ?
  - I live in a densely populated area.
- Do you live in a rural or an urban environment ?
  - I live in a rural environment.



Reading

★ Read the following text and answer the questions below :

My name's Waleed and I live in a small village on the Nile. My dad's a farmer. He grows tomatoes, potatoes, dates, and onions. We have some animals too. There are six sheep and two buffaloes. There are some donkeys in my village, but my family doesn't have one now. You can see cats in the street and if you're lucky, you might see some beautiful Egyptian geese on the river.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The text is about where Waleed ....
   a. lives b. drinks c. drives d. rides
2. You can see .... in the street in Waleed's village.
   a. cattle b. cars c. cats d. dogs

B. Answer the following questions.

3. What animals do they have ?

....

4. How many sheep does Waleed's dad have ?

....

Writing

★ Look and write a sentence under each picture :

Great Cairo - busy

These - geese

Unit 5

Vocabulary


renewable resources


non-renewable resources


coal


engineer


rock / stone

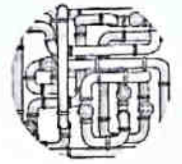

wind power


solar panels


solar power


teamwork


wood


metal


fossils


petroleum

Language

Present simple Tense

- The mechanic fixes cars.
- He visits his uncle every month.

Nouns and their pronouns

- He presented his project.
- Both children presented their projects.

Listening

Listen and tick (✓). استمع و ضع علامة (✓).

1.	• gold ☐ • silver ☐	2.	• crude oil well ☐ • water ☐
3.	• wood ☐ • coal ☐	4.	• renewable ☐ • non-renewable ☐

Speaking

Quiz about city and country.

- **What are natural resources ?**
  - They're materials that we get from nature.
- **Is renewable energy clean ?**
  - Yes, it is.
- **Where do wave power and tidal power work ?**
  - They only work in the sea or ocean.

Reading

Read the following text and answer the questions below :

Seleem walks to school every day. The road is next to the desert. It is usually hot, sunny and dusty on the road. Last year, there was nothing in the desert. Sometimes Seleem saw a lizard, but most of the time, he just saw rocks and sunshine. Now things are different. He sees lots of workers and trucks in the desert. They are building a solar farm. At school, Seleem's teacher asks the class a question "What is renewable energy?" Seleem puts his hand up "Renewable energy is from a resource that won't run out" he said.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Seleem saw rocks and .... most of the time.

   a. weather b. sunshine c. farms d. questions

2. The road is .... the desert.

   a. next to b. in front of c. above d. under

B. Answer the following questions.

3. What are they building in the desert ?

   ....

4. What is renewable energy ?

   ....

Writing

Look and write a sentence under each picture :

solar panels - sunshine

____

teamwork - success

____

Unit 6

Vocabulary

airplane

train

ship

boat

rail

river

pipe

road

robot

ship's captain

container ship

Language

The Present Perfect Tense.

Have you ever traveled on a train ?
هل سافرت بالقطار من قبل ؟

Yes, I have.
نعم، لقد سافرت به.







The Future Simple Tense.



He will travel by train.

Listening

★ **Listen and tick (✓).** استمع و ضع علامة (✓).

1. • airplane ☐ • train ☐	**2.** • container ship ☐ • ferry ☐
3. • robot ☐ • farmer ☐	**4.** • high - speed train ☐ • bus ☐

Speaking

★ **Ask about past experience**



- **Have you ever traveled on an airplane ?**

  - Yes, I have



- **How will you travel to Alexandria ?**

  - By train.

Reading

Read the following text and answer the questions below :

Heba looked out of the window of her family's house at the ships going along the Suez Canal. They were so big. 'It must be so fun to be a ship's captain !' thought Heba. 'The ship moves so slowly. I think it's a relaxing job. Heba loved watching the ships. She often watched them with her friends. She liked to think about where the ships came from. One day, Heba's father said, "My friend, Amr, works on a container ship. He will travel past our house today. Let's go and wave at him". Heba and her family went to the side of the Suez Canal and waited for Amr's ship. It was huge and had hundreds of containers on it.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Heba thought it must be fun to be a ....
   a. ship's engineer b. ship's captain
   c. farmer d. doctor
2. Amr works on a ....
   a. container ship b. boat c. ferry d. train

B. Answer the following questions.

3. What did Heba see when she looked out of the house window ?

....

4. What did Heba love ?

....

Writing

Look and write a sentence under each picture :

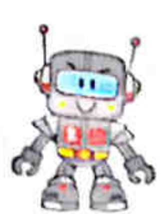
This - container ship



____

____

Hany - robotic engineer



____

____



GUIDE

Interactive Notebook

By a group of supervisors

Parents' Guide دليل ولى الأمر

بتصريح وتحت إشراف
وزارة التربية والتعليم والتعليم الفنى
MINISTRY OF EDUCATION AND TECHNICAL EDUCATION

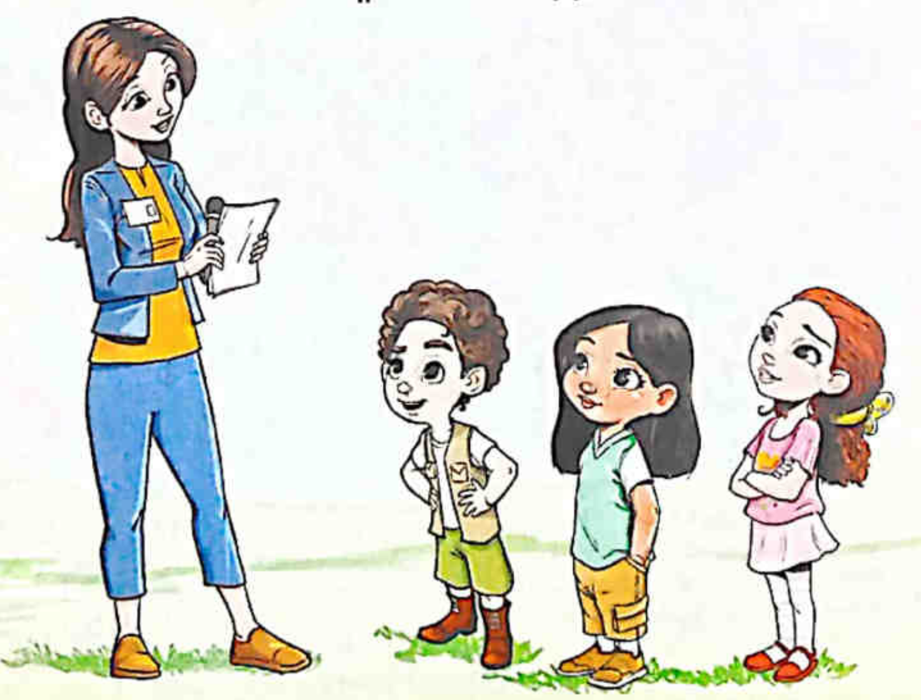


DESERT ANIM

4th Primary 2023
FIRST TERM

الصف الرابع الابتدائى
للمدارس الرسمية و الخاصة لغات
الفصل الدراسى الأول

Contents



Part **1**

"That's enough"

is enough before the exam.

مراجعة على المنهج بالكامل

بطريقة كافية و وافية



Review on unit 1



General Revision on Vocabulary

المفردات اللغوية الهامة (الأساسية التي يجب ان يتقنها ويحفظها الطفل طبقاً لنواتج التعلم)

Lesson 1

digestive system	الجهاز الهضمى	heart	قلب
respiratory system	الجهاز التنفسى	chew	يمضغ
muscles	عضلات	swallow	يبتلع
skeleton	هيكل عظمى	bones	عظام
stomach	معدة	blood	دم
special liquid	سائل خاص	attached to	مرتبط بـ / متصل بـ
energy	طاقة	lungs	الرئتين
nutrients	عناصر غذائية	oxygen	أكسجين
organ	عضو (فى الجسم)	body	جسم

Lesson 2

senses	الحواس	smell	حاسة الشم - يشم
taste	حاسة التذوق - يتذوق	sweet	حلو المذاق
touch	حاسة اللمس - يلمس	information	معلومات
sight	حاسة الإبصار	savory	مالح
hearing	حاسة السمع	combination	خليط / مزيج
tongue	لسان	deaf	أصم
skin	جلد / بشرة	version	إصدار
sign language	لغة الإشارة	Braille	طريقة برايل (للمكفوفين)
communicate	يتصل / يتواصل	blind	كفيف / فاقد للبصر
fireworks	ألعاب نارية	code	شفرة / رمز

Lesson 3

lounge	غرفة الجلوس	disappointed	خائب الأمل / محبط
cookery	فن الطبخ	left hemisphere	الشق الأيسر
brain	مخ	right hemisphere	الشق الأيمن
creative	مُبدع	memory	ذكرى - ذاكرة
paper	ورق	choices	اختيارات
math	الرياضيات	main areas	مناطق رئيسية
science	العلوم	cerebrum	منطقة المخ
art	التربية الفنية	cerebellum	منطقة المخيخ
solving problems	حل المشاكل	brain stem	النخاع (جذع المخ)
tired	متعب	movement	حركة
thoughts	أفكار	balance	توازن

Lesson 4

international	دولى	gold medal	الميدالية الذهبية
competition	مسابقة	silver medal	الميدالية الفضية
champion	بطل	bronze medal	الميدالية البرونزية
Paralympic Games	دورة الألعاب البارالمبية (لذوى الاحتياجات الخاصة)	Parasports	الألعاب الرياضية لذوى الاحتياجات الخاصة
disabilities	ذوى الاحتياجات الخاصة	race	سباق
Olympics	الألعاب الأولمبية	national team	الفريق القومى
World Championship	بطولة العالم	dedication	تفانى / إخلاص
female	أنثى	hard work	عمل جاد
World Cup	كأس العالم	opportunities	فرص
swimmer	سباح	level	مستوى
runner	عداء - لاعب جرى	sitting volleyball	كرة الطائرة على الكراسى المتحركة

Lessons 5 & 6

exercise	يتدرب / تدريب	unhealthy habits	عادات غير صحية
healthy diet	نظام غذائى صحى	snacks	وجبات خفيفة
mental	عقلى	physical	بدنى
routine	نظام يومى	vitamins	فيتامينات
hard	صعب	minerals	معادن
idea	فكرة	tips	نصائح
range	سلسلة / مجموعة	summarize	يلخص / يوجز
develop	يحسن / ينمى	fats	دهون

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

Lesson 1

change the food into	يحول الطعام إلى	pumps this blood around our body	يضخ هذا الدم حول جسمنا
is made up of	يتكون / يتألف من		
breathe in air	يستنشق الهواء	through the nose	خلال الأنف
attached to	مرتبط بـ/ متصل بـ	make us strong	يجعلنا أقوياء

Lesson 2

think about	يعتقد / يفكر فى	different to	مختلف عن
all the time	طوال الوقت	have difficulty	لديه صعوبة
take in a lot of information	يستوعب الكثير من المعلومات	find out	يكتشف
		(be) called	يسمى / يدعى
look at	ينظر إلى		

Lesson 3

at the weekend	فى عطلة نهاية الأسبوع	Let's go to...	هيا بنا نذهب إلى...
What's the matter ?	ما الأمر ؟	do drawing	يقوم بالرسم
paint a picture	تلوّن صورة	play tennis	يلعب التنس
control the right/left side	يتحكم فى الجانب الأيمن / الجانب الأيسر	on Mondays	فى أيام الاثنين

Lesson 4

take place = happen يحدث	have fun = enjoy يستمتع
take part in يشارك فى	from all over the world من جميع أنحاء العالم
held in a different country تقام فى دولة مختلفة	take years of dedication تستغرق سنوات من التفانى
in the same place فى نفس المكان	do a sport يمارس رياضة
athletes with disabilities الرياضيون ذوى الاحتياجات الخاصة	the 2016 Rio Paralympics دورة الألعاب البارالمبية ريو ٢٠١٦
get to يصل إلى	400-meter races سباقات ٤٠٠ متر

Lessons 5 & 6

It is a good idea to إنها لفكرة جيدة أن	as well أيضًا
try to يحاول أن	It is important to إنه من المهم أن
do some exercises يقوم ببعض التدريبات الرياضية	have for lunch يتناول في وجبة الغداء
on hot days فى الأيام الحارة	play on the computer يلعب على الحاسوب
easy for سهل لـ	a mixture of خليط من
It's easier if you find a sport إنه من الأسهل لو تجد رياضة	sitting still for a long time الجلوس بلا حراك لفترة طويلة
It's fun to إنه من الممتع أن	choose a title for يختار عنوان لـ
plan activities for يخطط أنشطة لـ	learn new skills يتعلم مهارات جديدة
play video games يلعب ألعاب فيديو	make friends يكون صداقات
It's good to be active إنه من الجيد أن تصبح نشيطًا	aged ذو عمر/سن
	have fun يستمتع

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular

Present		Past
lift	يرفع	lifted
invent	يخترع	invented
practice	يمارس/يتدرب	practiced
control	يتحكم	controlled
join	يربط / ينضم	joined

Irregular

Present		Past
understand	يفهم	understood
smell	يشم	smelt
feel	يشعر	felt
speak	يتكلم	spoke
draw	يرسم	drew
hold	يعقد - يقيم	held



General Exercises on Vocabulary

Read and complete the text with the words from the box :

1

blood - lungs - heart - nose

We use our respiratory system when we breathe. We breathe in air through our nose, and it goes to our (1) .... In the lungs, the oxygen in the air is passed to the (2) .... Our (3) .... pumps this blood around our body.

2

chew - stomach - mouth - liquid

We use our digestive system when we eat and drink. We (1) .... and swallow food, then it goes to our (2) .... In the stomach, a special (3) .... changes the food into energy and nutrients that we need in our bodies.

3

Muscles - skeleton - bones - move

Our skeleton is made up of all the (1) .... in our body. These make us strong and protect our organs. (2) .... are attached to our bones, and they lift and turn bones to make us (3) ....

4

hear - tongue - smell - information

We use our senses every day to help us understand the world around us. We use our eyes to see and our ears to (1) .... We smell with our nose, taste with our (2) .... , and we can feel with our skin. Think about where you are now. What can you see? What can you hear ? Our senses are working all the time and they take in a lot of (3) ....



General Revision on Language

1 The Present Simple Tense ١. زمن المضارع البسيط



I /You / we/ They / اسم جمع + التصريف الأول للفعل

ex. - I know what I want to do.
- We play tennis after school.

He /She / It /(Ali) اسم مفرد + (inf.) مصدر الفعل + s or es

• معظم الأفعال يضاف لها (s)

• أما التى تنتهى بـ (s, sh, ch, ss, x, o) يضاف لها (es)

ex. - Adam goes to the park every week.
- Karima always does drawing.

Notes :

☆ الفعل المنتهى بـ (y) قبله حرف ساكن يضاف له (ies) مع حذف (y) :

ex. - She carries a bag.

☆ الفعل الذى ينتهى بـ (y) قبله حرف متحرك (a - e - i - o - u) يضاف له (s):

ex. - He plays volleyball every Friday.

Usage

☆ يستخدم زمن المضارع البسيط للتعبير عن عادات أو أحداث متكررة أو حقائق علمية.

ex. - He likes reading books on holidays.
- The sun rises in the east.

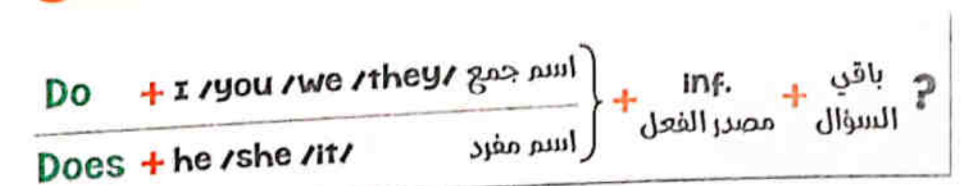


He / She / It / اسم مفرد + doesn't
I / you / We / They / اسم جمع + don't
} + (inf.) مصدر الفعل

ex. - I don't have sisters.
- He doesn't play tennis.



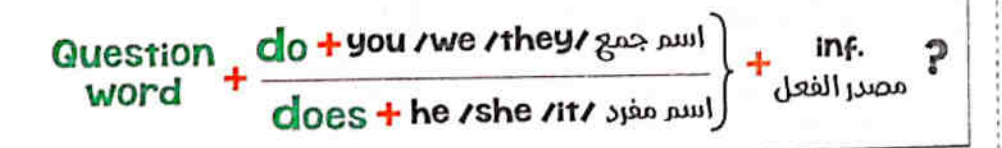
A **Yes / No Question** السؤال بمعنى هل ... ؟



ex. Do you like milk ?
- Yes, I do.
- No, I don't.

ex. Does she like milk ?
- Yes, she does.
- No, she doesn't.

B **Wh - question** السؤال الذى يبدأ بكلمة استفهام.



ex. When do you get up every day ?
- I get up at 6 o'clock.

2 Auxiliary verbs ٢. الأفعال المساعدة

1 V. to be فعل "يكون"

He / She / It	→	is / isn't	I	→	am / 'm not	We / You / They	→ are / aren't

– She is hungry.

– They are tired.

2 V. to have فعل "يملك"

He / She / It	→	has / doesn't have	I / We / You / They	→	have / don't have

– Tarek has two sisters.

– I have one brother.

3 V. to do فعل "يفعل"

He / She / It	→	does / doesn't	I / We / You / They	→	do / don't

– Hana does art class.

– We do cookery class.



General Exercises on Language

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1 The present simple

1. I .... to the club every day.
   a. going b. goes c. go d. went
2. Noura .... volleyball on Mondays.
   a. plays b. played c. playing d. play
3. Our heart .... the blood around our body.
   a. pump b. pumping c. pumped d. pumps
4. I .... in Cairo.
   a. to live b. lives c. live d. living
5. Fatma .... go to the museum.
   a. aren't b. doesn't c. don't d. am not
6. He doesn't .... Spanish.
   a. speak b. speaks c. spoke d. speaking
7. Hamza .... to the park every week.
   a. go b. went c. goes d. going
8. An adult brain .... about three pounds.
   a. weighs b. weigh c. to weigh d. weighed
9. Your brain .... to grow until you're about 18 years old.
   a. to continue b. continued c. continues d. continue
10. Information .... from your body to your brain at 240 - 420 kilometers per hour.
   a. traveled b. travels c. travel d. traveling
11. Your brain .... about 20% of the oxygen and blood in your body.
   a. uses b. use c. used d. using

12. He .... football every day.

a. practice b. practiced c. practices d. to practice

13. Every minute about one liter of blood .... through the brain.

a. flows b. flow c. flowing d. to flow

14. While you are sleeping, your brain .... through all the memories of the day.

a. going b. go c. goes d. went

2 Auxiliary verbs

15. She .... three sisters.

a. have b. has c. is d. does

16. They .... good friends.

a. are b. do c. has d. did

17. We always .... cookery class.

a. doing b. does c. to do d. do

18. The brain .... the most important organ of the body.

a. have b. are c. is d. am

19. About 75% of the brain .... made up of water.

a. am b. is c. are d. does

20. The average brain .... 12.000 to 60.000 thoughts a day !

a. is b. does c. have d. has

21. What .... we doing today, Mom ?

a. are b. is c. do d. have

22. Today .... Friday, so there's no school.

a. am b. is c. are d. do

Review on unit 2



General Revision on Vocabulary

Lesson 1

vertebrate	الفقاريات	reptiles	الزواحف
mammals	الثدييات	amphibians	البرمائيات
backbone	العمود الفقرى	cold-blooded	ذوات الدم البارد
warm-blooded	ذوات الدم الحار	humans	البشر
survive	ينجو	gills	خياشيم
fins	زعانف	land	الأرض / اليابسة
hair	شعر	wing	جناح
beak	منقار	moist	رطب
fur	فراء	wetlands	أراضى رطبة
smooth	ناعم	seeds	بذور

Lesson 2

enormous	ضخم	blue whale	الحوت الأزرق
tiny	ضئيل - قليل الحجم	natural world	العالم الطبيعى
Earth	كوكب الأرض	whale shark	قرش الحوت
chameleon	حرباء	leopard	فهد
scientist	عالم	strong	قوى
ostrich	نعامة	bee hummingbird	طائر النحلة الطنان

Lesson 3

invertebrates	اللافقاريات	protection	حماية
snail	الحلزون	squid	حبّار السمك
jellyfish	قنديل البحر	octopus	أخطبوط
crab	كابوريا	dragonfly	يعسوب
hard shell	صدفة صلبة	insects	حشرات
soft	ناعم	grasshoppers	جراد
arachnid	فصيلة العناكب	hide	يختبئ

Lesson 4

primary colors	الألوان الأساسية	secondary colors	الألوان الثانوية
red	لون أحمر	purple	لون بنفسجى
yellow	لون أصفر	green	لون أخضر
blue	لون أزرق	orange	لون برتقالى

Lesson 5

water lily	الزنبق المائى	disadvantages	عيوب
advantages	مميزات	on one hand	من ناحية
on the other hand	من ناحية أخرى	stem	ساق نبات
soil	تربة زراعية	bottom	قاع
flat leaf	ورقة شجر مسطحة	roots	جذور
surface	سطح	pretty	جميل
area	مساحة / منطقة	in addition	بالإضافة

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

Lesson 1

have hair/fur on their bodies لديهم شعر / فراء على أجسامهم	feed their babies with milk تطعم صغارها اللبن
animals with a backbone حيوانات لديها عمود فقارى	take in oxygen through their skin تمتص/تستنشق الأكسجين عبر جلدها
give birth to تلد (تضع مولود)	use fins to move تستخدم الزعانف لتتحرك
keep warm يبقى دافئاً	lay eggs تبيض
come onto land تصعد على اليابسة	live on land يعيش على الأرض

Lesson 2

It can be up to 30 meters long. قد يصل طوله إلى ٣٠ متر	at about 12 meters long بطول حوالى ١٢ متر
at just 30 mm long بطول ٣٠ ملميتر فقط	

Lesson 3

write about invertebrates يكتب عن اللافقاريات	have soft bodies لها أجسام لينة
more than 90% أكثر من ٩٠٪	move slowly يتحرك ببطئ
find out information يكتشف معلومات	Well done ! أحسنت !
good idea فكرة جيدة	Can I have my cell phone back now, please ? هل يمكن استعادة تليفونى المحمول الآن من فضلك ؟
have a hard shell لها قوقعة صلبة	

Lesson 4

an underwater scene منظر تحت المياه	come in many different colors يوجد منها ألوان مختلفة
all shades in between كل درجات اللون التى بينهم	make green darker يجعل اللون الأخضر داكن أكثر
brightly colored ملونة بألوان زاهية / لامعة	hide from يختبئ من
can be a warning قد يكون تحذيرًا	



Lessons 5 & 6

the surface of the water سطح المياه	make it difficult for يجعلها / يجعل الامر صعبا علي
reaches down to يصل لأسفل إلى	look pretty يبدو جميلًا
the bottom of the lake قاع البحيرة	brightly colored ذو ألوان زاهية

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular

Present		Past
survive	ينجو - يبقى حيًا	survived
discover	يكتشف	discovered
hunt	يصطاد	hunted
attract	يجذب	attracted
reproduce	ينتج - يتكاثر	reproduced
float	يطفو	floated

Irregular

Present		Past
lay	يبيض	laid
spend	يقضى	spent
find out	يكتشف	found out
hide	يختبئ	hid
spread	ينتشر	spread
make	يصنع - يجعل	made



General Exercises on Vocabulary

Read and complete the text with the words from the box :

1

feed - lay - land - warm

Mammals have hair or fur on their bodies. They are warm-blooded and they (1) .... their babies with milk and most of them give birth to their babies. They don't (2) .... eggs. Most mammals live on (3) ...., but some live in the sea, such as whales and seals. Bats are the only mammals that can fly.

2

lands - eggs - habitats - scales

Fish are vertebrates. They live in water and take in oxygen through their gills; they can't breathe air. They are cold-blooded and they lay (1) .... They also have (2) .... and they use fins to move. There are thousands of different types of fish in all water (3) .... ; saltwater, freshwater and wetlands.

3

long - mammal - land - sea

In the natural world, there are some enormous animals, and some tiny ones! The biggest animal on (1) .... is a mammal : the African elephant. The African elephant is bigger than the Asian elephant. The biggest animal in the world is also a (2) ...., but it lives in the sea. It's the blue whale, and it can be up to 30 meters (3) .... In fact, they are the biggest animals that have ever lived on Earth!



General Revision on Language



1 Comparative : المقارنة بين اثنين (شخصين / شيئين)

⭐ عند المقارنة بين اثنين أحدهما يزيد عن الآخر فى نفس الصفة القصيرة ذات المقطع الواحد نستخدم :

(short adj. صفة قصيرة + er) + than

⭐ يضاف للصفات القصيرة (er) وبعدها (than):

- old → older
- fast → faster

⭐ أما الصفات القصيرة المكونة من (مقطع واحد) ومنتهية بحرف (ساكن) مسبوق بحرف (متحرك) يضاعف الحرف الأخير ثم تضاف (er):

- big → bigger
- hot → hotter

⭐ أما الصفات القصيرة المكونة من (مقطع واحد) ومنتهية بحرف (y–) تحول حرف (y–) إلى (i) ثم نضيف (er–):

- happy → happier
- heavy → heavier

⭐ أما الصفات القصيرة المكونة من (مقطع واحد) ومنتهية بحرف (e–) نضيف (r–) فقط للصفة.

- nice → nicer

Ants are stronger than humans.







The horse is bigger than the chameleon.



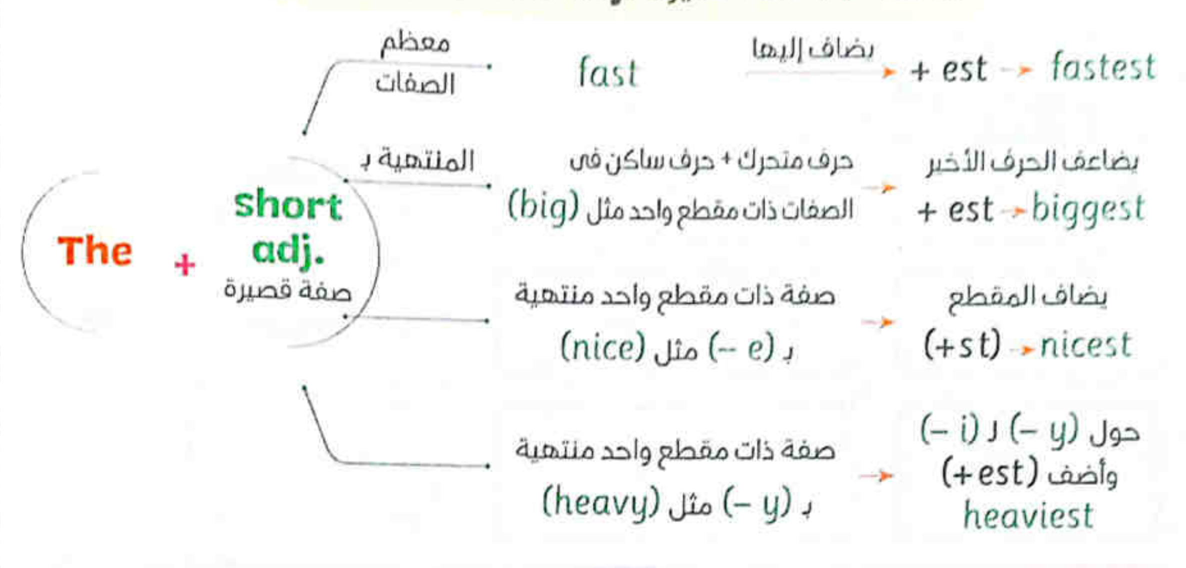


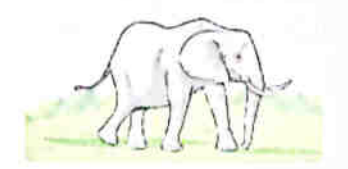


2 Superlative صفة التفضيل (المقارنة بين واحد ومجموعة) فى صفة

عند المقارنة بين أكثر من اثنين (واحد ومجموعة فى صفة ذات مقطع واحد) نضع the قبل الصفة ونضيف للصفة (est):

(the + short adj. صفة قصيرة + est)





The African elephant is the biggest animal on land.



The smallest bird is the bee hummingbird.



The biggest bird in the world can't fly.

3 Adverbs of manner ظروف الحال (الكيفية)



الظرف يصف الفعل و يأتى بعده و يتكون من إضافة (ly) إلى الصفة المنتظمة. والظروف غير المنتظمة تحفظ كما هى.

adjective الصفة	**adverb** الظرف
Doctors help sick people. Rodina is happy. الصفة تصف الاسم و تأتى قبله أو بعد (verb to be).	Snails move slowly. الظرف يصف الفعل و يأتى بعده.

Formation

لتكوين الظرف نضيف (ly) للصفة المنتظمة.

slow → slowly   quick → quickly

أما الصفات التى تنتهى بـ (y –) تستبدل بـ (i) و نضيف (ly).

happy → happily   noisy → noisily   easy → easily

هناك صفات غير منتظمة تحفظ كما هي لا يضاف إليها (ly-) عند تحويلها إلى ظرف.

good → well

هناك صفات تبقى كما هى عند تحويلها إلى ظرف (حال).

fast → fast   hard → hard   right → right   late → late

Usage

يستخدم الظرف بعد الفعل ليصفه.

- Some spiders can hide very well.

يستخدم الظرف لوصف حدث / فعل (الطريقة التى يؤدى بها شخص ما شئ ما).

- Some invertebrates can swim very slowly.

Regular المنتظم

Adjective		Adverb	
bad	سيء	badly	بطريقة سيئة
quiet	هادئ	quietly	بهدوء
loud	عالٍ	loudly	بصوت عالٍ
quick	سريع	quickly	بسرعة
slow	بطيء	slowly	ببطء
happy	سعيد	happily	بسعادة
sad	حزين	sadly	بحزن
soft	ناعم / لين / هادئ	softly	بنعومة / بلين / بهدوء

Irregular غير المنتظم

Adjective		Adverb	
good	جيد	well	جيدًا
fast	سريع	fast	بسرعة
hard	صعب	hard	بصعوبة
right	صحيح	right	بطريقة صحيحة
wrong	خطأ	wrongly	بطريقة خاطئة
late	متأخر	late	متأخرًا



General Exercises on Language

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1 Comparative adjectives

1. The ostrich can run .... than the leopards.
   a. faster b. fast c. fastest d. the fastest
2. The blue whale is bigger .... the whale shark.
   a. that b. than c. then d. the
3. The whale shark is .... than the blue whale.
   a. small b. the smallest c. smaller d. smallest
4. The African elephant is .... than the Asian one.
   a. the biggest b. big c. biggest d. bigger
5. Ants are much .... than humans.
   a. strong b. stronger c. strongest d. the strong

2 Superlative adjectives

6. Chameleon is the .... reptile in the world.
   a. smallest b. small c. smaller d. smaller than
7. The .... bird is the ostrich.
   a. big b. bigger c. biggest d. bigger than
8. The .... bird is the bee hummingbird.
   a. smaller than b. smallest
   c. small d. smaller
9. The frog is .... smallest vertebrate.
   a. than b. there c. then d. the
10. The blue whale is the .... animal in the world.
    a. biggest b. bigger than c. big d. bigger
11. .... biggest animal on land is a mammal; the African elephant.
    a. The b. There c. Those d. These

3 Adverb of manner

12. Insects live in rainforests because they can find food ....
    a. easy b. easily c. easier d. easiest

13. Some spiders can hide very ....
    a. well b. wrong c. good d. slow

14. Salma walks .... She is tired.
    a. slow b. slowly c. quick d. quickly

15. Roqaya is .... She has a new dress.
    a. happy b. happily c. sad d. sadly

16. He calls me ....
    a. sad b. right c. loud d. loudly



17. Snails move very ....
    a. slow b. slowly c. slower d. slowest

Review on unit 3



General Revision on Vocabulary

Lesson 1

community	مجتمع	sports club	نادى رياضى
neighborhood	حى (مكان الإقامة)	citizenship	المواطنة
neighbors	جيران	work hard	يعمل بجد
mixture	مزيج (خليط)	behave	يتصرف
activities	أنشطة	kind	عطوف / طيب
society	مجتمع	fair way	طريقة عادلة
ideas	أفكار	civilization	حضارة
village	قرية	street	شارع
polite	مهذب	weather	الطقس
helpful	متعاون - مفيد	games	ألعاب
bike	دراجة	together	معًا - سويًا

Lesson 2

history	تاريخ	Lower Egypt	الوجه البحرى
ancient Egypt	مصر القديمة	Upper Egypt	الوجه القبلى
the Nile	نهر النيل	scribes	الكَتَبة
tombs	مقابر	hieroglyphs	اللغة الهيروغليفية
dynasties	سلالات	papyrus reeds	أعواد البردى
interesting	ممتع / شيق	sail	يبحر
separate	منفصل	powerful	قوى
area	منطقة / مساحة	Old Kingdom	مملكة قديمة
desert	صحراء	Middle Kingdom	مملكة وسطى
pharaoh	فرعون	New Kingdom	مملكة حديثة
unite	يوحد	Ptolemy dynasty	سلالة البطالمة
symbols	رموز	join	ينضم / يتصل

Lesson 3

Cairo	القاهرة	New Valley	الوادى الجديد
Giza	الجيزة	Red Sea	البحر الأحمر
Alexandria	الإسكندرية	Damietta	دمياط
Gharbia	الغربية	Kafr El Sheikh	كفر الشيخ
map	خريطة	natural	طبيعى
large cities	مدن كبرى	place	مكان / موقع
capital	عاصمة	popular	محبوب / مشهور
the countryside	الريف	water sports	رياضات مائية
finish	ينهى	the High Dam	السد العالى
governorate	محافظة	features	سمات / ملامح

Lesson 4

ney	ناى	drum	طبلة
qanun	قانون	oboe	أوبوا (آلة موسيقية تشبه المزمار)
rebaba	ربابة	violin	آلة الكمان
oud	عود	key	أساسى / جوهرى
traditional	تقليدى	type	نوع
folk music	موسيقى شعبية	string instrument	آلة موسيقية وترية
style	أسلوب	wind instrument	آلة نفخ
musician	موسيقار - موسيقى	Nubian music	موسيقى نوبية
Saidi music	موسيقى صعيدى	clapping	التصفيق
drumming	الطبل	singing	الغناء
jazz	موسيقى الجاز	Modern music	موسيقى حديثة
culture	ثقافة	Bedouin music	موسيقى بدوية

Lesson 5

folk dancing	الرقص الشعبى	costumes	أزياء خاصة
Nubian dancing	الرقص النوبى	simsimeya	آلة السمسمية
Raqs Assaya	الرقص بالعصا	Tahtib	التحطيب
colorful	ملون	patterns	أنماط
rhythm	قافية	fighting	قتال
famous	مشهور	wear	يرتدى
dancer	راقص	plain	سادة
stick	عصا	bright-colored	ذات ألوان زاهية
international	عالمى	Bedouin	بدوى
carefully	بعناية	description	وصف

Lesson 6

location	موقع	culture	ثقافة
geography	الجغرافيا	exhibition	معرض
history	التاريخ	tourist guide	مرشد / دليل سياحى
attractions	عناصر جذب	section	جزء - فقرة
entertainment	تسلية	brochure	كتيب / نشرة
mountain	جبل	traditional music	موسيقى تقليدية
market	سوق	heading	عنوان رئيسي
port	ميناء	Montazah Palace	قصر المنتزه
illustrate	يوضح / يبين	coastline	الخط الساحلى
Mediterranean Sea	البحر المتوسط	environment	البيئة

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

Lesson 1

in the same area	في نفس المنطقة	act in a way ...	يتصرف بطريقة ...
more than	أكثر من	good for	جيد بالنسبة لـ
for me	بالنسبة لي	close to	بالقرب من
part of	جزء من	look after	يعتني بـ
What is special about ... ?	ما المميز عن ... ؟	from different parts of	من أجزاء مختلفة من

Lesson 2

At first	في البداية	write down	يدون
the Pyramid of Djoser	الهرم المدرج للملك زوسر	work for the ruling dynasties	يعمل لدى السلالات المالكة
in about	في حوالي	write on stone	ينقش على الحجر
as far as	بقدر ما	made from	مصنوع من
rule for many years	يحكم لعدة سنوات	(be) died in ...	توفي في ...
flow through	يمر / يتدفق من خلال	live near the Nile	يعيش بالقرب من النيل
know so much about	يعرف الكثير عن	become powerful	يصبح ذو نفوذ/سلطة
at the time	في عصر/وقت	flow out to sea	تنساب/تتدفق إلى مياه البحر

Lesson 3

look at	ينظر إلى	find places on the map	يجد أماكن على الخريطة
next to the sea	بجانب / بجوار البحر		
go in = enter	يدخل	lots of = a lot of	الكثير من
go out	يخرج		

Lesson 4

talk about	يتحدث عن	mixed with	مختلط مع
such as	مثل	put ...... into	يضع بداخل
farther south	اقصى الجنوب	from other cultures	من ثقافات أخرى
the home of...	موطن لـ....		

Lesson 5

It is linked to	إنه مرتبط بـ	look like	يشبه
in special patterns	فى أنماط خاصة		

Lesson 6

in the past	فى الماضى	in the north of	فى شمال
play traditional music on	يعزف موسيقى تقليدية على	make paper from	يصنع ورق من

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular

Present		Past
believe	يؤمن/يصدِّق	believed
share	يشارك	shared
act	يؤدى/يفعل	acted
include	يشمل/يتضمن	included
start	يبدأ	started
flow	يتدفق	flowed
rule	يحكم	ruled
control	يتحكم	controlled
sail	يبحر	sailed
join	ينضم/يتصل	joined
die	يموت	died
step	يخطو	stepped
perform	يؤدى عرض	performed
link	يربط	linked
happen	يحدث	happened

Irregular

Present		Past
think	يعتقد/يفكر	thought
become	يصبح	became
build	يبنى	built
be	يكون	was/were
wear	يرتدى	wore
make	يصنع	made



General Exercises on Vocabulary

Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

1

neighborhood - community - club - mixture

A community is a group of people who live and work together in the same area. A community is more than your house, family, or your(1) .... A community is a (2)............. of people, places, activities, and ideas. My (3)............. includes my family, my friends, and my school.

2

museums - Scribes - hieroglyphs - dynasties

Egyptians in ancient Egypt used scribes to write down everything that happened. (1)............. were very important people. They worked for the ruling (2)............. . They wrote in (3)............. , which are pictures or symbols that can mean one word or many ideas.

3

port – place – capital – Governorate

I'm Hamza. I live in the Alexandria (1)............. . It's important because lots of ships sail in and out of its (2)............. . The city of Alexandria used to be the (3)............. city of Egypt.

4

violins - Saidi - oboe - drum

Egypt has lots of traditional folk music. There are different styles from different parts of the country. Folk music from Upper Egypt play (1)............. music. This type of music uses string instruments such as (2)............. , and wind instrument such as the (3)............. . Singing and drumming is also a key part of this music.



General Revision on Language



1 Demonstrative pronouns ضمائر الاشارة

Singular المفرد

تستخدم بمعنى هذا / هذه (للإشارة للمفرد القريب)	→	This	is	a red T-shirt.
تستخدم بمعنى ذلك / تلك (للإشارة للمفرد البعيد)	→	That		a camera.

ex. - This is a book.



- That is a book.



Plural الجمع

تستخدم بمعنى هؤلاء (للاشارة للجمع القريب)	→	These	are	nice sunglasses.
تستخدم بمعنى أولئك (للاشارة للجمع البعيد)	→	Those		brown jackets.

ex. - These are books.



- Those are books.



2 Possessive Pronouns ضمائر الملكية

Subject pronouns ضمائر الفاعل		Possessive adjectives صفات الملكية		Possessive pronouns ضمائر الملكية	
تستخدم قبل الفعل		تستخدم قبل الاسم المملوك		تستخدم بدلًا من صفات الملكية والمملوك معًا ولا يأتي بعدها اسم	
I	أنا	my	ملكي	mine	ملكي
You	أنت/أنتم/أنتن	your	ملكك/ملككم	yours	ملكك / ملككم
He	هو	his	ملكه	his	ملكه
She	هي	her	+ noun ملكها	hers	ملكها
We	نحن	our	ملكنا	ours	ملكنا
They	هم	their	ملكهم	theirs	ملكهم
It	هو/هي لغير العاقل	its	ملكه/ملكها (لغير العاقل)	—	—

 تستخدم ضمائر الملكية للتعبير عن ملكية شخص أو أشخاص لشئ معين.

ex. - This book is mine. هذا الكتاب ملكى.



- This umbrella is hers. هذه الشمسية ملكها.



ضمائر الملكية غالبًا ما تأتى فى نهاية الجملة.

ex. That ice cream is mine! It isn't yours.



هذا الآيس كريم ملكى! إنه ليس ملكك.



لا نستخدم اسم (noun) بعد ضمائر الملكية.

ex. - This is my bag. It's mine. هذه حقيبتى. إنها ملكى.



- That is his shirt. It's his. ذلك قميصه. إنه ملكه.

3 The past simple tense زمن الماضى البسيط

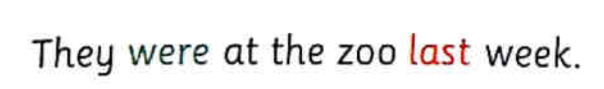
A Verb to (Be) in the Past Simple Tense

الفعل "يكون" فى زمن الماضى البسيط



I / He / she / It / اسم مفرد + was
They / You / we/ اسم جمع + were

Rami was at the Pyramids yesterday.



She was at home two hours ago.



They were at the zoo last week.



I / He / She / It / اسم مفرد + was not = wasn't
They / you / we/ اسم جمع + were not = weren't



They weren't at the hospital.



She wasn't at home.

وتستخدم هذه الكلمات "... ago / yesterday / last ..." للدلالة على زمن الماضى البسيط.

B The Past Simple Tense with "Regular verbs"

زمن الماضى البسيط مع الأفعال المنتظمة.

Usage

يستخدم زمن الماضى البسيط للتعبير عن حدث تم وإنتهى فى الماضى.

Subject الفاعل + inf. مصدر الفعل + (ed / d / ied)



- They listened to stories.



- My mother cooked breakfast.



Most verbs Add - ed	watch → watched look → looked	• معظم الأفعال المنتظمة يضاف إليها (ed).
Verbs that end in vowel + consonant Double consonant + ed	drop → dropped	• الأفعال التى تنتهى بحرف ساكن مسبوق بحرف متحرك واحد يضاعف الحرف الساكن الأخير ثم يضاف إلى الفعل (ed).
Verbs that end in e Add - d	bake → baked close → closed	• الأفعال التى تنتهى بـ (e) يضاف إليها (d) فقط.
Verbs that end in consonant + y Change (y) to (i) and add - ed	study → studied	• الأفعال التى تنتهى بـ(y) قبلها حرف ساكن نحذف الـ (y) ويضاف إلى الفعل(ied).
Verbs that end in vowel + y Add - ed	play → played	• الأفعال التى تنتهى بـ(y)قبلها حرف متحرك (a - e - i - o - u) يضاف إليها (ed).

C The Past Simple Tense with "Irregular verbs"

زمن الماضى البسيط مع الأفعال غير المنتظمة.

Formation

يتكون من التصريف الثانى للفعل غير المنتظم (يحفظ كما هو).

Meaning	Present	Past
يشرب	drink →	drank
يرى	see →	saw
يأكل	eat →	ate
يملك/ يتناول	have →	had

Meaning	Present	Past
يفوز	win →	won
يشترى	buy →	bought
يذهب	go →	went
يأخذ	take →	took

Subject الفاعل + التصريف الثانى للفعل + تكملة الجملة.



They **saw** a show.
↓
التصريف الثانى للفعل



She **took** pictures.
↓
التصريف الثانى للفعل



I / He / She / It /They / You / we	+	did not (didn't)	+	مصدر الفعل (inf.)

ex. - She didn't watch the sunrise.
- She didn't clean the tent.
- She didn't see the show.



Did	I / he / she / it / you / we / they	+	مصدر الفعل (inf.)	+	باقي السؤال	?

Short answers الإجابات المختصرة

Yes,	+	I / he / she / it / you / we / they	+	did.	عند الإثبات
No,				didn't.	عند النفى

ex. - Did you listen to stories ? - Yes, I did.
- Did she clean the tent ? - No, she didn't.

⭐ لاحظ أن عند السؤال بـ "هل ... ؟" باستخدام (Did) يكون الفعل فى المصدر (inf.).

Key words من الكلمات الدالة على زمن الماضى البسيط

in the past	في الماضي
(فترة زمنية) + ago	منذ
yesterday	أمس





General Exercises on Language

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1 Demonstrative Pronouns

1. .... bottle which is over there is empty.
   a. Those b. It c. That d. These

2. Those kids .... playing in the garden.
   a. do b. is c. are d. have

3. .... are my pencils.
   a. This b. That c. The d. These

4. My father bought .... toys for me.
   a. that b. those c. this d. then

5. .... book is expensive.
   a. This b. These c. It d. Those

6. .... cat is small.
   a. There b. These c. Those d. That

2 Possessive Pronouns

7. It's your house. It's ....
   a. ours b. our c. your d. yours

8. This is Aliaa's bag. It is ....
   a. her b. his c. hers d. theirs

9. These shoes belong to Mazen. They are ....
   a. his b. hers c. yours d. mine

10. This is my car. It's ....
    a. his b. yours c. I d. mine

11. This is Leen's bag. It's ....
    a. hers b. theirs c. ours d. her

12. These are Adam's shoes. They're ....
a. theirs b. hers c. his d. he

13. It's Fares and Mustafa's neighborhood. It's ....
a. yours b. their c. hers d. theirs

14. They're Aya's running shoes. They're ....
a. their b. theirs c. her d. hers

15. This is my book. It's ....
a. I b. mine c. yours d. hers

16. This is our sports club. It's ....
a. ours b. yours c. our d. your

17. Those are Reem's clothes. They're ....
a. her b. hers c. she d. his

3 Past Simple Tense

18. Not everyone in ancient Egypt .... to read and write.
a. learns b. learned c. learn d. learning

19. Scribes .... with reed brushes and ink in the past.
a. writing b. writes c. write d. wrote

20. .... she play the piano ? - Yes, she did.
a. Has b. Does c. Did d. Do

21. She .... to the zoo yesterday.
a. go b. went c. goes d. going

22. They .... hieroglyphs and hieratic scripts in the past.
a. studied b. study c. studies d. to study

23. People .... to live near the Nile in 7000 BCE.
a. starting b. started c. start d. starts

24. He .... at school yesterday.
a. is b. was c. did d. were

25. You .... happy yesterday.
a. were b. was c. is d. are

Review on unit 4



General Revision on Vocabulary

Lesson 1

city	مدينة كبيرة	pedestrian	مُشاة
village	قرية	congestion	ازدحام
densely populated	ذات كثافة سكانية عالية	isolated	معزول
sparsely populated	ذات كثافة سكانية منخفضة	sparse	ضئيل / قليل
rural	قروي / ريفي	dense	كثيف / كثير
urban	حضري / مدني	inhabitants	السكان
population	تعداد السكان	close	قريب

Lesson 2

goose	أوزة	woman	سيدة
buffalo	جاموسة	child	طفل
sheep	خروف	person	شخص
man	رجل	coal	فحم
onion	بصلة	aluminium	ألومنيوم
tomato	ثمرة طماطم	copper	نحاس
potato	ثمرة بطاطس	lucky	محظوظ
date	تمرة	interview	مقابلة رسمية
natural resources	المصادر الطبيعية	river	نهر
street	شارع	develop	يتوسع - يطور

Lesson 3

warp	خيوط	wool	صوف
yarn	خيط / غزل	carpet	سجادة
spin	يغزل / ينسج	dye	صبغة / يصبغ
weave	ينسج	artisans	حرفيون

craft	حرفة / مهارة	spun cotton	القطن المنسوج
synthetic	صناعى - مصطنع	machine	ماكينة / آلة
guide	يرشد / مرشد	loom	نول (اسم آلة)
dark colors	ألوان داكنة	geometric patterns	أشكال هندسية
skill	مهارة	traditional	تقليدى
workshop	ورشة عمل	structure	تركيب - أساس

Lesson 4

goslings	صغار الأوز	sack	كيس
potter	صانع الخزف - فخارى	loaf	رغيف عيش
pots	أوانى	in a group of	فى مجموعة مكونة من
work on a project	ينفذ مشروع	movie	فيلم
reading	قراءة	speaking	تحدث
left	تَرك - تَبقى	produce	ينتج

Lesson 5

port	ميناء	transportation	وسائل المواصلات (النقل)
neighborhood	حى	location	موقع
industry	صناعة	services	خدمات
apartment	شقة	either	أيضًا
model	نموذج	hope	يأمل - يتمنى
conclusion	خاتمة	introduction	مقدمة
wherever	أينما - فى أى مكان	several	عديد

Lesson 6

smart	ذكى	spaces	مساحات
growth	نمو	enjoy	يستمتع
planners	مخططين	government offices	مكاتب حكومية
plan	يخطط - خطة	public transportation	المواصلات العامة

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

Lesson 1

tell about	يخبر عن	be very careful	كن حذر جدًا
a very busy place	مكان مزدحم جدًا	close to	قريب من

Lesson 2

on the Nile	على شاطئ النيل	half of	منتصف
of course	بالطبع	used to + (inf.)	اعتاد أن
have in common	لديهم نقاط مشتركة	grown up	بالغ - راشد

Lesson 3

make by hand	يصنع يدويًا	pick out	يختار / يلتقط
the same	مطابق - مماثل	make it into	يصنعوا منه / يحولوا إلى

Lesson 5

One of my favorite	واحد من ..... المفضلة لدى	as you might know	كما قد تعلم

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular

Present		Past
develop	يتوسع - يطور	developed
decorate	يزين	decorated
dry	يجفف	dried
boil	يغلي	boiled
wonder	يتساءل	wondered

Irregular

Present		Past
grow	يزرع	grew
have / has	يملك	had
learn	يتعلم	learnt
take	يأخذ	took
make	يصنع	made
sell	يبيع	sold



General Exercises on Vocabulary

Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

1

inhabitants - isolated - metropolitan - congestion

I live in Greater Cairo. It's a (1)............. area and densely populated. There are more than 20 million (2)............. , so it's a very busy place. There are a lot of cars so there's also (3)............. . If you are a pedestrian, you have to be very careful.

2

buffaloes – village – tomatoes - donkey

My name's Amr. I live in a small (1)............. on the Nile. My dad's a farmer. He grows (2)............. , potatoes, dates, and onions. We have some animals too. There are six sheep and two (3)............. . There are some donkeys in my village, but my family doesn't have one now.

3

die - learned - wool - dye

My grandma and I like the natural vegetable dyes as they are more traditional. So, now I guess you're wondering how they (1)............. the wool. Well, I (2)............. that different plants and roots are first grown in a rural village. Then, they use these plants and roots to make beautiful dyes to color the (3)............. .

4

wherever - favorite - however - services

I like my city. We have a lot of (1)............. . We have schools, hospitals, and lots of shops where you can buy anything you need. We can also use the bus to go (2)............. we want. One of my (3)............. places is Montaza Palace. There are beautiful gardens that I sometimes visit with my family.



General Revision on Language



Plural صيغة الجمع

1 Regular plural الجمع المنتظم

Noun الاسم	Plural الجمع	Examples أمثلة
Most nouns معظم الأسماء	يضاف لها (s)	girl → girls cat → cats
Nouns end in (z / ss / x / o / sh / ch)	يضاف لها (es)	fox → foxes tomato → tomatoes
Nouns end in (vowel + o)	هناك أسماء تنتهي بحرف (o) قبله حرف متحرك ويضاف لها (s)	zoo → zoos radio → radios
Nouns end in (consonant + y)	الأسماء المنتهية بحرف (y) قبله ساكن، تحذف (y) ويضاف (ies)	city → cities baby → babies family → families
Nouns end in – f	الأسماء المنتهية بحرف (f) يضاف لها (ves) وتحذف (f)	shelf → shelves scarf → scarves

2 Irregular plural الجمع الغير منتظم

⭐ We don't add –s or –es but we keep them as they are.

- لا نضيف لها (s أو es) ولكنها تحفظ كما هي.

Word	Plural	Word	Plural
a woman	women	a tooth	teeth
a goose	geese	a foot	feet
a man	men	an ox	oxen
a child	children	a mouse	mice
a fish	fish	a person	people
a sheep	sheep		



The conjunctions الروابط

1 After بعد

ex. - After I get up, I wash my face.

2 Before قبل

ex. - They wash the wool before they can use it.

3 So that لكى

so that + الغرض أو السبب

ex. - Salma studies hard so that she can get high marks.

4 Although على الرغم من

- لربط فكرتين متناقضتين.

ex. - Although he is strong, he can't lift the box.

5 Even though رغم أن

- لربط فكرتين متناقضتين.

ex. - I think the bright colors are the most beautiful ones even though some people prefer dark colors.

6 While بينما / أثناء

- لربط حدثان فى نفس التوقيت.

ex. - The guide explained how the artisans make the carpets while we watched them weave.

7 Every time كل مرة

ex. - Every time I look at it, I remember how much work and skill it takes to make a carpet.

8 As soon as بمجرد أن

- لربط فكرتين أو حدثين متتاليتين.

ex. - As soon as Ahmed returned home, he had his lunch.



General Exercises on Language

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1 Plural

1. Sharks have sharp ....
   a. tooth b. teeth c. tail d. fin
2. Many .... like fries.
   a. people b. child c. adult d. person
3. My mother has four ....
   a. daughter b. children c. child d. baby
4. My .... hurt.
   a. feet b. foot c. tooth d. eye
5. Cats like to catch ....
   a. mice b. goose c. duck d. mouth
6. Three .... are waiting in line.
   a. woman b. women c. man d. child
7. The farmers have twelve ....
   a. cow b. goat c. sheep d. a sheep

2 The conjunctions

8. .... the yarn is dry, they can use it to weave a carpet.
   a. Before b. After c. As soon as d. So that
9. Malak studies hard .... she can get high marks.
   a. even though b. so that c. every time d. while
10. .... the artisans can weave the carpets, they have to make the warp.
   a. As soon as b. Before c. While d. After
11. I write my lesson .... the teacher is talking.
   a. so that b. after c. before d. while
12. .... I look at it, I remember how much work and skill it takes to make a carpet.
   a. So b. But c. Even though d. Every time

13. I have lunch .... I get home from school.
   a. as soon as   b. while   c. so   d. so that
14. I understand what I learned .... I do my homework.
   a. before   b. while   c. so that   d. even though
15. They have to clean, wash and dry the wool .... they can use it.
   a. even though   b. so   c. before   d. after
16. She was studying .... she was sick.
   a. while   b. although   c. every time   d. before
17. .... I went home, I took a shower.
   a. Before   b. So that   c. While   d. As soon as

Review on unit 5



General Revision on Vocabulary

Lesson 1

natural resources	مصادر طبيعية	petroleum	بترول
wood	خشب	water	مياه
soil	تربة زراعية	plastic	بلاستيك
stone	حجر	renewable	متجدد
metal	معدن	non-renewable	غير متجدد
mineral	صلب / معدن	door handle	مقبض الباب
material	مادة خام	desk	مكتب
purpose	غرض	silver	فضة
frame	إطار	common	شائع
bridge	كوبري	window	شباك
forest	غابة	gold	ذهب

Lesson 2

crude oil well	بئر بترول خام	create	يولد / ينتج
fossil	حفرية	global warming	الاحتباس الحرارى
natural gas	غاز طبيعى	climate change	تغيير المناخ
coal	فحم	greenhouse gases	غازات الاحتباس الحرارى
fuel	وقود	fossil fuel	الوقود الحفرى
energy	طاقة	heat	حرارة
geologist	عالم چيولوجي	power	طاقة
dinosaur	ديناصور	relax	يسترخى
dishes	أطباق	cry	يبكى - يصرخ
catch	يلحق	kiss	يُقبّل

Lesson 3

wave power	طاقة الأمواج	solar power	الطاقة الشمسية
wind power	طاقة الرياح	tidal power	قوة المد والجزر
solar panels	ألواح شمسية	electrical energy	طاقة كهربائية
mechanical energy	طاقة ميكانيكية	wind	رياح
dusty	ملئ بالغبار	trip	رحلة
solar farms	مزارع الطاقة الشمسية	space	مساحة
electricity	كهرباء	workers	عمال
oil	بترول - زيت	soon	لاحقًا / قريبًا
gas	غاز	collect	يجمع
sunny	مشمس	perfect	مثالى
sunshine	أشعة الشمس	rocks	صخور

Lesson 4

experience	خبرة	promotion	ترقية
talent	موهبة	train	يدرب
skill	مهارة	interview	مقابلة شخصية
science	علوم	training	التدريب
project	مشروع	practice	الممارسة
nervous	عصبى	knowledge	المعرفة
both	كلاهما	engineer	مهندس
twins	توأم	computer programming	برمجة الحاسب الآلى
ability	القدرة	Ras Ghareb	رأس غارب (مدينة ساحلية)
wind turbine	توربينات رياح	How big ... ?	كم حجم ... ؟
presentation	عرض / تقديم	career	مهنة

Lesson 5

responsible	مسئول	letter	خطاب
collaborate	يتعاون	formal	رسمى
solve problems	يحل المشكلات	sender	المرسل
communicate	يتواصل	introduction	مقدمة

date	تاريخ	signature	إمضاء / توقيع
application	تطبيق / طلب	reliable	جدير بالثقة
advertisement	إعلان	brainstorm	عصف ذهنى
online	عبر الإنترنت	purpose	غرض
sincerely	بإخلاص	hiring engineers	توظيف مهندسين
member	عضو	creative	مبدع
success	نجاح	teamwork	فريق عمل
point	نقطة	problem solver	حلال المشكلة
sensitive	حساس	upset	منزعج
polite	مهذب	flexible	مرن

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

Lesson 1

for different purposes	لأغراض مختلفة	part of	جزء من
look around	يتجول	at lunch	فى وجبة الغداء
made of	مصنوع من (المادة الخام لا تتغير بعد التصنيع)	made from	مصنوع من (المادة الخام تتغير بعد التصنيع)
That's right !	هذا صحيح !	made up of	يتألف من/يتكون من
come from	يأتى من	run out	ينفذ / يُستهلك / ينتهى

Lesson 2

turn into	يتحول إلى	make dinner	يعد وجبة العشاء
wake up for	يستيقظ لأجل	watch a movie	يشاهد فيلم
eat breakfast	يتناول وجبة الإفطار	go to bed	يذهب إلى الفراش
brush teeth	ينظف الدسنان بالفرشاة	goodnight	تصبح على خير
go to school	يذهب إلى المدرسة	on Fridays	فى أيام الجمعة
catch the bus	يلحق بالأتوبيس	drink a lot of water	يشرب الكثير من الماء
go home	يذهب للمنزل	finish exercises	ينهي التدريبات
do homework	يؤدى الواجب المدرسى	raise his hand	يقوم برفع يده

Lesson 3

most of the time	معظم الوقت	make electricity	ينتج كهرباء
ask a question	يسأل سؤال	to learn more about	للتعلم أكثر عن
put hands up	يرفع اليد	the perfect place	المكان المثالى
change from one kind to another	يتغير من نوع إلى آخر	easy to look after	سهل الاعتناء به

Lesson 4

do a science project on	يقوم بمشروع علمى عن	get a higher position	يحصل على ترقية / مكانة أعلى
neither of	لا أحد من	do a job	يقوم بوظيفة
each of	كلاً من	do naturally	يقوم بأداء شئ بشكل طبيعى
at home	بالمنزل	apply to	يقدم طلبًا لـ
at the end of	فى نهاية	get a promotion	يحصل على ترقية
all of the different jobs	كل الوظائف المختلفة	train for	يتدرب لمدة

Lesson 5

Be responsible !	كن مسئولاً !	get worried about	يصبح قلقًا بشأن
Have a positive attitude.	كن ذو اتجاه إيجابى.	agree on the best solution	يوافق على أفضل حل
work on a team	يعمل فى فريق	get upset	ينزعج
share ideas with	يشارك الأفكار مع	stay calm	ابق هادئ
get the best results	يحصل على أفضل النتائج	show respect	يظهر الإحترام
make sure	يتأكد	interested in	مهتم بـ / مستمتع بـ
rely on	يعتمد على	at any time from	فى أى وقت من
listen to others' ideas	يستمع إلى أفكار الآخرين	What type of job is it for ?	ما نوع هذه المهنة ؟
ask for help	يطلب المساعدة	apply for the job	يتقدم بطلب لوظيفة
instead of	بدلًا من	look forward to	يتطلع إلى

Lesson 6

It's time for	إنه الوقت لـ - حان وقت	decide to	يقرر أن
design a vehicle for	يصمم مركبة (وسيلة مواصلات) لـ	run on	يعمل بواسطة
		at least	على الأقل
such as	مثل	transfer of energy	تحول الطاقة

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular

Present		Past
construct	يبنى / ينشئ	constructed
replace	يستبدل	replaced
guess	يخمن	guessed
cry	يبكى	cried
relax	يسترخى	relaxed
create	يولد / ينتج	created
fix	يصلح	fixed
kiss	يُقبل	kissed
brush	ينظف بالفرشاة	brushed
dry	يجفف	dried
wash	يغسل	washed
watch	يشاهد	watched
raise	يربى	raised
turn	يحوِّل	turned
present	يقدم	presented
practice	يمارس	practiced
remember	يتذكر	remembered
share	يشارك	shared
complete	يكمل	completed
rely on	يعتمد / يثق	relied on
admit	يعترف	admitted
travel	يسافر	traveled
design	يصمم	designed
invent	يخترع - يبتكر	invented
explain	يشرح	explained

Irregular

Present		Past
find	يجد	found
get	يحصل على	got
grow	يزرع	grew
fly	يطير	flew
catch	يلحق	caught
wake up	يستيقظ	woke up
do	يفعل	did
go	يذهب	went
be	يكون	was - were
see	يرى	saw
build	يبنى	built
draw	يرسم	drew
forget	ينسى	forgot
teach	يُدرس	taught
say	يقول	said
feel	يشعر	felt
meet	يتقابل	met
become	يصبح	became



General Exercises on Vocabulary

★ Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

1

Meat - non-renewable - renewable - raise

Renewable resources can be replaced when they run out. So, potatoes are a (1)............. resource because we can grow more. (2)............. is also a renewable resource because farmers can (3)............. more animals for you to eat. Wood is renewable, too.

2

goes - teeth - eats - face

Gameela wakes up for school at 7 o'clock. First, she washes her face and brushes her (1).............. Then, she (2)............. breakfast. She (3)............. to school at 7:30.

3

sunshine - desert - hot - sand

Seleem walks to school every day. The road is next to the desert. It is usually (1)............., sunny and dusty on the road. Last year, there was nothing in the (2)............. . Sometimes Seleem saw a lizard, but most of the time, he just saw rocks and (3)............. .

4

sunlight - electrical - energy - rocks

We can't destroy energy. We can only change it from one kind of (1)............. to another kind. This is called transfer of energy. When we use solar panels to collect (2)............., the solar energy is turned into (3)............. energy.

General Revision on Language

1 The third person present singular verbs.

استخدام الأفعال مع ضمائر الفاعل الغائب المفردة فى زمن المضارع.

التصريف الأول للفعل مضافًا له "s" أو "es" أو "ies" :

He /She / It اسم مفرد (Ali)/	+	(inf.) مصدر الفعل	+	s → ‎• معظم الأفعال يضاف لها (s) or es → ‎• أما التى تنتهى بـ (sh , ch ss , x , o , z) يضاف لها (es)

ex. -Youssef's dad is a mechanic. He fixes cars.
Our cat drinks a lot of water when it's hot out.

ملاحظات :

الفعل المنتهى بـ (y) قبله حرف ساكن يضاف له (ies) مع حذف (y) :

ex. - The baby cries when she's hungry.

الفعل الذى ينتهى بـ (y) قبله حرف متحرك (a - e - i - o - u) يضاف له (s):

ex. - He plays volleyball every Friday.

الفعل (have) لا يضاف له s ولكن مع (He - She - It) نستخدم (has).

ex. - He has brown hair.

Usage الاستخدام

We use present simple to talk about :

نستخدم المضارع البسيط للتحدث عن:

1. Facts حقائق

ex. - The mechanic fixes cars.

2. Timetables جداول المواعيد

ex. - School finishes at 2 o'clock.

3. Repeated actions or habits أحداث متكررة أو عادات

ex. - She visits her grandfather on Fridays.

2 Pronouns and antecedents

1 Pronouns

الضمائر

Subject Pronouns	Object Pronouns	Possessive Adjectives	Possessive Pronouns
I	me	my	mine
You	you	your	yours
He	him	his	his
She	her	her	hers
It	it	its	–
We	us	our	ours
You	you	your	yours
They	them	their	theirs

2 Antecedents

السوابق

Antecedent is the thing represented by a pronoun.

- السابقة هى الشىء الذى يعيد تقديمه الضمير.

The antecedent of a pronoun is a noun.

- السابقة للضمير هى الاسم.

Mona presented her project.



Rules of using antecedents and pronouns

قواعد استخدام السابقات والضمائر

When the noun is a boy (He) → We use (his)

When the noun is a girl (She) → We use (her)

When it isn't important, or we don't know if the noun is a boy or a girl (someone / person) → We use (their)



General Exercises on Language

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1 The third person present singular verbs

1. My family .... to visit my grandparents on Fridays.
   a. to go b. goes c. going d. went
2. She .... her mom and dad.
   a. kiss b. kissing c. kisses d. were kissing
3. She .... fruits and vegetables to be healthy.
   a. eat b. eats c. eating d. were eating
4. My father .... to fix the broken vase.
   a. trying b. try c. have tried d. tries
5. Our cat .... a lot of water when it's hot.
   a. am drinking b. drinking c. drink d. drinks
6. Amr .... his hands before eating.
   a. wash b. washing
   c. washes d. have washed
7. She .... me the book.
   a. passes b. passing c. are passing d. pass
8. The baby .... when she's hungry.
   a. cry b. crying c. had cried d. cries
9. Talia .... her hand when she finishes her exercises.
   a. raise b. raises c. raising d. are raising
10. She .... up for school at 7 o'clock.
    a. waking b. wake c. wakes d. woke
11. His dad is a mechanic. He .... cars.
    a. fix b. fixes c. fixing d. to fix
12. She .... the bus to go home.
    a. catch b. catches c. catching d. are catching

2 Pronouns and antecedents

13. Lara did .... science project on global warming.
    a. ours b. yours c. her d. hers
14. You need to see .... dentist twice a year.
    a. your b. their c. his d. her
15. He went to see .... favorite basketball team.
    a. her b. his c. you d. my
16. Sama drank .... coffee.
    a. her b. hers c. his d. its
17. At the end of the presentation, someone raised .... hand to ask a question.
    a. your b. their c. our d. my
18. Neither of the boys has done .... homework.
    a. our b. your c. his d. their
19. One of my uncles has changed .... address.
    a. his b. mine c. their d. your
20. If someone sees a crime, ... should report the police.
    a. he b. we c. you d. I
21. Workers who want to succeed should do all of .... best.
    a. your b. their c. its d. his
22. She presented .... project to the class.
    a. her b. his c. our d. your
23. Sara says that .... likes to read.
    a. them b. she c. their d. your
24. Her friends ask her to bake cakes for ....
    a. it b. your c. him d. them
25. My mother ate .... salad for dinner.
    a. his b. she c. her d. its

Review on unit 6



General Revision on Vocabulary

Lesson 1

airplane	طائرة	taxi	سيارة أجرة
ship	سفينة	bus	أتوبيس
boat	قارب	train	قطار
river ferry	عبّارة نهرية	desert town	مدينة صحراوية
road	طريق	government	الحكومة
pipe	ماسورة	ancient Egyptians	القدماء المصريين
electric	كهربى	deep	عميق
rail	قضيب سكة حديد	wide	عريض
air	هواء	fun	مرح / ممتع
the Suez Canal	قناة السويس	travel	يسافر

Lesson 2

robot	إنسان آلى	Mars	كوكب المريخ
future	مستقبل	vacation	أجازة
flying taxi	التاكسى الطائر	adult	بالغ - راشد
flying car	السيارة الطائرة	solar energy	الطاقة الشمسية
self-driving car	سيارة ذاتية القيادة	moon	القمر
petroleum	بترول	flight	رحلة جوية
drive	يقود	pipeline	خط أنابيب
planet	كوكب	humans	البشر

Lesson 3

tech = technology	تكنولوجيا	user's excitement	حماس المستخدم
specific	محدد / معين	search engine	محرك البحث
search	بحث / يبحث	option	اختيار
designer	مصمم	podcast	نشرة صوتية

diagram	رسم بيانى	create	ينتج - يبدع
brainstorm	عصف ذهنى	browser	متصفح الإنترنت
positive	إيجابى	ignore	يتجاهل
experience	خبرة	ads	إعلانات
real	حقيقى	safe	آمن
autonomous machine	آلة ذاتية التحكم	search box	صندوق البحث
results	نتائج	designer	مصمم
robotic engineer	مهندس أجهزة إنسان آلى	VR headset	نظارات الواقع الافتراضى

Lesson 4

password	كلمة مرور	password code	شفرة لكلمة المرور
passphrase	عبارة المرور	infographic passcode	مخطط بيانى لشفرة المرور
personal	شخصى	space	مسافة
obvious	ملحوظ	safer	أكثر أمان
series	تسلسل	stronger	أقوى
characters	رموز - شخصيات	capital letters	حروف كبيرة
the same	نفس الشئ	amazing	مدهش
account	حساب	regular	عادى
idea	فكرة	pet	حيوان أليف
pretend	زائف - يتظاهر	way	طريقة

Lesson 5

container	حاوية	wave	موجة
ship's captain	قبطان السفينة	past	ماضى
the young entrepreneurs	رواد أعمال الشباب	toys	ألعاب أطفال
relaxing	استرخاء	land	أرض يابسة
huge	ضخم	straight	فى خط مستقيم - مباشرة
agree	يوافق		

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

Lesson 1

get water from يحصل على المياه من ...	take a river ferry يستقل / يركب معدية فى النهر
be on a train / bus يكون على متن القطار / الأتوبيس	travel on an airplane / a ship يسافر فى طائرة / سفينة

Lesson 2

travel to ...... for ...... يسافر إلى ...... من أجل	in the future فى المستقبل
	on Mars على كوكب المريخ
by the window بجانب النافذة	high-speed train قطار سريع

Lesson 3

short for اختصار لـ ...	create positive experiences يبدع / يُكوّن خبرات إيجابية
in the middle فى المنتصف	

Lesson 4

create strong password ينشئ كلمة مرور قوية	mean something for you لديها معنى بالنسبة لك
you like best أكثر ما تحبه	series of numbers تسلسل أرقام
first of all قبل كل شئ	

Lesson 5

came back onto the land عاد إلى اليابسة	when it went through .. عندما مرت من خلال
a relaxing job وظيفة مريحة	going along .. على إمتداد ..
for a long time لمدة طويلة	

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular

Present		Past
travel	يسافر	traveled
use	يستخدم	used
cry	يبكى - يصرخ	cried
transport	ينقل	transported
look	ينظر	looked
love	يحب	loved
watch	يشاهد	watched
like	يحب	liked
wait	ينتظر	waited
ask	يسأل	asked
answer	يجيب	answered
laugh	يضحك	laughed

Irregular

Present		Past
be	يكون	was/were
take	يستقل - يأخذ	took
drive	يقود	drove
buy	يشترى	bought
come	يأتى	came
say	يقول	said
go	يذهب	went
has-have	يمتلك	had



General Exercises on Vocabulary

Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

1

characters - means - learns - numbers

To create a password sentence, use the first letter of each word Mbpcin B. Think of a sentence that (1)............ something for you. Add (2)............ and (3)............ you can remember.

2

windy - captain - ship - sunny

Working on a ship is very hard work. The (1)............ has to drive the huge ship for a long time. The (2)............ has to be straight. Sometimes it is very difficult when it is (3)............ .

3

Canal - ship - laughed - watched

Heba loved watching the ships. She often (1)............ them with her friends. She liked to think about where the (2)............ came from. She went with her father to the side of the Suez (3)............ . It was fun.



General Revision on Language

Making predictions about the future.
عمل تنبؤات في المستقبل.



Subj. + will ('ll) + inf.

ex. - He will travel to Alexandria next month.
- They will buy a self-driving car next year.

Note : will = 'll



Subj. + will not (won't) + inf.

ex. - Robots won't drive trains next year.
- He won't travel on a train tomorrow.



Note : will not = won't



A Yes / No question - السؤال بـ "هل"

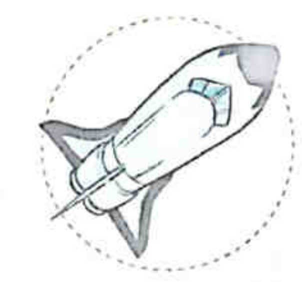
Will + subj. + inf. ?

Affirmative short answer : Yes, subj. + will.
Negative short answer : No, subj. + won't.

ex. - Will you travel to the Moon one day?
* Yes, I will.
* No, I won't.

B Wh- question. السؤال بكلمة استفهام.

Wh- word + will + subj. + inf. ?



ex. - How will you travel to France ?
I will travel on an airplane.
- What will you do when you're an adult ?
I will travel to the Moon.

Key words

tomorrow	غداً	in the future	في المستقبل
next	التالي	in 2025, 2026, ...	في عام ٢٠٢٥، ٢٠٢٦، ....

Read and identify these contractions.

اقرأ وتعرف على هذه الإختصارات.

1. I will → I'll	4. We will → We'll
2. He will → He'll	5. They will → They'll
3. She will → She'll	6. You will not → You won't

Note

تستخدم (How) للسؤال عن وسيلة المواصلات.

- How will you travel to Aswan ? - On a river ferry. / - By train.



General Exercises on Language

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

Making predictions about the future

1. .... people live on the Moon one day ?
a. Won't b. Will c. Were d. Did

2. My parents .... buy a self-driving car next year.
a. do b. are c. won't d. were

3. .... they have flying car in the future ? - Yes, they will.
a. Have b. Are c. Will d. Do

4. I will .... a flying taxi to school.
a. takes b. took c. taken d. take

5. .... astronauts travel to Mars one day ?
a. Do b. Will c. Are d. Were

6. Will you .... to the Moon one day ?
a. travel b. traveled c. travels d. traveling

7. How will you .... to the school ?
a. going b. goes c. go d. gone

8. He .... arrive on time.
a. has b. is c. will d. does

9. We will .... what your father says.
a. see b. sees c. to see d. seeing

10. Will you .... to the club on Saturday ?
a. going b. go c. went d. to go

11. .... they use robots in the future ? - Yes, they will.
a. Do b. Are c. Were d. Will

12. .... will you travel to Luxor ? - By train.
a. When b. What c. How d. Where

13. People will .... to Mars in 2052.
a. travel b. travels c. traveled d. traveling

14. It will .... tomorrow.
a. snows b. snow c. snowing d. to snow

15. I .... travel to Luxor next year.
a. are b. was c. do d. will

16. He won't .... trains next year.
a. drove b. driving c. drives d. drive



General Exercises on Khayameya summer story with Model Answers تدريبات على القصة المقررة بإجابتها النموذجية

1 Read and write T (True) or F (False).

	T	F
1. Grandpa designs and measures the patterns.	◯	◯
2. Grandpa doesn't like his job.	◯	◯
3. Grandpa likes sewing lotus flowers and geometric patterns best.	◯	◯
4. Zeinab's friend Rasha is good at math.	◯	◯
5. Grandpa makes the patterns with five layers of cotton.	◯	◯
6. Zeinab had an idea that to call her friends so that they learn about sewing.	◯	◯
7. Grandpa's eyes are good now.	◯	◯
8. Rasha makes amazing art.	◯	◯
9. Grandpa likes his job.	◯	◯
10. Zeinab likes to learn sewing.	◯	◯
11. Grandpa welcomed people who wanted to learn.	◯	◯
12. Grandpa was sad when he taught people at Khayameya.	◯	◯
13. Grandpa wasn't one of the artisans.	◯	◯
14. Zeinab asked her mom to visit her Grandpa.	◯	◯
15. Zeinab is good at math.	◯	◯

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. It's difficult for Grandpa to work because of his ....
   a. hearing b. taste c. touch d. sight
2. Zeinab went to her grandpa by ....
   a. car b. bus c. train d. plane
3. The Khayameya School travels all the ....
   a. winter b. fall c. summer d. spring
4. Rasha is .... at math.
   a. good b. bad c. terrible d. horrible
5. They make the patterns with three .... of cotton.
   a. fiber b. layers c. cloth d. sheets
6. Zeinab had .... friends.
   a. tall b. bad c. clever d. terrible
7. The Khayameya design of flowers takes ....
   a. two weeks b. four months c. one year d. four days
8. Grandpa's design is made of thousands and thousands of small ....
   a. stitches b. stickers c. photos d. machines
9. When Grandpa was young, he wanted to be a/an ....
   a. singer b. engineer c. doctor d. pilot
10. Grandpa uses .... to do his work.
    a. machines b. hands c. animals d. people
11. Grandpa likes sewing patterns like ....
    a. foods b. animals c. birds d. reptiles
12. .... said "I wish I could sew and help you".
    a. Lobna b. Doha c. Rasha d. Zeinab
13. Grandpa was one of the best ....
    a. teachers b. artisans c. doctors d. dentists
14. Grandpa tells Zeinab that his .... are not good now.
    a. ears b. hands c. eyes d. head
15. Zeinab invites her four .... to join them.
    a. friends b. cousins c. sons d. uncles



Model Answer on Khayameya summer story

1 Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1	T	9	T
2	F	10	T
3	T	11	T
4	T	12	F
5	F	13	F
6	T	14	T
7	F	15	F
8	F		

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1	d. sight	9	b. engineer
2	c. train	10	b. hands
3	c. summer	11	c. birds
4	a. good	12	d. Zeinab
5	b. layers	13	b. artisans
6	c. clever	14	c. eyes
7	b. four months	15	a. friends
8	a. stitches		



Monthly Assessments

تقييمات شهرية

Sample test 1 on Units 1 & 2



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The biggest animal on land is a ....
   a. bird b. mammal c. fish d. reptile
2. The African elephant is .... than the Asian elephant.
   a. faster b. slower c. bigger d. smaller
3. The blue whale lives in the ....
   a. river b. lake c. sea d. stream
4. The blue whale can be up to .... meters long.
   a. 20 b. 30 c. 40 d. 60

2 Listen and complete :

1. Braille is a code for people who are ....
2. Braille has different combinations of ....
3. People who have difficulty seeing can use .... to read.
4. Braille was .... by Louis Braille.

3 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box.

types – vertebrates – backbone – liquid

Nourhan : How are you, Hamza ?
Hamza : Fine. I learned a lot of information from our lesson today.
Nourhan : What was it about ?
Hamza : It was about (1) ....
Nourhan : What are vertebrates ?
Hamza : They are animals with a (2) ....
Nourhan : How many types are there of vertebrates ?
Hamza : There are five different (3) ....

4 Read the following text and answer the questions below :

Our body has many systems that work at the same time. Our digestive system works when we eat and drink. We chew and swallow food, then it goes to the stomach. A special liquid changes the food into energy and nutrients that we need in our bodies. We use our respiratory system when we breathe in air through our nose and it goes to our lungs.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. When we chew, we use our ....
   a. noses b. teeth c. heads d. lungs
2. The main idea of the text is about ....
   a. food b. energy
   c. body systems d. special liquid

B. Answer the following questions :

3. What system do we use when we breathe ?
   ....
4. Where does food go after we swallow it ?
   ....

5 The reader

A Read and write T (True) or F (False) :

	T	F
1. Grandpa's eyes are not very good now.		
2. Engy is great at math and working out problems.		

B Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Grandpa likes sewing patterns like..................... .
   a. foods b. animals c. birds d. reptiles
2. .... said, "I wish I could sew and help you".
   a. Lobna b. Zeinab c. Doha d. Rasha

Part 2

6 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. She .... in Cairo with her family.
   a. live b. lives c. living d. to live
2. He .... busy now, but he can help you.
   a. is b. was c. were d. are
3. Turtles are .... than the lizards.
   a. slowest b. slow c. slower d. slowly
4. This bird sings very ....
   a. soft b. softly c. softer d. softest

7 Order the words to make correct sentences :

1. lounge – to – Mum – wants – the – tidy.

   ....

2. move – spider – Can – the - quickly - very ?

   ....

8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements :

"The Paralympic Games"

Guiding elements :

take place – held – champions – take part – Olympics

....
....
....
....
....
....

Sample test 2 on Units 3 & 4

نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Your senses are very .... for you.
   a. sweet b. difficult c. important d. soft
2. You depend on senses ....
   a. early b. every day c. late d. sometimes
3. You taste with your ....
   a. nose b. eye c. tongue d. ear
4. Senses .... us away from harm ضرر.
   a. keep b. give c. bring d. let

2 Listen and complete :

1. Peter is American. He is .... years old.
2. Peter's school is .... now.
3. Peter now studies at his ....
4. Peter usually gets good .... in his tests.

3 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box :

activities – live – club – museum

Nabil : Good morning, Mourad. Where do you (1) .... ?
Mourad : Good morning, Nabil. I live in Cairo.
Nabil : Who do you live with ?
Mourad : I live with my family.
Nabil : What are the (2) .... you can do at the city ?
Mourad : I can go to the sports (3) ....
Nabil : Great ! Let's play football together.
Mourad : It's a good idea.

Part 2

4 Read the following text and answer the questions below :

A community is a group of people who live and work together in the same area. A community is more than your house, family, or your neighborhood. A community is a mixture of people, places, and ideas. My community includes my family, my friends, and my school. There are probably important places in your city or village that you often visit. You can also have a community there. For me, I am a part of the community at my sports club, too.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The main idea of the text is about ....
   a. sport b. neighborhood c. community d. citizenship
2. Our community includes our family, ... and school.
   a. weather b. friends c. clothes d. games

B. Answer the following questions :

3. What is a community ?
   ....
4. Can we have a community in the library ?
   ....

5 The reader

A Read and write T (True) or F (False) :

	T	F
1. Lobna invents things all the time.	☐	☐
2. Grandpa wanted to be a vet.	☐	☐

B Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Zeinab loves the big picture with all the ....
   a. flowers b. paper c. trees d. birds
2. .... can teach Zeinab how to sew.
   a. Grandpa b. Grandma c. Father d. Mother

6 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Ancient Egyptians .... papyrus for writing.
   a. uses   b. using   c. used   d. use
2. He .... read a story for his little sister yesterday.
   a. doesn't   b. didn't   c. don't   d. wasn't
3. The .... were swimming in the small lake.
   a. goose   b. duck   c. swan   d. geese
4. She cleaned her room .... she was busy yesterday.
   a. as soon as   b. although   c. while   d. after

7 Order the words to make correct sentences :

1. mountains – to – a river – high – next – There are.

....

2. made – a carpet – How – is ?

....

8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements :

"Scribes"

Guiding elements :

write down – in hieroglyphics – tombs – on stones – papyrus reeds

....

....

....

....

....

....

Sample test 3 on Units 5 & 6



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. My house has .... bedrooms.
   a. five   b. two   c. three   d. four
2. There is a .... in the living room.
   a. video   b. cupboard   c. couch   d. TV
3. I like to read in my ....
   a. garden   b. bedroom   c. living room   d. library
4. My bedroom is ....
   a. tidy   b. big   c. high   d. boring

2 Listen and complete :

1. Milk is good for our .... and teeth.
2. My .... buys fresh milk every day.
3. Milk is the source of .... for young mammals.
4. Milk helps our body become .... and healthy.

3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box :

worried – Share – complete - successful

Teamwork is a very important skill for the success of any team. Here are some points to help you. (1) .... your ideas and feelings with the other team members. Remember to (2) .... your part of a project well. Your team members are relying on you to do your part. Instead of getting (3) .... about problems, be a problem solver.

4 Read the following text and answer the questions below :

Renewable resources can be naturally replaced when they run out. So, potatoes are a renewable resource because we can grow more. Meat is also a renewable resource because farmers can raise more animals for you to eat. Wood is renewable, too. Then there are non-renewable resources. These are things like plastic, metals, and petroleum. Once we have used all of them up, we can't get any more here on Earth.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The main idea of the text is about ....
   a. resources   b. wood   c. metals   d. the sun
2. "Run out" means to ....
   a. start   b. finish   c. use   d. have

B. Answer the following questions :

3. What is the difference between renewable and non-renewable resources ?
   ....
4. What renewable resources can you find at your home ?
   ....

5 The reader

A Read and write T (True) or F (False) :

	T	F
1. Grandpa designs and measures the patterns.	☐	☐
2. Grandpa's mother taught him to sew.	☐	☐

B Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Zeinab and her mother traveled by ....
   a. plane   b. train   c. car   d. bus
2. Zeinab's friends want to .... about Khayameya.
   a. watch   b. learn   c. see   d. lose

Part 2

6 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Osama sometimes .... the museum with his friends.
   a. visiting b. visits c. visit d. visited
2. .... Mazen and Ramez are clever students.
   a. Both b. Although c. As soon as d. For
3. He helped .... dad clean the garden.
   a. him b. his c. their d. hers
4. Have you .... to Aswan before ?
   a. travel b. travels c. traveled d. traveling

7 Order the words to make correct sentences :

1. fossil – your family – fuels – does – Why – use ?

   ....

2. school – Seleem – every – walks – day – to.

   ....

8 Write an email of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements :

To your friend Omar about transportation. Your name is Ali and your email address is ali@gmail.com. Your friend's email address is omar20@gmail.com.

Guiding elements :

train – rail – road – river ferry – move

To :	
From :	
Subject :	

.........................,

....

....

....

....

....

....

Sample test 4 on Units 1, 2 & 3

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. There are .... people in Dina's family.
   a. six b. five c. two d. three
2. Dina's dad is a/an ....
   a. engineer b. teacher c. dentist d. doctor
3. Dina's mother works in a/an ....
   a. hospital b. restaurant c. office d. school
4. Dina's .... is two.
   a. aunt b. cousin c. sister d. brother

2 Listen and complete :

1. Whales are .... animals.
2. Whales live in .... and seas.
3. Whales .... milk for their babies.
4. Whales make sounds to .... to each other.

3 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box :

park – friends – statues – Museum

Mona : Where did you go yesterday ?
Heba : I went to visit the Egyptian (1) ....
Mona : Who went with you ?
Heba : I went with my (2) ....
Mona : What did you see there ?
Heba : We saw a lot of (3) .... and monuments.
Mona : Did you enjoy your time ?
Heba : Yes, we enjoyed it so much.

Part 2

4 Read the following text and answer the questions below :

Mona likes watching animals programs. She watched a video about dolphins. She learned that the dolphins are mammals. They breathe through a blowhole on the top of their head. Dolphins are intelligent animals that are easy to train by humans. The dolphins are very friendly and playful. They live in groups called pods. They swim and hunt together. They communicate using sounds.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The text is about ....
   a. reptiles b. insects c. amphibians d. dolphins
2. Dolphins can breathe through a ....
   a. blowhole b. nose c. head d. mouth

B. Answer the following questions :

3. How can dolphins communicate ?

   ....

4. How are dolphins intelligent ?

   ....

5 The reader

A Read and write T (True) or F (False) :

	T	F
1. Grandpa wasn't one of the Tent Makers.	☐	☐
2. Grandpa likes sewing lotus flowers patterns.	☐	☐

B Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Grandpa designs and measures the ....
   a. models b. roads c. patterns d. flowers
2. Grandpa makes everything by his ....
   a. hand b. computer c. pen d. tools

6 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The .... bird is the ostrich.
   a. bigger than b. big c. biggest d. bigger
2. She .... to the zoo yesterday.
   a. going b. went c. goes d. go
3. This is .... book. It's mine.
   a. your b. my c. his d. her
4. Fatma .... go to the museum on Mondays.
   a. don't b. doesn't c. aren't d. weren't

7 Order the words to make correct sentences :

1. in – There – 27 – are – governorates – Egypt.

....

2. colors – do – Why – fish – bright - have ?

....

8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements :

"Animals' habitats"

Guiding elements :

forest / desert / grass / live / oceans

....

....

....

....

....

....

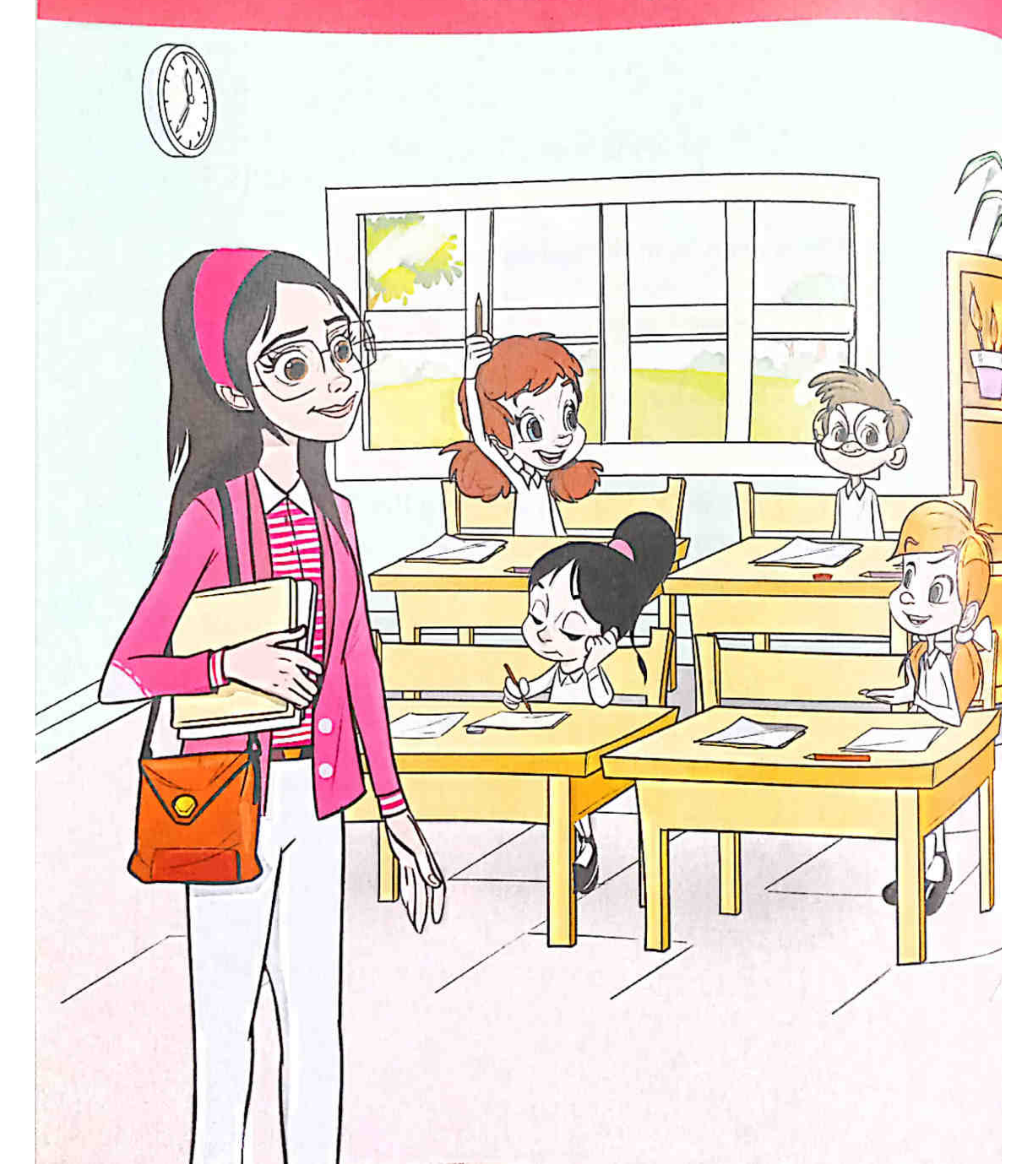
....

....

Part 3

(10) Sample Tests

عشرة اختبارات على المنهج بالكامل
مجمعة من اختبارات المحافظات



Sample Test 1

اختبار مجمع من المحافظات المختلفة



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. We can .... energy from one kind to another.
   a. destroy b. change c. collect d. plant
2. We use .... to collect sunlight.
   a. boards b. sets
   c. solar panels d. time machines
3. When we use electrical energy for a television, it's now .... energy.
   a. electronic b. mechanical c. chemical d. nuclear
4. We can't .... energy.
   a. use b. change c. have d. destroy

2 Listen and complete :

(القاهرة ٢٠٢٢)

1. There are many .... of transportation.
2. You can go by .... if there are roads available.
3. You can travel by water if you live on an ....
4. Transportation allows us to .... from one place to another.

3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box :

(البحر الأحمر ٢٠٢٢)

nutrients - esophagus - lungs - digestive

The food you eat takes an incredible journey through your body. We use our (1) .... system when we eat and drink. The main organs that make up the digestive system are the mouth, (2) .... , stomach, small intestine and large intestine. Digestion is important because your body needs (3) .... from the food you eat and the liquids you drink in order to stay healthy and work properly.

4 Read the following text and answer the questions below :

(الجيزة ٢٠٢٢)

Birds are warm-blooded, but they don't have fur or hair. All birds have feathers, and they all have wings. Birds lay eggs which are hard. Using their wings, most birds can fly, but some can't. They have beaks, which are made of bones. Their beaks are different shapes because they eat different food; some birds eat meat, some eat nuts and some eat seeds.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The text is about ....
   a. birds b. mammals c. reptiles d. fish
2. Birds lay eggs which are ....
   a. hot b. hard c. soft d. warm

B. Answer the following questions :

3. Can all birds fly ?
   ....
4. Why are birds' beaks different ?
   ....

5 The reader

A Read and write T (True) or F (False) :

(الشرقية ٢٠٢٢)

	T	F
1. Grandpa was one of the best artisans in Khayameya Street.		
2. Zeinab doesn't want to visit her grandparents.		

B Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

(قنا ٢٠٢٢)

1. Grandpa likes sewing Khayameya design with ....
   a. clothes b. lotus flowers c. socks d. grass
2. .... wanted to be an engineer in the past.
   a. Grandpa b. Zeinab c. Rasha d. Lobna

6 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Some crabs can move .... in water than on land. (الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٢)
   a. fastest b. fast c. faster d. the fastest
2. This is my cousins' house. It's .... (كفر الشيخ ٢٠٢٢)
   a. ours b. hers c. theirs d. mine
3. Have you ever .... on a plane ? (القليوبية ٢٠٢٢)
   a. being b. been c. be d. to be
4. Omar always .... his hand before eating. (القاهرة ٢٠٢٢)
   a. washes b. washing c. washed d. wash

7 Order the words to make correct sentences : (سوهاج ٢٠٢٢)

1. are – Some – driving – workers – trucks.

....

2. you – do – Where – live ?

....

8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements : (الوادي الجديد ٢٠٢٢)

"Our respiratory system"

Guiding elements :

breathe – lungs – oxygen – heart – pass

....
....
....
....
....
....
....

Sample Test 2

اختبار مجمع من المحافظات المختلفة



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Egypt has a very .... history.
   a. short b. boring c. long d. small
2. People started to live near the .... about 9,000 years ago.
   a. Nile b. Tower c. Pyramids d. Red Sea
3. Upper Egypt was in the ....
   a. south b. north c. east d. west
4. At first, Egypt had .... separate areas.
   a. three b. ten c. two d. four

2 Listen and complete :

(البحر الأحمر ٢٠٢٢)

1. .... resources can be replaced when they run out.
2. .... are renewable resources because we can grow more.
3. Plastic is a .... resource.
4. Farmers can .... more animals for you to eat.

3 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box :

(الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٢)

fun - have - go - hard

Younis : Good morning, Amr. Have you ever been on a train ?
Amr : Good morning, Younis. Yes , I (1) ....
Younis : Where did you (2) .... ?
Amr : I went to Luxor with my friends.
Younis : Was it (3) .... ?
Amr : Yes, it was fun.
Younis : What was the train like ?
Amr : It was very big.

4 Read the following text and answer the questions below :

(الغربية ٢٠٢٢)

Vertebrates are animals with a backbone. Reptiles are cold-blooded. This means that they have to spend time in the sun to keep warm. Reptiles have four legs. They don't have hair or fur. They have scales. In addition, all reptiles lay eggs. Most reptiles live on land. Some can live in rivers or the sea, such as turtles, but they come onto land to lay their eggs.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The passage is talking about ....
   a. rivers b. turtles c. reptiles d. scales
2. The word "keep" in the passage means ....
   a. spend b. stay c. come d. lay

B. Answer the following questions :

3. Can we find turtles' eggs on the land ?
   ....
4. Why do reptiles have to spend time in the sun ?
   ....

5 The reader

A Read and write T (True) or F (False) :

(الغربية ٢٠٢٢)

	T	F
1. Grandpa's favorite design is lotus flowers.	☐	☐
2. Zeinab doesn't like sewing.	☐	☐

B Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

(سوهاج ٢٠٢٢)

1. Grandpa liked sewing lotus flowers and geometric ....
   a. problems b. layers c. patterns d. stitches
2. Grandpa's .... taught him to sew.
   a. father b. mother c.brother d. sister

6 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

(قنا ٢٠٢٢)

1. We .... to eat a good diet to stay healthy.
   a. needs b. needing c. need d. needed

(القاهرة ٢٠٢٢)

2. How .... types of animals lay eggs ?
   a. much b. often c. long d. many

3. Hatem .... at home yesterday. He traveled to Luxor last week.

(الفيوم ٢٠٢٢)

   a. weren't b. wasn't c. isn't d. haven't

4. I washed the dishes .... mum was sweeping the floor.

(الشرقية ٢٠٢٢)

   a. while b. although c. for d. where

7 Order the words to make correct sentences :

(الفيوم ٢٠٢٢)

1. a – big – shark – How – is – whale ?

....

2. folk – lots of – traditional – Egypt – music – has.

....

8 Write an email of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements :

(القليوبية ٢٠٢٢)

To your friend Tamer about amphibians. Your name is Tarek and your email address is tarek@gmail.com. Your friend's email address is tamer@yahoo.com.

Guiding elements :

live – land – water – survive – reptiles

To :

From :

Subject :

.... ,

....

....

....

....

....

....

Sample Test 3

اختبار مجمع من المحافظات المختلفة



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. .... lives in Alexandria.
   a. Khalaf b. Kareem c. Khalid d. Khalil
2. Alexandria is the .... largest city in Egypt.
   a. first b. second c. third d. fourth
3. .... is in Alexandria.
   a. The Tower b. Montaza Palace
   c. Lake Naser d. The Red Pyramid
4. How many people live in Alexandria ? ....
   a. 5,000 b. 50,000 c. 5,000,000 d. 500,000

2 Listen and complete :

(سوهاج ٢٠٢٢)

1. The Paralympic Games is an international ....
2. The Paralympic Games takes place every .... years.
3. It is held in a .... country each time.
4. Egypt has many .... who take part in these competitions.

3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box :

(كفر الشيخ ٢٠٢٢)

tongue - working - skin - eyes

We use our senses every day to help us understand the world around us. We use our (1) .... to see and our ears to hear. We smell with our nose, taste with our (2) .... , and we can feel with our skin. Think about where you are now. What can you see ? What can you hear ? Our senses are (3) .... all the time and they take in a lot of information.

4 Read the following text and answer the questions below :

(الشرقية ٢٠٢٢)

The Egyptian civilization is very famous. Egypt has a long history. People started to live near the Nile. At first, there were two separate areas. Lower Egypt was in the north, where the Nile joins the sea. Upper Egypt was in the south, where the Nile flows through the deserts of Africa. One pharaoh, Mena joined these two parts to unite the country of Egypt. Egypt controlled the Nile as far as boats could sail on it, so it became very powerful.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The text is about the ………………… .
   a. natural resources b. history of Egypt
   c. invertebrates d. Egyptian crafts
2. The underlined word "started" means ………………… .
   a. bought b. made c. began d. finished

B. Answer the following questions :

3. Who joined the two parts in Egypt ?

………………………………………………………………………………

4. How can people travel through the Nile ?

………………………………………………………………………………

5 The reader

A Read and write T (True) or F (False) :

(مطروح ٢٠٢٢)

	T	F
1. Zeinab and her mother went to grandparents by bus.		
2. All people wanted to learn about Khayameya.		

B Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

(القليوبية ٢٠٢٢)

1. ………………… can help Grandpa show them all how to sew.
   a. Lobna b. Doha c. Engy d. Rasha
2. Zeinab and her grandfather visited the ………………… .
   a. museum b. school c. park d. shop

6 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Insects live in the rainforests because they can find food .... (القاهرة ٢٠٢٢)
   a. easy b. easier c. easily d. easiest
2. This is .... new math teacher, Mr Hany. (مطروح ٢٠٢٢)
   a. my b. mine c. me d. yours
3. The birds' beaks have different shapes .... they eat different food. (الوادي الجديد ٢٠٢٢)
   a. because b. but c. however d. on one hand
4. Did he .... his lost key yesterday ? (الدقهلية ٢٠٢٢)
   a. found b. finding c. find d. finds

7 Order the words to make correct sentences : (اسيوط ٢٠٢٢)

1. Games – is – The Paralympic – an – competition – international.
   ....
2. travel to – one – Will – the Moon – you – day ?
   ....

8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements : (البحر الاحمر ٢٠٢٢)

"Folk music"

Guiding elements :

saidi music – string instruments – oboe – drumming – Nubian music

....
....
....
....
....
....

Sample Test 4





نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. There are lots of .... things to see under the sea.
   a. boring b. scary c. hard d. interesting
2. Some fish are very .... colored.
   a. slowly b. dark c. light d. brightly
3. The bright corals can help fish .... from a bigger one.
   a. hide b. attack c. find d. see
4. Many predators don't eat .... that's brightly colored.
   a. plant b. animal c. fish d. prey

2 Listen and complete :

(الغربية ٢٠٢٢)

1. Fruits and vegetables have a lot of fiber, ... and minerals.
2. We need minerals and vitamins for healthy skin, ... bones and teeth.
3. Fish, cheese and eggs have .... that helps us grow.
4. We need .... for a healthy nervous system.

3 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box :

(قنا ٢٠٢٢)

Where - port - airport - visit

Basma : Hi, Walaa.
Walaa : Welcome to Cairo. Is it your first (1)........................ to Cairo ?
Basma : Yes, it is.
Walaa : (2)........................ do you live ?
Basma : I live in Alexandria.
Walaa : What natural features does it have ?
Basma : Lots of ships go in and out of the (3)........................ .
Walaa : Great ! I wish you would enjoy your visit in Cairo.

4 Read the following text and answer the questions below :

(البحيرة ٢٠٢٢)

Ancient Egyptians used scribes to write down everything that happened. Scribes were very important people. They worked for ruling dynasties. Important dynasties controlled Egypt for many years. These were important families who ruled the country.

Ancient Egyptians wrote in hieroglyphs, which are pictures or symbols that can mean one word or many ideas. We can see these hieroglyphs today in tombs and museums.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The main idea of the text is about .... in ancient Egypt.
   a. rulers b. scribes c. pharaohs d. symbols
2. "...................." are important families who ruled the country.
   a. Scribes b. Hieroglyphs c. Dynasties d. Tombs

B. Answer the following questions :

3. Why were scribes important in ancient Egypt ?
   ....
4. what is hieroglyphs ?
   ....

5 The reader

A Read and write T (True) or F (False) : (المنيا ٢٠٢٢)

	T	F
1. Zeinab loved the big picture with all the flowers.		
2. Zeinab went to her grandparents in winter.		

B Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d : (مطروح ٢٠٢٢)

1. Who invents things all the time ?
   a. Rasha b. Lobna c. Zeinab d. Doha
2. Zeinab's grandparents were very .... to see her.
   a. pleased b. angry c. excited d. tired

6 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Our heart .... the blood around our body. (قنا ٢٠٢٢)
   a. pumping b. pumps c. pump d. pumped
2. Ants are much .... humans. (الجيزة ٢٠٢٢)
   a. the strongest b. stronger than
   c. strong d. strongest
3. He is very .... His father bought a new bike for him. (الدقهلية ٢٠٢٢)
   a. happy b. happily c. happier d. happiest
4. There .... a big party in my school last week. (الشرقية ٢٠٢٢)
   a. was b. were c. have d. has

7 Order the words to make correct sentences : (البحيرة ٢٠٢٢)

1. was – in – Egypt – Music – important – ancient.
   ....
2. natural – What – resources – are ?
   ....

8 Write an email of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements : (دمياط ٢٠٢٢)

To your friend Hend about your city. Your name is Sara and your email address is sara@gmail.com. Your friend's email address is hend 22@yahoo.com.

Guiding elements :

metropolitan - densely populated – pedestrian – congestion

To :
From :
Subject :

.... ,
....
....
....
....
....
....

Sample Test 5

اختبار مجمع من المحافظات المختلفة



نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Aya Ayman Abbas is a .... champion.
   a. basketball b. karate c. tennis d. swimming
2. Aya won the Egypt Cup .... times.
   a. two b. three c. four d. six
3. She was the first female Egyptian Paralympic swimmer in ....
   a. Tokyo b. London c. Rio d. Brazil
4. She won lots of .... medals.
   a. silver b. gold c. bronze d. a, b & c

2 Listen and complete :

(الجيزة ٢٠٢٢)

1. There are .... halves in our brain.
2. The left hemisphere controls the .... side of the body.
3. The right hemisphere is used in .... and music.
4. The brain is an important .... in our bodies.

3 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box :

(قنا ٢٠٢٢)

digestive - drink - lesson - breathe

Hana : Good morning, Sama.
Sama : Good morning, Hana. It's our first school day in grade four.
Hana : Yes, I read the first English (1) ....
Sama : What is it about ?
Hana : It's about our (2) .... system.
Sama : What does that system do ?
Hana : We use our digestive system when we eat and (3) ....
Sama : Great !

Part 3

4 Read the following text and answer the questions below :

(القاهرة ٢٠٢٢)

Natural resources are materials that we get from nature. People use these materials for different purposes. Some resources are what we call renewable. Renewable resources can be replaced when they run out. So, potatoes are renewable resources because we can grow more. Meat is also a renewable resource because farmers can raise more animals for you to eat.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The main idea of the text is about ....
   a. animals   b. potatoes
   c. natural resources   d. materials
2. When renewable resources run out, they can be ....
   a. placed   b. replaced   c. grown   d. rebuilt

B. Answer the following questions :

3. If farmers raise more animals, what happens ?

   ....

4. Why are the potatoes renewable resources ?

   ....

5 The reader

A Read and write T (True) or F (False) :

(سوهاج ٢٠٢٢)

	T	F
1. Zeinab wanted to learn about Khayameya.		
2. Grandpa is an artisan.		

B Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

(دمياط ٢٠٢٢)

1. Zeinab got off the .... There were her grandfather and grandmother.
   a. bus   b. train   c. car   d. airplane
2. The big picture is made of thousands and thousands of small ....
   a. leaves   b. paper   c. flowers   d. stitches

6 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. .... is Leen's sister. I met her before with Leen. (الفيوم ٢٠٢٢)
   a. Those b. These c. This d. They
2. People .... to live near the Nile about 9,000 years ago. (البحيرة ٢٠٢٢)
   a. starting b. starts c. start d. started
3. She speaks very .... I can't understand her. (بني سويف ٢٠٢٢)
   a. quick b. loud c. fast d. quiet
4. Tigers have sharp .... (الدقهلية ٢٠٢٢)
   a. tooth b. teeth c. claw d. jaw

7 Order the words to make correct sentences : (سوهاج ٢٠٢٢)

1. to learn – I want – about – Egyptian – traditional – crafts.
   ....
2. populated - Is - sparsely - your city - densely - or ?
   ....

8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements : (كفر الشيخ ٢٠٢٢)

"How to be a good team member"

Guiding elements :

communicate – collaborate – have a positive attitude – be responsible – solve problems

....
....
....
....
....
....
....

Sample Test 6

اختبار مجمع من المحافظات المختلفة



نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Vertebrates have ....
   a. feathers b. backbones c. beaks d. wings
2. The bee hummingbird is the .... bird.
   a. smallest b. fastest c. shortest d. biggest
3. The bee hummingbird lives in ....
   a. America b. Brazil c. Cuba d. Africa
4. Ostriches can't ....
   a. run b. fly c. lay eggs d. hear well

2 Listen and complete :

(الشرقية ٢٠٢٢)

1. Deaf people can use .... language.
2. People who can't see or hear have different ways to .... with others.
3. Braille is a .... which people can use to read.
4. Blind people can .... the dots to find out what they mean.

3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box :

(بني سويف ٢٠٢٢)

computer - Sitting - develop - snacks

It's fun to play video games sometimes, but it's good to be active as well. (1) .... still for a long time isn't good for your health. Sometimes people eat more unhealthy (2) .... when they are watching TV or playing on the computer. Try not to (3) .... unhealthy habits.

4 Read the following text and answer the questions below :

(كفر الشيخ ٢٠٢٢)

Scientists think that there are nearly 400,000 different types of plants. Most of these have flowers, which come in many different colors. The bright flowers attract insects, which carry pollen from one flower to another flower. This helps the flowers to reproduce. Primary colors are red, yellow and blue. We can't make these colors by mixing other colors. We make secondary colors by mixing the three primary colors in different amounts. We can make green, orange, purple, and all the shades in between.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d .

1. We make secondary colors by .... the three primary colors.
   a. fixing   b. mixing   c. making   d. doing
2. The word "types" in the text means ....
   a. shades   b. levels   c. kinds   d. shapes

B. Answer the following questions :

3. Is green primary or secondary color ?
   ....
4. Why are the bright flowers important for plants ?
   ....

5 The reader

A Read and write T (True) or F (False) :

(الفيوم ٢٠٢٢)

	T	F
1. Grandpa always wanted to be an artisan.	☐	☐
2. Rasha makes amazing art.	☐	☐

B Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

(قنا ٢٠٢٢)

1. Khayameya School is traveling all ....
   a. spring   b. summer   c. fall   d. winter
2. Zeinab has .... friends.
   a. sad   b. happy   c. angry   d. clever

6 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. He .... meet his grandparents last Friday. (الاسكندرية ٢٠٢٢)
   a. doesn't   b. isn't   c. didn't   d. wasn't
2. .... the artisans weave the carpets, they have to make the warp. (القاهرة ٢٠٢٢)
   a. Before   b. So   c. While   d. Even though
3. My school .... at 2:30 except on Thursdays. (الغربية ٢٠٢٢)
   a. finish   b. finishes   c. finishing   d. finished
4. If you're positive, you'll help .... and the others. (الفيوم ٢٠٢٢)
   a. myself   b. herself   c. themselves   d. yourself

7 Order the words to make correct sentences : (المنيا ٢٠٢٢)

1. live – on land – on water – Amphibians – and – can.
   ....
2. uses – language – Who – sign ?
   ....

8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements : (بني سويف ٢٠٢٢)

"Natural resources"

Guide elements :

materials / renewable resources / non-renewable resources / oil / fossil fuels

....
....
....
....
....
....
....

Sample Test 7

اختبار مجمع من المحافظات المختلفة



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Fareeda .... in Greater Cairo.
   a. works b. learns c. lives d. reads
2. Greater Cairo is a .... populated.
   a. densely b. sparsely c. lightly d. easily
3. There are more than .... inhabitants in Cairo.
   a. 20,000 b. 20,000,000 c. 7,000,000 d. 2,000,000
4. When you walk in Cairo, you should be ....
   a. fast b. hard c. careful d. slow

2 Listen and complete :

(الدقهلية ٢٠٢٢)

1. Ancient Egyptians used scribes to .... down everything that happened.
2. Scribes were very .... people in Ancient Egypt.
3. Children learnt to become a scribe at ....
4. Scribes wrote on paper made from .... reeds.

3 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box :

(بني سويف ٢٠٢٢)

nose - breathe - respiratory - esophagus

Hamza : Reham, do you know what our lesson will be today ?
Reham : Yes, I know, Hamza. It's about the (1) .... system.
Hamza : When do we use our respiratory system ?
Reham : When we (2) .... , we use our respiratory system.
Hamza : How do we breathe ?
Reham : We breathe in air through our (3) ....
Hamza : Where does the air we breathe go ?
Reham : It goes to our lungs.

4 Read the following text and answer the questions below : (البحيرة ٢٠٢٢)

Folk dancing has a long history in Egypt. It is linked to the folk music of different areas. Nubian dancing is lively and colorful. People move their arms and feet to the rhythm of the music. Raqs Assaya is probably the most famous dance from the Saidi musical tradition. The dancers use sticks (Assaya) and step quickly in special patterns. The Tahtib is also from the tradition of Saidi music. The dancers carefully perform a dance with sticks in a way that looks like fighting.

Dancers wear special costumes. These can be dark and plain, or bright-colored and patterned. In the cities alongside the Suez Canal, there are international types of music and dance. Musicians play the simsimeya, a Bedouin instrument, as well as drums.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. "simsimeya" is a/an ....
   a. tool b. equipment c. instrument d. toy
2. The text is about ....
   a. folk patterns b. folk dancing c. folk cities d. special costumes

B. Answer the following questions :

3. Does the folk dancing depend on the place ?
   ....
4. Why does the Tahtib look like fighting ?
   ....

5 The reader

A Read and write T (True) or F (False) : (القاهرة ٢٠٢٢)

	T	F
1. To make Khayameya, you need a pattern with 3 layers of cotton.		
2. Grandpa is sad because he can't hear well now.		

B Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d : (قنا ٢٠٢٢)

1. Grandpa wanted to be a/an .... or a teacher when he was a child.
   a. architect b. doctor c. vet d. engineer
2. Grandpa likes sewing .... flowers best.
   a. sunflower b. lotus c. red d. white

6 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. These are .... cousins; Omar and Ali. (الدقهلية ٢٠٢٢)
   a. ours b. yours c. mine d. our
2. .... the yarn is dry, they can use it to weave a carpet. (البحيرة ٢٠٢٢)
   a. So that b. Even though c. As soon as d. But
3. .... we live on the Moon one day ? - No, we won't. (سوهاج ٢٠٢٢)
   a. Did b. Do c. Have d. Will
4. Have you ever .... snails before ? (أسيوط ٢٠٢٢)
   a. try b. tried c. tries d. trying

7 Order the words to make corret sentences : (القاهرة ٢٠٢٢)

1. growth – is – What – smart ?

   ....

2. our – seeing – for – eyes – We – use.

   ....

8 Write an email of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements : (الاسكندرية ٢٠٢٢)

To your friend Marwan about a visit to Alexandria. Your name is Sleem. Your email address is sleem@gmail.com. Your friend's email address is marwan@yahoo.com.

Guiding elements :

Mediterranean Sea / port / apartment / services / Montaza Palace

To :	
From :	
Subject :	

.... ,

....

....

....

....

....

....

Sample Test 8

اختبار مجمع من المحافظات المختلفة



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Waleed lives in a small ....
   a. country   b. city   c. town   d. village
2. His dad .... tomatoes and onions.
   a. grows   b. raises   c. lives   d. brings
3. His dad is a/an ....
   a. engineer   b. farmer   c. doctor   d. vet
4. There are .... people in Waleed's family.
   a. six   b. seven   c. eight   d. five

2 Listen and complete :

(بني سويف ٢٠٢٢)

1. Fish take in oxygen through their ....
2. Fish are .... and they lay eggs.
3. There are thousands of different .... of fish.
4. Fish use .... to move.

3 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box :

(مطروح ٢٠٢٢)

sea – road – bus – transportation

Mrs Dalia : Hey everyone. Ahmed, can you tell me how we get from one place to another place ?

Ahmed : Yes. That is what transportation does.

Mrs Dalia : Yes, that's good. What kinds of (1) .... do you usually take ?

Ahmed : I usually take a bus to school.

Mrs Dalia : Where does the (2) .... go on ?

Ahmed : The bus goes on the (3) ....

Mrs Dalia : Great! Thank you, Ahmed!

Ahmed : You are welcome.

4 Read the following text and answer the questions below :

(بني سويف ٢٠٢٢)

The Paralympic Games is an international competition. It's for athletes with disabilities. Like the Olympics, it takes place every four years, and is held in a different country each time. Being a Paralympic athlete takes years of dedication and hard work.

Mostafa Fathalla is a runner who takes part in 100-metre, 200 metre and 400-metre races. He joined the national team in Egypt in 2006, and has taken part in lots of international competitions. He has won many medals, including gold in the World Championship in New Zealand.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The text is about ....
   a. Olympic Games
   b. Paralympic Games
   c. World Cup
   d. swimming competitions
2. "Takes place" means ....
   a. connects
   b. happens
   c. supports
   d. protects

B. Answer the following questions :

3. Which races does Mostafa take part in ?

   ....

4. Is the Olympics different from the Paralympics ?

   ....

5 The reader

A Read and write T (True) or F (False) :

(الجيزة ٢٠٢٢)

	T	F
1. The Khayameya School is going to Aswan and Port Said.		
2. Zeinab likes the Khayameya design with flowers best.		

B Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

(قنا ٢٠٢٢)

1. They make the patterns of Khayameya with three layers of ....
   a. wood
   b. silk
   c. cotton
   d. fiber
2. Rasha is great at .... and working out problems.
   a. social studies
   b. math
   c. science
   d. English

6 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

(مطروح ٢٠٢٢)

1. I .... to the club every day.
   a. went b. going c. goes d. go

(دمياط ٢٠٢٢)

2. A blue whale is bigger .... a shark.
   a. the b. then c. that d. than

(الدقهلية ٢٠٢٢)

3. Adam presented .... project to the class.
   a. her b. his c. their d. hers

(أسيوط ٢٠٢٢)

4. .... he play football yesterday ?
   a. Was b. Does c. Did d. Is

7 Order the words to make correct sentences :

(البحيرة ٢٠٢٢)

1. shark – whale - a - big – How – is ?

....

2. organs – protects – Our – skeleton – our.

....

8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements :

(الشرقية ٢٠٢٢)

"Birds"

Guiding elements :

warm-blooded / feathers / wings / beaks / bones

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Sample Test 9

اختبار مجمع من المحافظات المختلفة



نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. We use our eyes to ....
   a. taste b. touch c. hear d. see
2. We hear with our ....
   a. ears b. arms c. legs d. brain
3. We can feel with our ....
   a. mouth b. skin c. nose d. stomach
4. Our senses are working all the ....
   a. pattern b. time c. world d. sides

2 Listen and complete :

(القاهرة ٢٠٢٢)

1. .... is very important for the success of a project.
2. .... your ideas with other team members.
3. If you find your role ...., ask for help.
4. You should listen to other's ....

3 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box :

(مطروح ٢٠٢٢)

system – stomach – drink – breathe

Amr : Hello, Essmat.

Essmat : Hello, Amr.

Amr : What is the system that we use when we eat and (1) .... ?

Essmat : We use our digestive (2) ....

Amr : Where does food go after we swallow it ?

Essmat : It goes to our (3) ....

Amr : Yes, in the stomach, a special liquid changes the food into energy that we need in our body.

Essmat :That's great.

Part 3

4 Read the following text and answer the questions below :

(الدقهلية ٢٠٢٢)

We all need to eat a good diet to stay healthy. But what is a good diet ? A good diet includes lots of fresh food and plenty of water to drink. Our brain is about 75% water and it needs water to work well. We should eat fresh fruit and vegetables because they are full of vitamins and have a lot of fiber and minerals. We need these for healthy skin, muscles, bones and teeth. We should eat plenty of protein too, as this helps us grow.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The main idea of the text is about ....
   a. the mammal   b. a good diet
   c. competitions   d. transportation
2. Fruit and vegetables have a lot of ....
   a. protein   b. fiber   c. calcium   d. plastic

B. Answer the following questions :

3. What does a good diet include ?

   ....

4. What foods are high in fiber ?

   ....

5 The reader

A Read and write T (True) or F (False) :

(الغربية ٢٠٢٢)

	T	F
1. Zeinab has weak friends.		
2. Khayameya School is traveling all summer.		

B Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

(الفيوم ٢٠٢٢)

1. Zeinab goes to her grandparents by ....
   a. bus   b. train   c. car   d. airplane
2. .... makes amazing art.
   a. Zeinab   b. Engy   c. Doha   d. Rasha

6 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Amira .... go to the club on Sundays. (قنا ٢٠٢٢)
   a. hasn't b. didn't c. isn't d. doesn't
2. Will you .... to the Zoo next week ? (كفر الشيخ ٢٠٢٢)
   a. goes b. going c. go d. to go
3. These pens belong to Moaz. They are .... (البحر الأحمر ٢٠٢٢)
   a. his b. hers c. her d. mine
4. Ancient Egyptians .... in hieroglyphs. (الشرقية ٢٠٢٢)
   a. write b. wrote c. writes d. writing

7 Order the words to make correct sentences : (الاسكندرية ٢٠٢٢)

1. city – are – services - What – in – your ?
   ....
2. dancing – a long – Folk – history – has – in Egypt.
   ....

8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements : (البحر الأحمر ٢٠٢٢)

"Our senses"

Guiding elements :

1. What are our five senses ?
2. How do we use each one of them ?
3. What is sign language ?
4. What is Braille ?
5. Who invented Braille ?

....
....
....
....
....
....

Sample Test 10

اختبار مجمع من المحافظات المختلفة



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. We can use the .... to go wherever we want.
   a. ferry   b. bus   c. airplane   d. train
2. There are beautiful .... that I sometimes visit with my family.
   a. shops   b. parks   c. gardens   d. markets
3. We can buy anything we need from the ....
   a. offices   b. hospitals   c. schools   d. shops
4. We have a lot of .... in my city.
   a. services   b. cars   c. buses   d. trains

2 Listen and complete :

(الوادي الجديد ٢٠٢٢)

1. The Nile .... through the deserts of Africa.
2. .... Egypt was in the north.
3. Upper Egypt was in the ....
4. Mena joined Lower Egypt and Upper Egypt to .... the country.

3 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box :

(سوهاج ٢٠٢٢)

services - Where - free - densely

Ali : Hello, Younis. (1) .... do you live ?

Younis : I live in Greater Cairo.

Ali : Is it sparsely or (2) .... populated ?

Younis : It's a metropolitan area and densely populated.

Ali : What services are there ?

Younis : We have a lot of (3) .... like shops, hospitals and schools.

Ali : It sounds a nice place.

Younis : Yes. I like my city.

4 Read the following text and answer the questions below :

(بورسعيد ٢٠٢٢)

Some resources are what we call renewable. Renewable resources can be replaced when they run out. So, potatoes are a renewable resource because we can grow more. Meat is also a renewable resource because farmers can raise more animals for you to eat. Wood is renewable, too.

Then there are non-renewable resources. These are things like plastic, metal, and petroleum. Once we have used all of them up, we can't get any more here on Earth.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The text is about ....
   a. natural resources b. farmers c. earth d. animals
2. The underlined word "grow" means ....
   a. put b. stick c. plant d. hide

B. Answer the following questions :

3. What are renewable resources ?

   ....

4. Why is meat a renewable resource ?

   ....

5 The reader

A Read and write T (True) or F (False) :

(البحر الأحمر ٢٠٢٢)

	T	F
1. Zeinab became a Khayameya artisan.		
2. Zeinab's friends don't want to learn about Khayameya.		

B Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

(الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٢)

1. Grandpa likes sewing .... flowers patterns best.
   a. lily b. lotus c. daisy d. rose
2. Rasha is great at .... and working out problems.
   a. math b. art c. music d. science

Part 3

6 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Our heart .... the blood around our body. (الوادي الجديد ٢٠٢٢)
   a. pumping b. pumps c. pump d. was pumping
2. A frog is .... smallest vertebrate. (البحر الأحمر ٢٠٢٢)
   a. the b. than c. that d. as
3. Scribes .... very important people in ancient Egypt. (سوهاج ٢٠٢٢)
   a. are b. were c. was d. is
4. .... there be flying cars in the future ? - Yes, there will. (الجيزة ٢٠٢٢)
   a. Does b. Will c. Has d. Have

7 Order the words to make correct sentences : (القاهرة ٢٠٢٢)

1. do – live – Where – you ?
   ....
2. airplanes – fly – will – 2064 – in - Robots.
   ....

8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements : (البحر الأحمر ٢٠٢٢)

"Your village life"

Guiding elements :

1. Where do you live ?
2. What is your father's job ?
3. What does your mother do ?
4. What services are there in your village ?
5. Is your village sparsely or densely populated ?

....
....
....
....
....
....
....



Listening Texts

Listening Text of Monthly Assessments

Sample Test 1 on Units 1 & 2

- Listen and circle the correct answer :

The biggest animal on land is a mammal : the African elephant. The African elephant is bigger than the Asian elephant. The biggest Sea animal in the world is also a mammal. It's the blue whale, and it can be up to 30 meters long. In fact, they are the biggest animals that have ever lived on Earth!

- Listen and complete :

Braille is a code which people who are blind or have difficulty seeing can use to read. It has different combinations of dots. They can be a letter, number, punctuation mark or word. The person reading can touch the dots to find out what they mean. Braille was invented by Louis Braille.

Sample Test 2 on Units 3 & 4

- Listen and circle the correct answer :

Your senses are very important for you. You depend on them every day. Your senses are sight, hearing, touch, smell and taste. Your senses work every day. Your sight let you read this book. Your tongue helps you taste food. Your senses also help keep you away from harm.

- Listen and complete :

Peter is 12 years old and he's American. Peter is a good student and he usually gets good marks in the tests and exams, but now he doesn't go to school. The school is closed. All the schools are closed because of the pandemic coronavirus. Peter studies his lessons at home on the computer.

Sample Test 3 on Units 5 & 6

- Listen and circle the correct answer :

My family lives in a house. Our house has two bedrooms. We cook and eat meals in the kitchen. We watch TV in the living room. My favorite room is my bedroom. It is small, but tidy. I like to read books and do my homework in my bedroom. Our house is nice.

- Listen and complete :

Milk products are types of food produced from the milk of mammals. It is the source of nutrition for young mammals. My mother buys fresh milk every day. I drink milk in the morning. It's good for our bones and teeth. Milk helps our body become strong and healthy.

Sample Test 4 on Units 1 , 2 & 3

- Listen and circle the correct answer :

Dina loves her family. There are five people in her family. She has one brother and one sister. Dina's brother is seven and her sister is two. Her mom and dad make the rules for the family. Dina's dad is a dentist. He works in a famous clinic. Her mom is a doctor. She works in a big hospital. Dina's family is always happy.

- Listen and complete :

Whales are large animals. They are not fish. They are mammals. They breathe in air and produce milk for their babies. They can swim fast. Whales live in oceans and seas. They can't breathe underwater. They must come up to the surface of the water to get air. They make sounds to talk to each other.

Listening Texts of Sample Tests

Sample Test 1

- Listen and circle the correct answer :

We can't destroy energy. We can only change it from one kind of energy to another kind. This is called transfer of energy. When we use solar panels to collect sunlight, the solar energy is turned into electrical energy. When you use this electrical energy for a television, it is now mechanical energy.

- Listen and complete :

There are many kinds of transportation that allow us to move from one place of the world to another. Depending on the place you're going to, you can choose the means of transportation. For example, you can go by land if there are roads and highways available; or maybe by air if the distance is too long; or even by water if you live on an island.

Sample Test 2

- Listen and circle the correct answer :

I live in Egypt. I'm Egyptian. Egypt is a country with a very long and interesting history. People started to live near the Nile about 9,000 years ago. At first, there were two separate areas. Lower Egypt was in the north. Upper Egypt was in the south. In about 3100 BCE, one pharaoh joined these two parts to unite the country of Egypt.

- Listen and complete :

Some resources are what we call renewable. Renewable resources can be replaced when they run out. So, potatoes are a renewable resource because we can grow more. Meat is also a renewable resource because farmers can raise more animals for you to eat. Then there are non-renewable resources. These are things like plastic, and petroleum. Once we have used all of them up, we can't get any more here on Earth.

Sample Test 3

- Listen and circle the correct answer :

I'm Khalid. I live in Alexandria. It's a beautiful city on the Mediterranean Sea. As you might know, it's the second largest city in Egypt with a population of 5 million people. It has an important port and there are a lot of industries here too. There are many beautiful places you can visit here, like Qaitbay Citadel and Montaza Palace.

- Listen and complete :

The Paralympic Games is an international competition for athletes with disabilities. Like the Olympics, it takes place every four years, and is held in a different country each time. Parasports is an important area in sport, and Egypt has many athletes who take part in these competitions.

Sample Test 4

- Listen and circle the correct answer :

There are lots of interesting things to see under the sea ! Some fish are very brightly colored, and so are some plants. The coral is very bright and has different colors, so the fish can hide from bigger

fish. In addition, many predators don't eat prey that is brightly colored. Bright colors can be a warning that the animal is poisonous.

- Listen and complete :

We should eat fresh fruit and vegetables because they have a lot of fiber and are full of vitamins and minerals. We need these for healthy skin, muscles, bones and teeth. We should eat plenty of protein too, as this helps us grow. Food with protein includes fish, cheese, eggs, beans, nuts and meat. We need fats for a healthy nervous system and these include nuts, oily fish, oil and butter.

Sample Test 5

- Listen and circle the correct answer :

Aya Ayman Abbas is a swimming champion who has won the Egypt Cup three times. She was the first female Egyptian Paralympic swimmer in Rio in 2016. She has won lots of gold, silver and bronze medals in many different countries.

- Listen and complete :

The brain is an important organ in our bodies. There are two halves in our brain : the left hemisphere and the right hemisphere. The left hemisphere controls the right side of the body. The right hemisphere controls the left side of the body. We use the right hemisphere in creative activities such as art and music.

Sample Test 6

- Listen and circle the correct answer :

Birds are vertebrates. Vertebrates are animals with a backbone. Birds are warm-blooded. There are different sizes of birds on the Earth. The smallest bird is the bee hummingbird, which is about 5.5 cm long. It lives in Cuba. The biggest bird is the ostrich. Ostriches can run faster than leopards, but they can't fly.

- Listen and complete :

Some people cannot see or hear, so they have different ways to communicate. People who are deaf or have difficulty hearing can use sign language. It is a complete language, like English or Arabic. Braille is a code which people who are blind or have difficulty seeing can use it to read. The person can touch the dots to find out what they mean.

Sample Test 7

- Listen and circle the correct answer :

Hello, my name's Fareeda and I want to tell you about where I live. I live in Greater Cairo. It's a metropolitan area and densely populated. There are more than 20 million inhabitants, so it's a very busy place. There are a lot of cars so there's also congestion. When you walk in Cairo, you have to be very careful.

- Listen and complete :

Ancient Egyptians used scribes to write down everything that happened. Scribes were very important people. They worked for the ruling dynasties. They wrote in hieroglyphs. We can see these hieroglyphs today in tombs and museums. Children learnt to become a scribe at school. Scribes wrote on stone, or on paper made from papyrus reeds.

Sample Test 8

- Listen and circle the correct answer :

My name's Waleed and I live in a small village on the Nile. My dad is

a farmer. He grows tomatoes, potatoes, dates, and onions. We have some animals, too. My family lives in a traditional home. There are seven people living in it.

- Listen and complete :

Fish live in water and take in oxygen through their gills; they can't breathe air. They are cold-blooded and they lay eggs. On their bodies, they have scales and they use fins to move. There are thousands of different types of fish in all water habitats.

Sample Test 9

- Listen and circle the correct answer :

We use our senses every day to help us understand the world around us. We use our eyes to see and our ears to hear. We smell with our nose, taste with our tongue, and we can feel with our skin. Our senses are working all the time and they take in a lot of information.

- Listen and complete :

Teamwork is very important for the success of a project. Share your ideas and feelings with the other team members. You should be open about how you're feeling about a project. You should be polite too. You should listen to other's ideas. If you find your role difficult, ask for help.

Sample Test 10

- Listen and circle the correct answer :

I like my city because we have a lot of services. We have schools, hospitals and lots of shops where you can buy anything you need. We can also use the bus to go wherever we want. One of my favorite places is Montaza Palace. There are beautiful gardens that I sometimes visit with my family.

- Listen and complete :

Lower Egypt was in the north, where the Nile joins the sea. Upper Egypt was in the south, where the Nile flows through the deserts of Africa. In about 3100 BCE, one pharaoh, Mena joined these two parts to unite the country of Egypt.



GUIDE

CONNECT Plus

Answers Notebook مفكرة الإجابات

By a group of supervisors

الصف الرابع الابتدائى

للمدارس الرسمية لغات والخاصة

الفصل الدراسى الأول





AL TALABA BOOKSTORE

For printing, publication & distribution

El Faggala - Cairo - Egypt

Tel.: 02/ 259 340 12 - 259 377 91

e-mail: info@elmoasserbooks.com

15014 www.elmoasserbooks.com

4th Primary

2023

FIRST TERM

Answers of The Main Book (4th Primary Connect Plus)

إجابات كتاب الشرح المعاصر للصف الرابع الابتدائي
للمدارس الرسمية لغات والخاصة

Unit (1)

General Exercises on Lesson 1

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. a. eat 2. b. stomach
3. a. changes 4. c. bodies

2 Listen and complete.

1. skeleton 2. Muscles
3. bones 4. strong

3 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. We breathe in air through our nose.
2. Where is the oxygen passed to the blood ?

4 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

1. stomach 2. nose
3. oxygen

5 Read the following text and answer the questions below.

(A) Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :
1. a. drink 2. d. changes

(B) Answer the following questions :
3. We use our respiratory system.
4. It goes to the stomach.

6 Punctuate the following sentence.

We breathe in air through our nose.

General Exercises on Lesson 2

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. d. see 2. a. ears
3. b. skin

2 Listen and complete.

1. deaf 2. different
3. faces 4. sight

3 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box.

1. five 2. sense
3. eyes

4 Read the following text and answer the questions below.

(A) Choose the correct answer.
1. d. see 2. d. complete

(B) Answer the following questions :
3. People who are blind or have difficulty seeing.
4. It's a complete language, like English, Arabic or Spanish.

5 Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements.

Student's own answer.

General Exercises on Lesson 3

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. b. lounge 2. d. run
3. a. creative

2 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. b. has 2. a. is
3. b. controls 4. a. go

3 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. What are we doing today ?
2. I would like to draw a picture.

4 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

1. hemispheres
2. left 3. art

5 Write a paragraph.

Student's own answer.

General Exercises on Lesson 4

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. c. Games 2. d. four
3. c. country 4. b. athletes

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

1. Paralympics
2. team
3. competitions

3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

1. He plays sitting volleyball.
2. He has won many medals.

4 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. b. likes 2. d. train
3. c. have 4. d. doesn't

5 Write a paragraph.

Student's own answer.

General Exercises on Lessons 5 & 6

1 Listen and complete.

1. video 2. health
3. habits 4. snacks

2 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. How long is the summer camp ?
2. Starting an exercise routine is hard.

3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

1. vitamins 2. eat
3. water

4 Read the following text, and answer the questions.

(A) Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.
1. b. shouldn't
2. c. unhealthy

(B) Answer the following questions :
3. We should drink lots of water.
4. Yes, it is.

5 Write a paragraph.
Student's own answer

Test 1 on Unit 1

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.
1. b. protect
2. c. skeleton
3. b. Muscles
4. a. lift

2 Listen and complete.
1. nervous 2. energy
3. diet 4. good

B. Reading

3 Read and complete the dialogue from the words in the box.
1. lesson 2. system
3. digestive

4 Read the text and answer the questions below.

(A) Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.
1. b. international
2. a. Championship

(B) Answer the following questions :
3. He is a runner.
4. He took part in 100 - metre , 200 - metre and 400 - metre races.

The reader

5 (A) Read and write T (True) or F (False).
1. T 2. F

(B) Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :
1. c. artisans 2. d. tent

C. Writing

6 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.
1. d. gives 2. c. Does
3. a. goes 4. a. like

7 Order the words to make correct sentences.
1. What do we have to do to protect our organs ?
2. Youssef speaks Arabic and English.

8 Write a text.
Student's own answer

Test 2 on Unit 1

(اختبار مجمع من مختلف المحافظات)

A. Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a , b , c or d.
1. a. drink 2. d. changes

3. d. respiratory
4. b. stomach

2 Listen and complete.
1. learn 2. complete
3. versions
4. communicate

B. Reading

3 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box.
1. digestive 2. stomach
3. liquid

4 Read the following text and answer the questions below.

(A) Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.
1. a. how to keep our bodies healthy.
2. c. vegetables

(B) Answer the following questions :
3. No, it isn't.
4. We need vitamins for healthy skin, muscles, bones and teeth.

The reader

5 (A) Read and write T (True) or F (False).
1. F 2. T

(B) Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :
1. b. tent makers
2. d. sew

C. Writing

6 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.
1. d. don't 2. b. is
3. c. Do 4. b. has

7 Order the words to make correct sentences.
1. She plays volleyball on Mondays.
2. Does our heart pump the blood ?

8 Write a text.
Student's own answer.

Unit (2)

General Exercises on Lesson 1

1 Read and complete the dialogue from the words in the box.
1. vertebrates
2. backbone 3. types

2 Read the following text and answer the questions below.

(A) Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.
1. c. reptiles
2. a. skin

(B) Answer the following questions :
3. They can live on land and on water.
4. They need water or a moist habitat to survive.

3 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. Vertebrates are animals with a backbone.
2. Mammals have hair on their bodies.

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. c. many 2. b. live
3. d. don't 4. b. in

5 Write a text.

Student's own answer

General Exercises on Lesson 2

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. c. Scientists
2. c. smallest
3. b. Chameleon
4. d. frog

2 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. The whale shark is the biggest fish.
2. Can an ostrich fly ?

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. a. than 2. c. bigger
3. a. biggest 4. c. faster

4 Read the following text and answer the questions below.

(A) Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. a. blue whale
2. c. sea

(B) Answer the following questions :

3. The African elephant.
4. It talks about enormous animals.

5 Write a text.

Student's own answer

General Exercises on Lesson 3

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. a. cold 2. d. land
3. a. Crabs 4. d. soft

2 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. Crabs have hard shells for protection.
2. Dragonflies can fly very fast.

3 Read and complete the dialogue from the words in the box.

1. invertebrates
2. cold - blooded
3. dragonflies

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. b. easily 2. a. fast
3. a. hard 4. a. badly

5 Write a text.

Student's own answer

General Exercises on Lesson 4

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. a. plants 2. b. attract
3. d. Insects 4. c. flowers

2 Listen and complete.

1. under 2. predators
3. bright 4. prey

3 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. Red and yellow make orange.
2. The bright flowers attract insects.

4 Read and complete the following dialogue from the words in the box.

1. attract
2. pollen
3. reproduce

5 Write a text.

Student's own answer

General Exercises on Lessons 5 & 6

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. d. land 2. a. sea
3. a. caves 4. b. at night

2 Listen and complete.

1. scientific 2. wild
3. wrong 4. life

3 Read and complete the following text from the words in the box.

1. flat 2. flowers
3. roots

4 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. Some plants grow in water.
2. Why are bats unusual ?
3. Most plants grow in soil.

5 Read the following text and answer the questions below.

(A) Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. c. spread
2. b. long

(B) Answer the following questions :

3. It reaches down to the bottom of the lake.
4. It grows in water.

Test 3 on Unit 2

A. Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. c. cold 2. a. sun
3. b. lay 4. b. scales

2 Listen and complete.

1. warm 2. birth
3. lay 4. hair

B. Reading

3 Read and complete the dialogue from the words in the box.

1. doing 2. animals
3. What

4 Read the text and answer the questions below.

(A) Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. a. hide 2. c. bright

(B) Answer the following questions :

3. Because having bright colors can help fish to hide from predators.
4. Because bright colors can be a warning that the animal is poisonous.

The reader

5 (A) Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. F 2. T

(B) Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. d. grandfather
2. b. lotus flower

C. Writing

6 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. c. stronger
2. a. longer
3. c. hottest
4. d. tallest

7 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. Amphibians always lay their eggs in water.
2. How do you make green darker ?

8 Write a text.

Student's own answer

Test 4 on Unit 2

(اختبار مجمع من مختلف المحافظات)

A. Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. d. gills 2. b. scales
3. c. habitats 4. b. fins

2 Listen and complete.

1. land 2. blue
3. fish 4. 12

B. Reading

3 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box.

1. writing 2. land
3. hummingbird

4 Read the following text and answer the questions below.

(A) Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. d. amphibians
2. d. skin and lungs

(B) Answer the following questions :

3. They need water or a moist habitat.
4. No, they can't.

The reader

5 (A) Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. F 2. T

(B) Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. b. four months
2. a. stitches

C. Writing

6 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. c. biggest 2. b. quietly
3. c. than 4. b. fast

7 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. Bats are the only mammals that can fly.
2. Which vertebrates lay eggs ?

8 Write a text.

Student's own answer.

Unit (3)

General Exercises on Lesson 1

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. b. community
2. a. friends
3. c. citizenship
4. a. polite

2 Read and complete the dialogue from the words in the box.

1. live 2. city
3. sports club

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. d. mine 2. a. her
3. b. These 4. c. are

4 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. A community is a mixture of people.
2. I am part of the community at my sports club.

5 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements.

Student's own answer

General Exercises on Lesson 2

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. b. scribes 2. a. dynasties
3. c. hieroglyphs
4. d. school

2 Listen and complete.

1. history 2. Nile
3. north 4. south

3 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. Where was Lower Egypt ?
2. Scribes were very important people.

4 Read the following text and answer the questions below.

(A) Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. b. south
2. d. sail

(B) Answer the following questions :

3. It was in the north.
4. Mena united the two parts of Egypt.

5 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements.

Student's own answer

General Exercises on Lesson 3

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. b. Aswan 2. b. Upper
3. c. Engineers
4. a. Aswan

2 Listen and complete.

1. population
2. capital 3. oasis
4. Governorate

3 Read and complete the following dialogue from the words in the box.

1. Cairo 2. Where
3. important

4 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. I live in Aswan Governorate.
2. How many people live in Egypt ?
3. Where do you live ?

5 Read the following text and answer the questions below.

(A) Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. b. beach
2. a. ships

(B) Answer the following questions :

3. It's famous for scuba diving and water sports.
4. Because lots of ships sail in and out of the port.

General Exercises on Lessons 4 & 5

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. c. Scribes 2. b. pyramids
3. a. Ancient 4. d. Musicians

2 Listen and complete.

1. traditional 2. Tent makers
3. patterns 4. Khayameya

3 Read and complete the following text from the words in the box.

1. quickly 2. patterns
3. wool

4 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. Nubian dancing is lively and colorful.
2. Folk dancing has a long history in Egypt.
3. What kind of music do you like ?

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. d. happily 2. b. clearly
3. a. careful 4. c. quickly

6 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements.

Student's own answer

Test 5 on Unit 3

A. Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. b. craft 2. b. wool
3. c. years 4. a. quickly

2 Listen and complete.

1. Alexandria 2. north
3. ships 4. capital

B. Reading

3 Read and complete the dialogue from the words in the box.

1. Where 2. governorate
3. arms

4 Read the text and answer the questions below.

(A) Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. d. tombs
2. c. wrote down

(B) Answer the following questions :

3. Dynasties are important families who ruled the country.
4. Because a scribe wrote everything that happened and he worked for ruling dynasties.

The reader

5 (A) Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. T 2. F

(B) Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. c. geometric patterns
2. b. engineer

C. Writing

6 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. b. hers 2. a. his
3. d. carefully 4. b. yours

7 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. What is in a governorate ?
2. It is a very large area.

8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements.

Student's own answer

Test 6 on Unit 3

(اختبار مجمع من مختلف المحافظات)

A. Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. c. dots
2. a. letters and numbers
3. b. blind
4. a. touch

2 Listen and complete.

1. Upper 2. violins
3. south 4. Bedouin

B. Reading

3 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box.

1. eat 2. fish
3. coffee

4 Read the following text and answer the questions below.

(A) Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. c. Egyptian craft
2. d. craft

(B) Answer the following questions :

3. It was made to decorate huge tents for weddings and other family occasions.
4. Because it takes many years to learn how to make an Egyptian carpet.

The reader

5 (A) Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. T 2. F

(B) Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. b. lotus flower
2. a. Grandpa

C. Writing

6 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. b. yours 2. c. his
3. d. saw 4. b. were

7 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. These shoes belong to Mazen.
2. How do you make green darker ?

8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements.

Student's own answer

General Exercises on Units 1, 2 & 3

- **Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.**

1. b. hear 2. a. feel
3. d. are 4. d. popular
5. b. stronger than
6. a. the 7. b. community
8. c. quickly 9. c. Location
10. c. visited 11. c. 27
12. b. have

Unit (4)

General Exercises on Lesson 1

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. c. village 2. b. traditional
3. a. desert 4. b. home

2 Listen and complete.

1. Greater 2. densely
3. inhabitants
4. pedestrian

3 Read and complete the dialogue from the words in the box.

1. village 2. sparsely
3. workshops

4 Read the following text and answer the questions below.

(A) Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. a. lives 2. c. busy

(B) Answer the following questions :

3. There are more than 20 million inhabitants.
4. Because there are a lot of cars.

5 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. My village is a very traditional place.
2. The oldest city in Egypt is Fayoum.
3. Is it sparsely or densely populated ?

General Exercises on Lesson 2

1 Read and complete the following text from the words in the box.

1. sheep 2. goods
3. irrigation

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. b. mice 2. d. people
3. b. women 4. a. Geese

3 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. People get food from the water.
2. You can see cats in the street.
3. I live in a small village on the Nile.

4 Read the following text and answer the questions below.

(A) Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. c. river 2. d. goslings

(B) Answer the following questions :

3. Waleed is the youngest child.
4. He grows a lot of dates, onions and some potatoes.

5 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements.

Student's own answer

General Exercises on Lesson 3

1 Listen and complete.

1. carpet 2. weave
3. hand 4. yarn

2 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. The artisans collect wool from the sheep.
2. They can use yarn to weave a carpet.

3 Read and complete the following text from the words in the box.

1. artisans 2. wool
3. carpet

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. b. as soon as
2. a. while 3. d. so that
4. c. before

5 Read the following text and answer the questions below.

(A) Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. a. color 2. a. artisans

(B) Answer the following questions :

3. As they are more traditional.
4. To make beautiful dyes to color the wool.

General Exercises on Lessons 5 & 6

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. d. Alexandria
2. b. city
3. b. second 4. a. port

2 Listen and complete.

1. Smart 2. environment
3. public 4. spaces

3 Read and complete the following dialogue from the words in the box.

1. Alexandria
2. Mediterranean
3. services

4 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. There are six people in my family.
2. People can walk to work or school.
3. There's good transportation in my village.

5 Read the following text and answer the questions below.

(A) Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. d. shops
2. b. bus

(B) Answer the following questions :

3. There are six people in Hossam's family.
4. He lives with his family.

Test 7 on Unit 4

A. Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. c. family
2. c. 11
3. c. Montaza Palace
4. a. month

2 Listen and complete.

1. artisans 2. wool
3. dyes 4. yarn

B. Reading

3 Read and complete the dialogue from the words in the box.

1. sparsely 2. city
3. services

4 Read the text and answer the questions below.

(A) Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. a. a city where Fareeda lives.
2. b. dense

(B) Answer the following questions :

3. You should be very careful.
4. Cairo is densely populated.

The reader

5 (A) Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. T 2. F

(B) Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. b. good 2. a. teach

C. Writing

6 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. a. mice 2. c. so that
3. d. Although
4. d. people

7 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. I understand the lesson so that I do my homework.
2. Do you have any brothers ?

8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements.

Student's own answer

Test 8 on Unit 4

(اختبار مجمع من مختلف المحافظات)

A. Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. b. big 2. a. urban
3. d. easy 4. b. densely

2 Listen and complete.

1. transportation
2. water 3. important
4. birds

B. Reading

3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

1. artisans 2. wool
3. yarn

4 Read the following text and answer the questions below.

(A) Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. a. Alexandria
2. c. urban

(B) Answer the following questions :

3. Montaza Palace.
4. Because they have a lot of services.

The reader

5 (A) Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. T 2. F

(B) Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. c. tent markers
2. b. grandparents

C. Writing

6 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. c. geese 2. c. so that
3. b. before 4. c. They

7 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. Farmers grow tomatoes and onions.
2. They use plants to make beautiful dyes.

8 Write a text.

Student's own answer

Unit (5)

General Exercises on Lesson 1

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. c. nature 2. b. stone
3. d. forests 4. a. Gold

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

1. renewable 2. Meat
3. raise

3 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. What are natural resources ?
2. Soil is a natural resource.
3. We use stone to construct buildings.

4 Read the following text and answer the questions below.

(A) Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. c. natural resources
2. d. stone

(B) Answer the following questions :

3. It is made from petroleum.
4. Stone and wood.

5 Write a text.

Student's own answer

General Exercises on Lesson 2

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. d. school 2. b. bus
3. d. brother 4. c. dinner

2 Listen and complete.
1. non-renewable
2. petroleum 3. before
4. serious

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.
1. c. rains 2. a. washes
3. d. drives 4. a. eat

4 Read and complete the following dialogue from the words in the box.
1. fossil fuels 2. natural gas
3. animals

5 Write a text.
Student's own answer

General Exercises on Lesson 3

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.
1. c. waves 2. b. Wind
3. d. sun 4. c. electricity

2 Listen and complete.
1. expensive 2. rainy
3. space 4. easy

3 Read and complete the following text from the words in the box.
1. sunlight 2. electrical
3. mechanical

4 Order the words to make correct sentences.
1. We can make electricity from renewable resources.
2. Solar farms need a very big space.

General Exercises on Lesson 4

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.
1. d. engineering
2. b. wind 3. c. calm
4. c. Kenya

2 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.
1. b. his 2. b. their
3. d. her 4. d. their
5. a. his 6. b. their

3 Order the words to make correct sentences.
1. They presented their project to the class.
2. Mariam will train for one month.
3. Where is the Ras Ghareb wind farm ?

General Exercises on Lessons 5 & 6

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.
1. d. friends 2. c. upset
3. a. listening 4. b. company

2 Listen and complete.
1. responsible
2. collaborate
3. positive 4. members

3 Order the words to make correct sentences.
1. You should be too polite.
2. Stay calm and don't get upset.
3. What type of job is it for ?

4 Read and complete the following text from the words in the box.
1. Share 2. complete
3. worried

5 Write a text.
Student's own answer

Test 9 on Unit 5

A. Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a , b , c or d.
1. a. replaced 2. a. grow
3. d. Meat 4. c. raise

2 Listen and complete.
1. panels 2. farm
3. trucks 4. perfect

B. Reading

3 Read and complete the dialogue with the words in the box.
1. non-renewable
2. petroleum
3. renewable

4 Read the text and answer the questions below.
(A) Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.
1. d. Nancy's day
2. d. bus

(B) Answer the following questions :
3. She wakes up for school at 7 o'clock.
4. Nancy kisses her mom and dad saying good night.

The reader

5 (A) Read and write T (True) or F (False).
1. F 2. T

(B) Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :
1. c. layers 2. a. art

C. Writing

6 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.
1. b. their 2. b. wakes
3. a. his 4. c. goes

7 Order the words to make correct sentences.
1. She presented her project to the class.
2. What are natural resources ?

8 Write a text.
Student's own answer

Test 10 on Unit 5

(اختبار مجمع من مختلف المحافظات)

A. Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a , b , c or d.
1. b. success 2. c. share
3. b. difficult 4. c. ideas

2 Listen and complete.
1. destroy 2. change
3. solar panels
4. electrical

B. Reading

3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.
1. solar 2. electricity
3. perfect

4 Read the following text and answer the questions below.
(A) Choose the correct answer.
1. b. company
2. d. difficult
(B) Answer the following questions :
3. He often gets upset when things are difficult at work.
4. No, he isn't.

The reader

5 (A) Read and write T (True) or F (False).
1. F 2. T
(B) Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :
1. a. summer 2. d. eyes

C. Writing

6 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.
1. b. wake 2. a. his
3. b. goes 4. c. their

7 Order the words to make correct sentences.
1. We use stone to construct buildings.
2. How can we make electricity ?

8 Write a text.
Student's own answer

Unit (6)

General Exercises on Lesson 1

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.
1. c. river 2. b. ships
3. a. ship 4. b. land

2 Listen and complete.
1. temples 2. van
3. dinner 4. archaeology

3 Read and complete the text from the words in the box.
1. train
2. government
3. fast

4 Order the words to make correct sentences.
1. I don't often travel by train.
2. Have you ever been on a bus ?

5 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.
1. b. by 2. c. been
3. b. Has 4. b. gone

6 Write a text.
Student's own answer

General Exercises on Lesson 2

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.
1. d. will help 2. b. send
3. a. will get 4. d. make
5. b. come 6. d. Will
7. a. clean 8. b. will

2 Order the words to make correct sentences.
1. I will travel on an airplane.
2. Will they take a train to Aswan ?

General Exercises on Lesson 3

1 Listen and complete.
1. design
2. robots
3. automobiles
4. agriculture

2 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box.
1. safe search
2. specific
3. ads

3 Read the following text and answer the questions below.
(A) Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.
1. c. VR headset
2. d. use
(B) Answer the following questions :
3. Museums.
4. User Experience Designers.

4 Order the words to make correct sentences.
1. Choose the best option in the search box.
2. Welcome to the podcast.

General Exercises on Lesson 4

1 Listen and complete.

1. personal 2. obvious
3. characters 4. tell

2 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. Use some capital letters for passwords.
2. Add numbers you can remember .

3 Write a text.

Student's own answer.

General Exercises on Lessons 5 & 6

1 Listen and complete.

1. ships 2. watched
3. Canal 4. huge

2 Read the following text and answer the questions below.

(A) Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. a. city 2. c. Pipelines

(B) Answer the following questions :

3. Yes, because airplanes are faster than ships.
4. We can transport goods by water and by air.

3 Read and complete the following text from the words in the box.

1. captain 2. ship
3. windy

4 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. Where is the ship going ?
2. She looked out of the window.

5 Write a text.

Student's own answer.

Test 11 on Unit 6

A. Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. c. window
2. b. family's house
3. b. big 4. b. friends

2 Listen and complete.

1. personal 2. accounts
3. characters 4. obvious

B. Reading

3 Read and complete the dialogue with the words in the box.

1. traveled
2. went
3. comfortable

4 Read the text and answer the questions below.

(A) Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. d. video games
2. a. game

(B) Answer the following questions :

3. It takes years.
4. They use computer program.

The reader

5 (A) Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. F 2. T

(B) Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. b. learn 2. b. school

C. Writing

6 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. c. will travel
2. c. won't
3. a. do 4. b. Will

7 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. Will you travel to the Moon one day ?
2. I'll study languages.

8 Write a text.

Student's own answer

Test 12 on Unit 6

(اختبار مجمع من مختلف المحافظات)

A. Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. b. transport
2. c. slowly
3. d. Ships 4. c. faster

2 Listen and complete.

1. lives 2. capital
3. far away 4. airplane

B. Reading

3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

1. travel
2. transportation
3. goods

4 Read the following text and answer the questions below.

(A) Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. c. eyes 2. c. Museums

(B) Answer the following questions :

1. You have to wear a special VR headset.
2. It's short for Virtual Reality.

The reader

5 (A) Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. F 2. T

(B) Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. c. stitches 2. c. Lotus

C. Writing

6 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. b. snow 2. a. Have
3. b. won't 4. c. travel

7 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. It is the new electric train.
2. How will she pass the exam ?

8 Write a text.

Student's own answer

NOTES

